

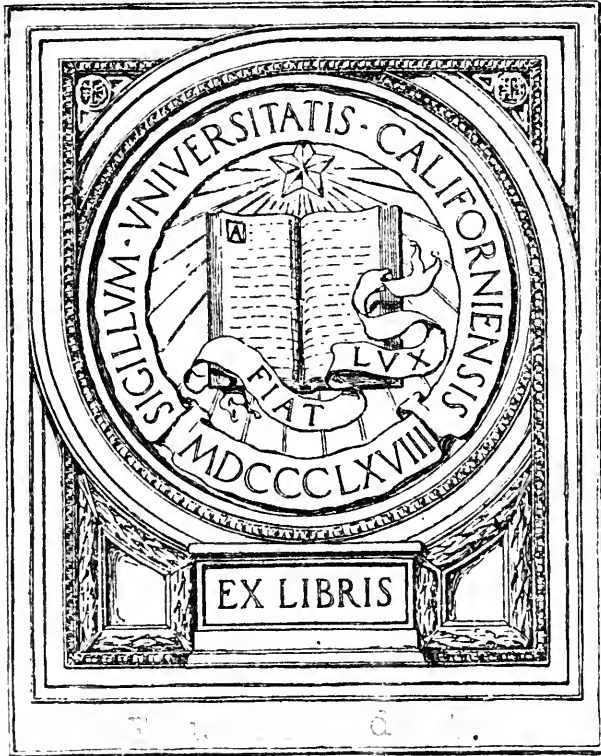


LATIN FOR THE
FIRST YEAR

GUNNISON AND HARLEY

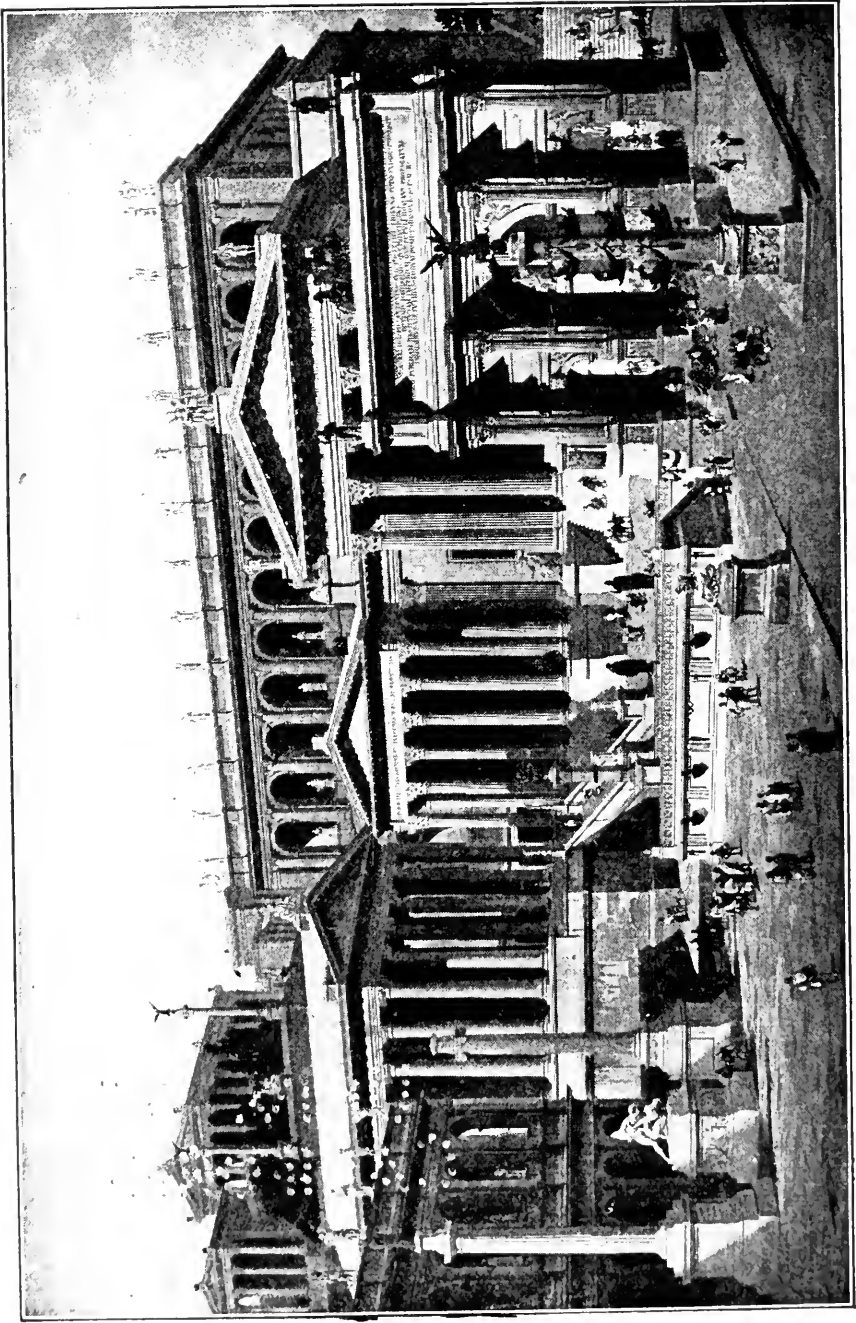
SILVER · BURDETT · AND · COMPANY

GIFT OF
F. J. Fisher



760
G976

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation



THE ROMAN FORUM
A restoration

LATIN FOR THE FIRST YEAR

BY

WALTER B. GUNNISON, Ph.D.

LATE PRINCIPAL OF ERASMUS HALL HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN, NEW YORK

AND

WALTER S. HARLEY, A.M.

TEACHER OF LATIN, ERASMUS HALL HIGH SCHOOL



SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY

BOSTON

NEW YORK

CHICAGO

**COPYRIGHT, 1915, 1917, BY
SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY**

P R E F A C E

“Latin for the First Year” is intended to prepare, in a simple and direct manner, for the reading of Latin authors.

To achieve the utmost *simplicity of treatment* consistent with thoroughness and to make the study of Latin *interesting* were the chief aims of the authors.

Inflections. To pupils speaking English only, a highly inflected language naturally presents special difficulties. The variety of case endings, tense endings, and tense signs, grammatical gender, the agreement of adjectives, and the order of words, are all practically new to the minds of beginners in Latin. Realizing that for the pupil the most important work of the first year is to learn the inflections of the language, the authors have endeavored to present these clearly and logically. At the beginning only one case is given in a lesson, until the first declension is learned. In the third declension the difficulties have been reduced to a minimum. Only one tense is given at a time in the development of the verb. Experience seems to show that it is best to contrast the forms of one tense in the different conjugations and later to contrast the tenses of each conjugation as a whole by synopses. Declensions and conjugations are given in alternate lessons, so far as possible.

Syntax. In the matter of syntax the authors have endeavored to avoid the error of attempting to teach all in one year. Only the essentials, therefore, are given. The independent uses of the subjunctive are omitted entirely. The subordinate clauses are those of purpose, result, indirect question, and the more common clauses of time, cause, and condition. Much use is made of the infinitive with subject accusative. Prepositional phrases are carefully distinguished, and the important ablative absolute is fully explained. Rules and principles are derived inductively. Comparison is constantly made with English usage, though a thorough knowledge of the technicalities of English grammar is not assumed.

Vocabulary. The vocabulary of the eighty-two lessons includes about seven hundred words, which with few exceptions are used by

Caesar. Words related in meaning are associated, and simple words are given before their compound forms. The derivation of English words is emphasized.

Exercises. In the Latin exercises the purpose has been to make short sentences that are intelligible in themselves, and not dependent upon the context of an author. Many sentences have been adapted, however, from the reading matter for the second year. For variety many interrogative sentences are used in the exercises; to these, so far as possible, answers should be given in Latin, as an excellent drill in forms. The constant aim has been to fix firmly by frequent repetition in the exercises the important principles of syntax explained in the lessons.

Reviews. Much emphasis has been laid upon reviews, not only in the twelve special review lessons, but also in the summaries of forms and constructions, whenever a series is terminated. In the Appendix the inflections and rules of syntax are brought together.

Connected Reading. Short paragraphs for reading begin in Lesson X. In Lessons XLII-LXXXII these paragraphs are simplified portions of Caesar's *Bellum Helveticum*. Following the lessons this story of Caesar's first campaign is repeated, but with fewer changes from the exact words of Caesar. A section of fables and short stories in Latin has been added for general interest.

Quotations. The many standard quotations from Latin writers will be appreciated by pupils as part of their permanent possession, and in a measure will form a connecting link between the study of Latin and its practical use in our present-day activities.

The authors wish to acknowledge their indebtedness to Mr. E. W. Harter, Head of the Classical Department, Erasmus Hall High School, and to Mr. Walter E. Johnson, Head of the Latin Department, Lane Technical High School, Chicago, Ill., who have given many valuable suggestions during the preparation of the manuscript and the reading of the proof; and to J. B. Lippincott Company for the privilege of reproducing illustration of a Roman warship from "Ships and Ways of Other Days," by E. K. Chatterton.

BROOKLYN, N. Y., August 1, 1915.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION: The Latin Language	I
 <small>LESSON</small>	
I. The Alphabet. Pronunciation	3
II. Syllables. Accent	5
III. The Nominative Case. The Verb sum	7
IV. The First Conjugation: Present Tense, Active Voice	9
V. The Accusative Case. The Direct Object	11
VI. The First Declension: Singular. The Genitive Case	12
VII. The First Declension: Plural. The Dative Case	15
VIII. The Ablative Case. Order of Words	18
IX. The Second Conjugation: Present Tense. The Accusative with Prepositions	20
X. Review	23
XI. Gender. The Second Declension: Masculine Nouns	24
XII. The Second Declension: Neuter Nouns. Apposi- tive and Predicate Nouns	28
XIII. The Third and Fourth Conjugations: Present Indicative. The Present Infinitive	31
XIV. Adjectives in -us, -a, -um . Agreement of Adjec- tives	33
XV. Nouns and Adjectives in -er . Possessive Pro- nominal Adjectives	36
XVI. Prepositional Phrases	39
XVII. Review	41
XVIII. The Passive Voice: Present Indicative. The Ablative of the Agent	42
XIX. The Passive Voice: Present Indicative (Com- pleted). Third Conjugation in -iō	46

LESSON	PAGE
XX. The Third Declension: Nouns in -l, -ō, -r	49
XXI. The Third Declension: Nouns in -s, -x . The Imperfect Indicative of sum	51
XXII. The Third Declension: Neuter Nouns in -men, -us . The Future Indicative of sum	54
XXIII. The Imperfect Tense, Indicative Active. The Predicate Accusative	56
XXIV. The Imperfect Tense, Indicative Passive. Questions and Answers	59
XXV. Review	62
XXVI. The Third Declension: Genitive Plural in -ium	63
XXVII. The Third Declension: Gender; Special Nouns	65
XXVIII. The Ablative Case: Separation; Place from Which	67
XXIX. The Future Tense, Indicative (Conjugations I and II)	69
XXX. The Future Tense, Indicative (Conjugations III and IV)	72
XXXI. Adjectives of the Third Declension. The Dative with Adjectives	74
XXXII. The Perfect Tense, Indicative Active	77
XXXIII. The Perfect Tense, Indicative Passive	81
XXXIV. Review	84
XXXV. The Fourth Declension	87
XXXVI. Prefixes. The Locative Case. Expressions of Place Reviewed	89
XXXVII. The Fifth Declension. Expressions of Time	92
XXXVIII. The Pluperfect Indicative	94
XXXIX. The Future Perfect Indicative. Review of the Indicative. Synopses	97
XL. Pronominal Adjectives	102
XLI. Review	104
XLII. The Relative Pronoun quī . The Interrogative Pronoun quis . Complex Sentences. Clauses	106
XLIII. The Present Infinitive. The Uses of the Infinitive	109
XLIV. The Demonstrative Pronouns hic, ille, iste . The Objective Genitive	113
XLV. The Perfect Infinitive. The Ablative of Cause	116
XLVI. The Demonstrative Pronoun is	118

LESSON	PAGE
XLVII. The Future Infinitive. Review of the Infinitive. The Ablative of Specification	122
XLVIII. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns	126
XLIX. The Demonstrative Pronoun <i>idem</i> . The Intensive Pronoun <i>ipse</i>	129
L. Review	131
LI. Deponent Verbs. The Ablative with Certain Deponents	133
LII. The Present Subjunctive Active. Clauses of Pur- pose	136
LIII. The Present Subjunctive Passive. Negative Pur- pose	139
LIV. The Imperfect Subjunctive. Primary and Sec- ondary Tenses	142
LV. The Dative with Special Verbs. Noun Clauses with <i>ut</i> , or <i>nē</i>	147
LVI. The Verb <i>possum</i> . Clauses of Result	150
LVII. Compounds of <i>sum</i> . The Dative with Compound Verbs. The Dative of the Possessor	153
LVIII. Review	155
LIX. Comparison of Adjectives. The Ablative of Com- parison	157
LX. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives	161
LXI. Adverbs: Their Formation and Comparison	163
LXII. The Perfect Subjunctive. Indirect Questions	166
LXIII. The Pluperfect Subjunctive. Review of the Sub- junctive. Temporal Clauses with <i>cum</i>	168
LXIV. Cardinal Numeral Adjectives. The Accusative of Extent	173
LXV. Ordinal Adjectives. The Genitive of the Whole. The Genitive and Ablative of Description	176
LXVI. Indefinite Pronouns. Review of Pronouns. Re- view of Prepositions	178
LXVII. Review. Certain Noun Suffixes	181
LXVIII. The Imperative Mood. The Vocative Case	183
LXIX. Participles: The Present and the Perfect	185
LXX. The Ablative Absolute	188
LXXI. The Future Participles. The Dative of the Agent	191
LXXII. The Gerundive. The Gerund	193

LESSON	PAGE
LXXIII. The Supine. Review of Expressions of Purpose. The Three Stem Systems	196
LXXIV. Review. Adjective Suffixes	199
LXXV. The Irregular Verb fiō . Idioms	200
LXXVI. The verb eō . Temporal Clauses	204
LXXVII. The Verb ferō . Causal Clauses	207
LXXVIII. The Verbs volō and nōlō . Conditional Sentences	209
LXXIX. Impersonal Verbs. Review of Subordinate Clauses	212
LXXX. Review of Conjunctions. Review of the Nomina- tive and Genitive	215
LXXXI. Review of the Dative and the Accusative . . .	217
LXXXII. Review of the Ablative	218
THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII, Caesar, Book I, Chapters 1-29, Adapted	221
SUPPLEMENTARY READING	234
ADDITIONAL SUPPLEMENTARY READING—New York State Syllabus	253
APPENDIX	267
TABLE OF ABBREVIATIONS.	302
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	303
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	328
VOCABULARY FOR THE FIRST YEAR—New York State Syl- labus	338
INDEX	345

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
THE ROMAN FORUM. A restoration	Frontispiece
A ROMAN EMPEROR ON HIS WAY TO THE BATHS. <i>Alma-</i> <i>Tadema</i>	xiv
A ROMAN TRUMPET	8
A STREET IN POMPEII	14
WRITING MATERIALS USED BY ROMANS	15
ROMAN GIRL	17
COIN OF JULIUS CAESAR	18
THE ANCIENT PORTA OSTIENSIS. Now known as the Porta San Paolo	22
THE APPIAN WAY	25
AN ANCIENT ROMAN SWORD	29
SIGNUM (Aquila)	30
ROMAN YOUTH	36
STANDARD BEARERS	38
BOOKS OF ANCIENT ROME	41
THE ROMAN FORUM AS IT LOOKS TODAY	43
PORTA ASINARIA. Showing part of the wall about Rome	48
ROMAN HORSEMEN	53
THE ROMAN ARMY MARCHING OUT. A bas-relief on Trajan's Column	55
THE RHONE AND THE ALPS, ST. MAURICE, SWITZER- LAND	58
ROMAN FOOT SOLDIER	61
ROMAN WAR SHIP	65
ROMAN BRIDGE, NARNI, ITALY	69
THE ALPS, PONTRESINA, SWITZERLAND	72

	PAGE
A STANDARD BEARER	76
A ROMAN EMPEROR IN MILITARY ATTIRE	79
SCUTUM	83
L. CORNELIUS SULLA	85
HOUSE OF THE VETII, POMPEII, ITALY.	86
STATUE OF A ROMAN MATRON	91
ATTACK ON A GERMAN FORTRESS. As depicted on the column of Marcus Aurelius	97
CAPTIVES PLEADING FOR MERCY FROM A ROMAN CONQUEROR	101
A ROMAN FESTIVAL. <i>Alma-Tadema</i>	103
JULIUS CAESAR	105
A STREET SCENE IN ANCIENT ROME. <i>E. Forte</i>	112
STATUE OF A ROMAN DRESSED IN THE TOGA	115
LAKE GENEVA. The ancient Lacus Lemannus	124
A SCENE ALONG THE RHINE	132
TEMPLE IN THE FORUM BOARIUM	138
RUINS OF PALACE OF THE CAESARS, PALATINE HILL, ROME	140
ROMANS PASSING UNDER THE YOKE OF THE HEL- VETIANS. <i>Charles Gleyre</i>	146
VIEW OF THE RHINE RIVER	159
RUINS OF A ROMAN AQUEDUCT	172
THE META SUDANS. A fountain near the Colosseum. <i>E. Levy</i>	184
PANELS FROM THE PAINTING "THE TRIUMPH OF CAESAR." <i>Andrea Mantegna</i>	202, 203
VIEW OF ROME AS IT LOOKS TODAY	210
A ROMAN WOMAN AND HER MAIDS. <i>J. Coomans</i>	219
Double page map (colored) showing places mentioned in this book <i>Following</i>	220
ROMAN EAGLE AND OAK WREATH	233
LOOKING TOWARD THE PALATINE HILL FROM THE FORUM	252

11 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113 114 115 116 117 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146 147 148 149 150 151 152 153 154 155 156 157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 167 168 169 170 171 172 173 174 175 176 177 178 179 180 181 182 183 184 185 186 187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209 210 211 212 213 214 215 216 217 218 219 220 221 222 223 224 225 226 227 228 229 230 231 232 233 234 235 236 237 238 239 240 241 242 243 244 245 246 247 248 249 250 251 252 253 254 255 256 257 258 259 260 261 262 263 264 265 266 267 268 269 270 271 272 273 274 275 276 277 278 279 280 281 282 283 284 285 286 287 288 289 290 291 292 293 294 295 296 297 298 299 300 301 302 303 304 305 306 307 308 309 310 311 312 313 314 315 316 317 318 319 320 321 322 323 324 325 326 327 328 329 330 331 332 333 334 335 336 337 338 339 340 341 342 343 344 345 346 347 348 349 350 351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374 375 376 377 378 379 380 381 382 383 384 385 386 387 388 389 390 391 392 393 394 395 396 397 398 399 400 401 402 403 404 405 406 407 408 409 410 411 412 413 414 415 416 417 418 419 420 421 422 423 424 425 426 427 428 429 430 431 432 433 434 435 436 437 438 439 440 441 442 443 444 445 446 447 448 449 450 451 452 453 454 455 456 457 458 459 460 461 462 463 464 465 466 467 468 469 470 471 472 473 474 475 476 477 478 479 480 481 482 483 484 485 486 487 488 489 490 491 492 493 494 495 496 497 498 499 500 501 502 503 504 505 506 507 508 509 510 511 512 513 514 515 516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 539 540 541 542 543 544 545 546 547 548 549 550 551 552 553 554 555 556 557 558 559 560 561 562 563 564 565 566 567 568 569 570 571 572 573 574 575 576 577 578 579 580 581 582 583 584 585 586 587 588 589 590 591 592 593 594 595 596 597 598 599 600 601 602 603 604 605 606 607 608 609 610 611 612 613 614 615 616 617 618 619 620 621 622 623 624 625 626 627 628 629 630 631 632 633 634 635 636 637 638 639 640 641 642 643 644 645 646 647 648 649 650 651 652 653 654 655 656 657 658 659 660 661 662 663 664 665 666 667 668 669 670 671 672 673 674 675 676 677 678 679 680 681 682 683 684 685 686 687 688 689 690 691 692 693 694 695 696 697 698 699 700 701 702 703 704 705 706 707 708 709 710 711 712 713 714 715 716 717 718 719 720 721 722 723 724 725 726 727 728 729 730 731 732 733 734 735 736 737 738 739 740 741 742 743 744 745 746 747 748 749 750 751 752 753 754 755 756 757 758 759 760 761 762 763 764 765 766 767 768 769 770 771 772 773 774 775 776 777 778 779 780 781 782 783 784 785 786 787 788 789 790 791 792 793 794 795 796 797 798 799 800 801 802 803 804 805 806 807 808 809 810 811 812 813 814 815 816 817 818 819 820 821 822 823 824 825 826 827 828 829 830 831 832 833 834 835 836 837 838 839 840 841 842 843 844 845 846 847 848 849 850 851 852 853 854 855 856 857 858 859 860 861 862 863 864 865 866 867 868 869 870 871 872 873 874 875 876 877 878 879 880 881 882 883 884 885 886 887 888 889 890 891 892 893 894 895 896 897 898 899 900 901 902 903 904 905 906 907 908 909 910 911 912 913 914 915 916 917 918 919 920 921 922 923 924 925 926 927 928 929 930 931 932 933 934 935 936 937 938 939 940 941 942 943 944 945 946 947 948 949 950 951 952 953 954 955 956 957 958 959 960 961 962 963 964 965 966 967 968 969 970 971 972 973 974 975 976 977 978 979 980 981 982 983 984 985 986 987 988 989 990 991 992 993 994 995 996 997 998 999 1000



Copyright, Photographische Gesellschaft

A ROMAN EMPEROR ON HIS WAY TO THE BATHS

Permission of Berlin Photo. Co., N. Y.

LATIN FOR THE FIRST YEAR

INTRODUCTION

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

LATIN, the language of the ancient Romans, derived its name from the Latini (la-tī'nī),¹ who spoke it first. The Latini inhabited Latium (lā'shi-um), a district of central Italy, and became the founders of Rome, their capital city. Beginning in 753 B.C. (the traditional date), Rome extended her dominion over all Italy, and finally over all the territory surrounding the Mediterranean, which comprised the civilized world of that time.

Latin was the chief language of this vast empire. During the twelve centuries of Roman history (753 B.C.—476 A.D.) the language changed greatly, as all languages do. The "golden age" (80 B.C.—17 A.D.) was the period of the best writers, including Caesar, Cicero, the poets Vergil and Horace, and others. It is mainly the Latin of this period that we study to-day.

The Latin language, however, did not end with the Roman empire. In its literary form it continued to be used by statesmen, lawyers, clergymen, physicians, and scholars in general, until the time of Shakespeare. The Magna Charta (1215 A.D.), the famous charter of English liberties, was written in Latin. Such men as Erasmus (1466—1536), leader of the literary world of his age, and Sir Isaac Newton (1642—1727), discoverer of the law of gravitation, wrote their works in the language of Caesar and Cicero.

¹ The English pronunciation of proper names is in accordance with the table of sounds on page 288.

As a spoken language Latin never ceased to be used in Italy, France, Spain, and Portugal, but grew into different forms or dialects, which we now call Italian, French, Spanish, and Portuguese. These national tongues are together called Romance languages, that is, modern forms of the language of the Romans.

It is of greater importance to us that our English is also very closely related to this historic language. Our words have come from many different sources, but chiefly from Anglo-Saxon and Latin. It has been said that English gets most of its strength from Anglo-Saxon and most of its refinement from Latin. The majority of the words in our dictionaries are of Latin origin. Some of these have not changed in form or meaning for two thousand years, as *actor*, *animal*, *census*, *color*, *error*, *honor*, *labor*, *minus*, *plus*, *superior*, *victor*. Others have been coined in recent years, as *dirigible*, *incubator*, *locomotive*. This coining of new words from Latin elements still goes on from year to year.

THE STUDY OF LATIN

Among the reasons for the study of Latin are the following:

1. It gives one a clearer knowledge of the meaning of English words, two-thirds of which are of Latin origin.
2. It provides a better understanding of English syntax.
3. It is the foundation of other modern languages and is a good basis for the study of language in general.
4. It makes clear the terms of law, medicine, and other sciences.
5. It trains one in the power of expression.
6. It affords an excellent training of the mind.
7. It helps one to appreciate more fully the literature, thought, and civilization of the Romans, upon which our own are so largely based.

LESSON I

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no *j* and no *w*.
2. The vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*. The other letters are consonants.

a. The letter *i* is used for either a vowel or a consonant sound. It is generally a consonant between vowels: *mā'ior*, *major*, *greater*; and at the beginning of a word when followed by a vowel: *Iū'lius*, *Julius*.

PRONUNCIATION

3. Latin is now pronounced according to the Roman method, as nearly as can be determined.

4. **Vowels.** A vowel is either long or short. Long vowels are marked thus: *ā*, *ē*, *ī*, *ō*, *ū*; vowels not marked are short. The sounds are:

LONG ¹	SHORT
<i>ā</i> as in <i>father</i>	<i>a</i> as in <i>along</i> , <i>Cuba</i>
<i>ē</i> as in <i>they</i>	<i>e</i> as in <i>net</i>
<i>ī</i> as in <i>machine</i>	<i>i</i> as in <i>it</i>
<i>ō</i> as in <i>ode</i>	<i>o</i> as in <i>obey</i>
<i>ū</i> as in <i>rude</i>	<i>u</i> as in <i>pull</i> ²

y (found only in words of Greek origin) is like French *u* or German *ü*.

5. **Diphthongs.** The common diphthongs (double sounds) are *ae*, pronounced as *ai* in *aisle*; *au*, as *ou* in *our*; and *oe*, as *oi* in *oil*.

a. In a few words the following occur: *ei*, pronounced as in *eight*; *eu*, like *eh'oo*; and *ui*, like *oo'ee* rapidly uttered, almost like *we*.

¹ A long vowel requires twice the time of a short vowel in pronunciation.

² *u* has the sound of *w* in *-ngu-* preceding a vowel, in *qu-*, and in the words *suāvis*, *suādeō*, *suēscō*.

6. Consonants. The consonants are pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions:

b has the sound of *p* before **s** or **t**.

c is always hard, as in *can*.

ch is like *k*.

g is always hard, as in *get*.

i (consonant) is like *y* in *yet*.

s is like *s* in *son* or *this*, not as in *his*.

t is like *t* in *native*, not as in *nation*.

v is like *w* in *wet*.

x, a double consonant (= **cs** or **gs**), is like *x* in *extra*.

Doubled consonants such as **cc**, **ll**, **mm**, **ss**, **tt** are to be pronounced separately, with a distinct sound for each: **mit'tō**.

LENGTH OF VOWELS

7. We learn whether a vowel is long or short chiefly by observation, but the following rules are to be noted:

a. A vowel is generally short before another vowel or **h**: **dī'ēs**, *day*; **nī'hil**, *nothing*.

b. A vowel is short before **nd** or **nt** and before final **m** or **t**: **por'tant**, *they carry*; **por'tat**, *he carries*.

c. A vowel is long before **nf**, **ns**, **nx**, or **nct**: **īn'fāns**, *infant*; **iūnc'tus**, *joined*.

d. A vowel resulting from contraction is long: **cō'gō**, from **co-a'gō**, *I bring together*.

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

8. 1. **pāx**, *ab, ad*. 2. **mē**, **rēx**, *et*. 3. **hī**, *id, is*. 4. **sōl**, *quod*. 5. **tū**, *tu'us*. 6. **prae**, *aut, poe'na*. 7. **cui**, *huic*. 8. **seu**, *dein'de*. 9. **cen'tum**. 10. **pul'cher**. 11. **gēns**. 12. **iam**, *hū'ius*. 13. **pēs**, *vir*. 14. **urbs**, *dux*.

LESSON II

SYLLABLES

9. A syllable consists of a vowel or a diphthong, with or without one or more consonants. Hence a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: **aes'tās**, *summer*; **mag-ni-tū'dō**, *greatness*.

Exception. **u** is not a vowel in **qu** and sometimes **gu** and **su**¹; these combinations are treated as single consonants: **a'qua**, *water*.

10. In dividing words into syllables, a single consonant between two vowels goes with the second: **pa'ter**, *father*.

Exception. Prepositional compounds are divided into their component parts: **ab'est**, *he is away*.

11. If two or more consonants occur between vowels, the division is before the last consonant: **ma-gis'ter**, *master*; **vīnc'tus**, *bound*.

Exception. A mute² followed by **l** or **r** goes with the **l** or **r**: **cas'tra**, *camp*; **pū'bli-cus**, *public*.

12. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

LENGTH OF SYLLABLES

13. Syllables are long or short. A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel not followed by two or more consonants: **vi'a**, *way*; **vi'det**, *he sees*.

14. A syllable is long by nature if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **mā'ter**, *mother*; **nau'tae**, *sailors*.

¹ See page 3, footnote 2.

² Of the consonants, **p**, **b**, **t**, **d**, **c**, **g** are called mutes; **l**, **r**, liquids.

15. A syllable is long by position if it contains a short vowel followed in the same word by **x** or **z**, or by any two consonants except a mute¹ with **l** or **r**: **u'xor**, *wife*; **an-gus'tus**, *narrow*.

ACCENT

16. A word of two syllables is accented on the first: **pu'er**, *boy*.

17. A word of three or more syllables is accented on the penult if that is long: **a-mī'cus**, *friend*; on the antepenult if the penult is short: **bre'vi-tās**, *brevity*.

18. **-que** (*and*) and a few other words are called *enclitics*, being joined to a preceding word and pronounced with it. Enclitics require an accent upon the syllable preceding them, regardless of its length: **ar-ma'que**, *and arms*.

EXERCISE IN ACCENT

19. 1. *silva, causa, tabula.* 2. *mīles, mīlitēs.* 3. *filius, filiī.* 4. *digitus, Germānus.* 5. *nātiō, nātiōnēs.* 6. *mercātor, mercātōrēs.* 7. *iūnior, oppidum.* 8. *terraque, hominēsque.* 9. *exemplum.* 10. *obtinēt, obtinētur.* 11. *saepe, proelium.* 12. *annus, puella, sagitta.*

Memorize:

Integer vītae scelerisque pūrus
 Nōn eget Maurīs iaculīs nec arcū,
 Nec venēnātīs gravidā sagittīs,
 Fusce, pharetrā.²

Translation: "The pure in life and free from crime need no Moorish darts nor bow, nor, my Fuscus, a quiver laden with poisoned arrows."

¹ See page 5, footnote 2.

² The first stanza of a famous ode by the Roman poet Horace.

LESSON III

THE NOMINATIVE CASE. THE VERB *SUM*

20. **Parts of Speech.** In Latin, as in English, there are eight parts of speech: nouns, pronouns, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections. There is no article in Latin.

21. **The Nominative Case.** Latin nouns and adjectives have a nominative case and are singular or plural in number. In some nouns and adjectives the nominative singular ends in *-a*, the plural in *-ae*:

via longa, long way, a long way, the long way.

viae longae, long ways, the long ways.

22. **Word Order.** A descriptive adjective, as a rule, follows the noun, unless it is emphatic: *via longa*, long way; but *longa via*, long way.

23. **Conjugation.** Latin verbs are conjugated to show voice, mood, tense, number, and person. These terms have, in general, the same meaning as in English.

24. INDICATIVE PRESENT TENSE OF *SUM*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>First Person</i>	sum , I am	sumus , we are
<i>Second Person</i>	es , (thou art), you are	estis , you are
<i>Third Person</i>	est , (he, she, it) is	sunt , (they) are

a. *He, she, it, and they* are not to be used when the subjects of **est** and **sunt** are expressed by separate words: *via est*, the road is; *viae sunt*, the roads are.

25. MODEL SENTENCES

1. *Via est longa*, the way is long.
2. *Viae sunt longae*, the ways are long.

Notice that if the noun is plural, the verb and adjective with it are plural.

26. RULE. Case of the Subject. *The subject of a verb is in the nominative case.*

RULE. Verb Agreement. *A verb has the same number and person as the subject.*

27.

VOCABULARY

<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>
<i>fīlia, daughter</i>	<i>bona, good</i>
<i>silva, forest</i>	<i>lāta, broad</i>
<i>terra, land, country</i>	<i>longa, long</i>
<i>tuba, trumpet</i>	<i>magna, great, large</i>
<i>via, way, road, street</i>	<i>parva, little, small</i>
<i>Interrogative Adverb</i>	<i>Conjunction</i>
<i>ubi? where?</i>	<i>et, and</i>

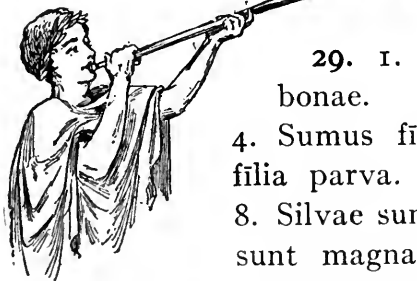
EXERCISES

(Pronounce, with careful attention to the length of vowels and to accent. Translate.)

28. 1. *Filia bona.* 2. *Filiae bonae.* 3. *Silva lāta.* 4. *Silvae lātae.* 5. *Terra magna.*

6. *Terrae magnae.* 7. *Tuba parva.* 8. *Tubae parvae.*

9. *Via lāta.* 10. *Viae lātae.*



A ROMAN TRUMPET

29. 1. *Filia est bona.* 2. *Filiae sunt bonae.* 3. *Ubi sunt filiae bonae?*

4. *Sumus filiae.* 5. *Estis filiae.* 6. *Es filia parva.* 7. *Terra est longa et lāta.*

8. *Silvae sunt magnae.* 9. *Terra et silva sunt magnae.* 10. *Ubi est tuba parva?*

11. *Ubi est parva tuba?*¹ 12. *Via lāta est longa.*

(Give the Latin for the following, marking long vowels in written work.)

30. 1. The road is broad. 2. Where is the broad road? 3. The countries are small. 4. The forest is large. 5. Where are the large

¹ See 22.

forests? 6. The good trumpet is small. 7. The good trumpets are small. 8. The forests are long and broad.

LESSON IV

THE FIRST CONJUGATION: PRESENT TENSE, ACTIVE VOICE

31. MODEL VERB

	SINGULAR	ENDINGS
<i>First Person</i>	a'mō, <i>I love, am loving, do love</i>	-ō
<i>Second Person</i>	a'mās, <i>you love, are loving, do love</i>	-s
<i>Third Person</i>	a'mat, (<i>he, she, it</i>) <i>loves, is loving, does love</i>	-t

PLURAL

<i>First Person</i>	amā'mus, <i>we love, are loving, do love</i>	-mus
<i>Second Person</i>	amā'tis, <i>you love, are loving, do love</i>	-tis
<i>Third Person</i>	a'mant, <i>they love, are loving, do love</i>	-nt

a. Latin has no special words for the progressive and emphatic forms, as, *am loving, do love*.

32. **Personal Endings.** The letters -ō, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt are called *personal endings*. When a separate subject of the verb is lacking, they indicate the subject, *I, you* (or *thou*), *he* (*she* or *it*), *we, you, they*: **amant, they love**; but **filiae amant, the daughters love**.

33. **The Present Tense. Stem.** The present tense is formed by adding the personal endings to a fixed part called the *stem*: **amā-**. Verbs having a stem ending in -ā compose the first conjugation and are conjugated like **amō**.

a. Final ā of the stem becomes short in the third person and disappears before -ō in the first person.

34.

VOCABULARY

<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Verbs</i>	<i>Stem</i>
agri'cola, farmer	amō, I love	amā-
nauta, sailor	laudō, I praise	laudā-
rēgī'na, queen	portō, I carry	portā-
<i>Adverb</i>	pugnō, I fight	pugnā-
nōn, not	vocō, I call	vocā-

Interrogative Pronoun

SINGULAR, **quis?** *who?* PLURAL, **qui?** *who?*

a. Conjugate the verbs like **amō**. Form the plural of the nouns.

EXERCISES

35. 1. Laudat. 2. Laudant. 3. Laudāmus. 4. Nōn laudātis. 5. Nōn portō. 6. Portās. 7. Nōn vocās. 8. Vocātis. 9. Vocāmus. 10. Vocant. 11. Pugnant. 12. Pugnat.

36. 1. He calls. 2. He carries. 3. They are. 4. They are carrying. 5. He is. 6. He is carrying. 7. You are. 8. You are praising. 9. You are calling. 10. I do not praise. 11. He does not fight. 12. We do not fight.

37. 1. Quis laudat? 2. Rēgīna laudat. 3. Quī laudant? 4. Rēgīnae laudant. 5. Quis portat? 6. Agricola portat. 7. Agricolae portant. 8. Ubi est nauta? 9. Nauta pugnat. 10. Agricolae nōn pugnant. 11. Quī vocant? 12. Nauta et agricola vocant. 13. Agricolae nōn sunt nautae. 14. Agricola nōn laudat. 15. Quī portant? 16. Nautae portant.

38. 1. The daughter is calling. 2. The daughters call. 3. The daughters do not call. 4. The queen loves. 5. The queens do love. 6. Where are the good queens? 7. Who is a sailor? 8. I am a sailor.

LESSON V

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE. THE DIRECT OBJECT

39. The case of the direct object in Latin is called the *accusative*. In the singular of most words and in the plural of many, it differs from the nominative in form.

40. Nouns and adjectives ending in *-a* have the accusative singular in *-am* and the accusative plural in *-ās*:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i> filia	filiae
<i>Acc.</i> filiam	filiās

41. MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Nauta filiam bonam vocat**, *the sailor calls (his) good daughter.*
2. **Filiās bonās nauta vocat**, *the sailor calls (his) good*

DAUGHTERS.

a. **Word Order.** The object, as a rule, stands between the subject and the verb, but when emphatic it stands out of this position, as in sentence 2.

b. The words for *my, your, his, her*, and the like are sometimes omitted in Latin, when the meaning is clear without them.

42. **RULE. Direct Object.** *The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.*

43. VOCABULARY

<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Verbs</i>	<i>Stem</i>
aqua , <i>water</i>	dō , <i>I give</i>	da-
victōria , <i>victory</i>	nūntiō , <i>I report, an-</i>	nūntiā-
Galba , <i>Galba, a man's name</i>	<i>nounce</i>	

a. The present tense of **dō** is: **dō, dās, dat, damus, datis, dant.** **a** is short, by exception to the rule, in the stem **da-** and in **damus, datis.**

EXERCISES

44. 1. Nautam laudāmus. 2. Nautās vocāmus. 3. Rēgīna filiās vocat. 4. Rēgīnam filiae vocant. 5. Galba terram magnam laudat. 6. Nautae rēgīnās bonās laudant. 7. Quis tubam dat? 8. Quī tubās dant? 9. Agricola silvam lātam amat. 10. Agricolae aquam portant. 11. Quis victōriam nūntiat? 12. Galba magnam victōriam nūntiat. 13. Tubās longās portāmus. 14. Rēgīnam bonam amātis. 15. Nautae victōriās magnās nūntiant.

45. 1. We give. 2. You report. 3. He is giving. 4. They are reporting. 5. Who is reporting? 6. Where is the good water? 7. I love the broad forests. 8. They are calling the farmers and the sailors. 9. Who carries the water?

LESSON VI

THE FIRST DECLENSION: SINGULAR

THE GENITIVE CASE

46. **Declension.** We have seen that the objective form of a Latin noun differs from the nominative. So we shall see that the possessive is different, just as in English we say *boy's*, in distinction from *boy*. We shall find also that there are special endings to indicate *of*, *to*, *from*, *by*, etc., where the English uses prepositions. A noun, therefore, shows its relation to other words by its form or case. When words are changed to show different cases and numbers, they are said to be *inflected* or *declined*.

47. **Cases.** Latin nouns have five cases:

1. The *nominative*, the case of the subject.
2. The *genitive*, denoting possession, or the object with *of*; the *of* case.
3. The *dative*, the case of the indirect object; the *to* or *for* case.

4. The *accusative*, the case of the direct object.
 5. The *ablative*, the case used adverbially; the *from*, *by*, *with*, or *in* case.

a. Some nouns have another form called the *vocative* case, denoting the person addressed; a few have a *locative* case, denoting the place where.

48.	MODEL NOUN	ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i>	tu'ba, a (the) trumpet	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	tu'bae, a (the) trumpet's, of a (the) trumpet	-ae
<i>Dat.</i>	tu'bae, to or for a (the) trumpet	-ae
<i>Acc.</i>	tu'bam, a (the) trumpet	-am
<i>Abl.</i>	tu'bā, by or with a (the) trumpet	-ā

49. **Case Endings.** Base. -a, -ae, -ae, -am, -ā are called *case endings* of the singular number. The part of a declined word to which the endings are added is called the *base*: **tub-**. Words declined like **tuba** are said to belong to the first declension.

50. THE GENITIVE OF POSSESSION

Rēgīna *filiam* **nautae** amat, *the queen loves the sailor's daughter (or the daughter of the sailor).*

In this sentence the ending **-ae** of **nautae** has the same meaning as *'s* in *sailor's*, answering the question *Whose?* A genitive so used is called a *genitive of possession* and is equivalent to the English possessive, or the objective with *of*.

a. The genitive, as a rule, follows the noun that it limits.

51. **RULE. Possession.** *A word denoting the owner or the possessor is in the genitive case.*

52.

VOCABULARY

<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Verbs</i>	<i>Stem</i>
cōpia, <i>plenty, supply</i> ; pl. <i>supplies, forces, troops</i>	accūsō, <i>I accuse</i>	accūsā-
Cornēlia, <i>Cornelia</i>	pācō, <i>I subdue, pacify</i>	pācā-
epistula, <i>letter, epistle</i>	<i>Adverb</i>	
Iūlia, <i>Julia</i>	semper, <i>always</i>	

a. Decline like **tuba** the nouns of 52, and also those of 27, 34, and 43.

EXERCISES

53. 1. Filia agricolae. 2. Terra rēgīnae. 3. Tuba nautae.
 4. Epistula Iūliae. 5. Cōpia aquae. 6. Rēgīna terrae.
 7. Victōria Galbae. 8. Aqua silvae.

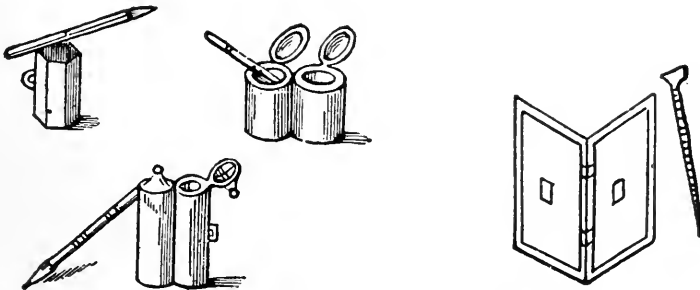


A STREET IN POMPEII

54. 1. Rēgīna terrae est bona. 2. Terra rēgīnae est magna. 3. Viae terrae sunt longae. 4. Filiās agricolae laudāmus. 5. Filiam Galbae vocāmus. 6. Victōriam nau-

tae nūntiat. 7. Agricola cōpiam aquae portat. 8. Quis agricolās accūsāt? 9. Galba agricolās rēgīnae accūsāt. 10. Epistula Galbae nōn est longa. 11. Ubi sunt epistulae Iūliae? 12. Nautae epistulās Cornēliae portant. 13. Cōpiaie terram pācant.

55. 1. Who is Cornelia? 2. Cornelia is the farmer's daughter. 3. Cornelia's letters are always long. 4. You are the queen's sailors. 5. Who does not praise the queen of the great land? 6. I accuse the troops of Galba. 7. Galba always praises (his) troops. 8. The troops do not always fight.



WRITING MATERIALS USED BY ROMANS
Showing ancient inkstands, wax tablet, and stylus

LESSON VII

THE FIRST DECLENSION: PLURAL

THE DATIVE CASE

56.

MODEL NOUN

		ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i>	tu'bae, (the) trumpets	-ae
<i>Gen.</i>	tubā'rum, (the) trumpets', of (the) trumpets	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	tu'bīs, to or for (the) trumpets	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	tu'bās, (the) trumpets	-ās
<i>Abl.</i>	tu'bīs, by or with (the) trumpets	-īs

57. **Case Endings.** -ae, -ārum, -īs, -ās, -īs are the plural case endings of the first declension. Notice that -ae is the ending of three different cases: the genitive singular, the dative singular, and the nominative plural; the rest of the sentence will determine which case is meant.

a. The dative and ablative plural of *fīlia* is *filiabus*, not *filiis*, to distinguish it from *filius* (100).

58. **Declension of Adjectives.** Adjectives are declined like nouns. When used together, they have the same case and number.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	tuba longa	tubae longae
<i>Gen.</i>	tubae longae	tubārum longārum
<i>Dat.</i>	tubae longae	tubīs longīs
<i>Acc.</i>	tubam longam	tubās longās
<i>Abl.</i>	tubā longā	tubīs longīs

59. THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT

Verbs like *give*, *tell*, *report* may require an *indirect* object to complete their meaning, that is, an object *to* or *for* which something is given, said, or done.

Galba filiae epistulam dat, Galba gives his daughter a letter (or a letter to his daughter).

Daughter and *filiae* in this illustration are indirect objects, answering the question *To whom?*

a. The word "dative" comes from *dō*, *I give*, and means primarily the case of the object to which something is *given*.

b. **Word Order.** The indirect object, as a rule, stands before the direct.

60. **RULE.** *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.*

61.

VOCABULARY

Nouns
incola, inhabitant
insula, island
patria, native land
pecūnia, money

Nouns
puella, girl
sagitta, arrow
Adjective
clāra, (clear), famous, renowned
Conjunction
sed, but

a. Decline the nouns above and those of former lessons in both numbers.



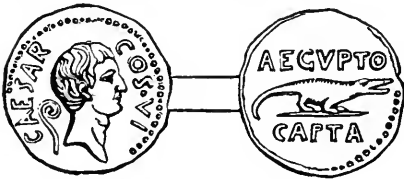
ROMAN GIRL

EXERCISES

62. 1. Puellae bonae. 2. Puellis bonis. 3. Puellarum bonarum. 4. Reginis bonis. 5. Filiarum parvarum. 6. Filiabus parvis. 7. Silvarum latarum. 8. Sagittae longae. 9. Sagittae agricolarum. 10. Pecunia nautarum.

63. 1. Sagittae nautarum sunt longae. 2. Viae terrarum sunt latae. 3. Filiae reginarum sunt bonae. 4. Galbae tubam do. 5. Puellis parvis tubas do. 6. Quis victoriam agricolarum nuntiat? 7. Quis agricolis victoriam nuntiat? 8. Iulia puellae parvae pecuniam dat. 9. Iuliae epistulam longam damus. 10. Galba agricolae sagittas dat. 11. Agricola nautis copiam sagittarum dant. 12. Incolae patriam amant. 13. Incolae insularum sunt nautae. 14. Insula est parva, sed regina incolarum est clara.

64. 1. The girl is Galba's daughter. 2. You always praise good girls. 3. Where are the sailor's arrows? 4. Where are the sailors' arrows? 5. Who is giving water to the queen's daughter? 6. Cornelia and Julia are reporting the victories to the girls. 7. They do not give the farmer a supply of money. 8. The troops of the great countries are fighting.



COIN OF JULIUS CAESAR

LESSON VIII

THE ABLATIVE CASE. ORDER OF WORDS

65. **The Ablative Case.** When English uses *from*, *by*, *with*, or *in* and the objective case, Latin uses the *ablative*, sometimes with a separate preposition, sometimes without. This case, in words of the first declension, has the endings *-ā* (singular) and *-īs* (plural), as given in sections 48 and 56. Thus, *the troops fight with arrows in the forest* is *cōpiae sagittis in silvā pugnant*. *Sagittis* shows *by*, or *with*, *what means*

they fight, and is called an *ablative of means*. *Silvā*, with the preposition *in*, tells the *place where* they fight.

66. RULE. **Ablative of Means.** *The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

67. RULE. **Ablative of Place with In.** *The place where is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition in.*

68. **Order of Words.** The normal order of words in a Latin sentence is: (1) the subject; (2) the modifiers of the subject; (3) the modifiers of the verb; (4) the verb. This normal order, however, is often changed, because the relation of Latin words is shown by their endings, and not by their position as in English. Thus, if we transpose *Galba cōpiās laudat* to *cōpiās Galba laudat*, we emphasize the object. If we say *laudat cōpiās Galba*, we emphasize the act of praising. Any word becomes emphatic by standing out of its normal position.

a. The position of adjectives and of the genitive, dative, and accusative cases has already been mentioned.

b. A word in the ablative normally precedes the object and other modifiers of the verb: *Iūlia in viā rēginæ epistulam dat*, *Julia in the road gives a letter to the queen*.

c. Most adverbs precede the word they modify: *Cōpiae nōn semper pugnant*, *the troops do not always fight*.

d. Forms of *sum* stand practically as in English: *Viae sunt longae*.

69.

VOCABULARY

Nouns

fossa, ditch
Ītalia, Italy
prōvincia, province

Adjectives

alta, high, deep
nova, new

Preposition

in, with abl., in

Verbs

iuvō, I help, I aid
vulnerō, I wound

Stem

iuvā-
vulnerā-

EXERCISES

70. 1. In silvīs lātīs. 2. In viīs novīs. 3. In terrā magnā.
4. In aquā altā. 5. In fossīs altīs. 6. In prōvinciā parvā.
7. In prōvinciīs parvīs. 8. Iuvant. 9. Vulnerant. 10. Iuvās.
11. Vulnerātis. 12. Nōn iuvat.

71. 1. Parva puella aquā cōpiās iuvat. 2. Cōpiae sagittīs
nautās vulnerant. 3. Fīliae rēgīnārum pecūniā Galbam
iuvant. 4. Galba sagittā agricolam nōn vulnerat. 5. Fossae
sunt altae. 6. In prōvinciā sunt fossae altae. 7. Aqua nōn
est in fossīs. 8. In Ītaliā nōn sunt magnaē silvae.

72. 1. Where are the new trumpets? 2. Galba is giving the
new trumpets to (his)¹ daughters. 3. The farmers in the provinces
carry good arrows. 4. (There)¹ is a good queen in Italy. 5. We
are not aiding the queen with supplies. 6. There are great sup-
plies in the land of the good queen. 7. The money is in the deep
water. 8. He gives the signal² with a trumpet.

LESSON IX

THE SECOND CONJUGATION: PRESENT TENSE

THE ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS

73. MODEL VERB. STEM: *MONĒ-*

SINGULAR

mo'neō, I warn, am warning, do warn

mo'nēs, you warn, are warning, do warn

mo'net, (he, she, it) warns, is warning, does warn

PLURAL

monē'mus, we warn, are warning, do warn

monē'tis, you warn, are warning, do warn

mo'nent, (they) warn, are warning, do warn

¹ Omit words in parentheses.

² Signum.

74. Verbs with stems ending in *-ē* compose the second conjugation and are inflected like *moneō*. In the model verb notice that the personal endings are the same as those of the first conjugation (32).

75. **The Accusative with Prepositions.** In the last lesson we saw that a Latin preposition may be used with the ablative case (65). Prepositions may also be used with the accusative: *trāns viam*, *across the road*; *per viam*, *through the road*; *inter viās*, *between the roads*.

a. The accusative and the ablative are the only cases used with Latin prepositions.

76. **RULE.** *A noun connected with another word by a preposition may be in the accusative case.*

77. **VOCABULARY**

Prepositions Governing the Accusative

Nouns

inter, *between, among*

porta, *gate*

per, *through*

praeda, *booty, plunder*

trāns, *across, beyond*

pugna, *fight, battle*

ante, *before* (in space or time)

Verbs

Stem

habeō, *I have*

habē-

post, *after, behind* (in space or time)

moneō, *I warn, I advise*

monē-

timeō, *I fear*

timē-

videō, *I see*

vidē-

a. Inflect the nouns and verbs.

EXERCISES

78. 1. Ante pugnam. 2. Post pugnās. 3. Post portam.
 4. Inter portās. 5. Per silvam. 6. Trāns fossās. 7. Vidēs.
 8. Habēs. 9. Vidētis. 10. Habētis. 11. Vidēmus.
 12. Habēmus.

79. 1. He sees. 2. He fears. 3. You are fearing. 4. We do not fear. 5. They do not have. 6. Behind the forest. 7. Between

the countries. 8. Across the country. 9. Through the water.
10. Before the victory.

Memorize:

Via trīta, via tūta.¹

The beaten path is the safe path.



THE ANCIENT PORTA OSTIENSIS

Now known as the Porta San Paolo

80. 1. Viās novās videō. 2. Puellae nōn timent. 3. Rē-
gīnam timēmus. 4. Quī rēgīnam monent? 5. Ubi est praeda
nautārum? 6. Agricōlis praedam nōn dant. 7. Galba in
Ītaliā cōpiās habet. 8. Sagittās cōpiārum nōn timēs.

¹ The verb is often omitted in proverbs.

9. Praedam trāns prōvinciam portant. 10. Quis trāns viās epistulam et pecūniam portat? 11. Cōpiae sunt ante portam. 12. Post pugnam victōriam nūntiāmus. 13. Puellae longam epistulam habent. 14. Cōpiam aquae bonae semper habēmus.

81. 1. The new gates are large. 2. You do not see the gate. 3. The sailors' plunder is in the forest. 4. Galba and Julia warn the good queen. 5. Who sees the farmer's little daughter? 6. Who fears the deep water? 7. (There) is a large forest between the countries. 8. The victory is not before the battle.

LESSON X

REVIEW

82. The following list includes the Latin words of lessons III–IX, except proper nouns.

agricola	pecūnia	tuba	parva	et	pācō
aqua	porta	via	quis	sed	portō
cōpia	praeda	victōria	nōn	ubi	pugnō
epistula	prōvincia	alta	semper	sum	vocō
fīlia	puella	bona	ante	accūsō	vulnerō
fossa	pugna	clāra	in	amō	habeō
incola	rēgīna	lāta	inter	dō	moneō
īnsula	sagitta	longa	per	iuvō	timeō
nauta	silva	magna	post	laudō	videō
patria	terra	nova	trāns	nūntiō	

83. Mention some English words formed from these. For example, *filial* comes from **fīlia**; *magnify* from **magna**; *portable* from **portō**. When you are uncertain about a derivation, consult an English dictionary that gives the foreign words from which our words are derived.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

84. 1. What are the case endings of the first declension? 2. What are the personal endings of the present tense? 3. What is meant by *base*? 4. What is the stem of a verb? 5. Decline *via lāta*. 6. Conjugate the present tense of *sum*; of *vocō*; of *videō*. 7. What is an indirect object? 8. How is the genitive case used? The dative? 9. Name two uses of the accusative; two of the ablative. 10. How does the order of words in Latin differ from that in English?

ĪTALIA

85. Ītalia est magna terra Eurōpae.¹ Terra nōn īnsula, sed paenīnsula longa est. Incolae sunt agricolae et nautae. Patriam et linguam patriae amant. Bonam rēginam habent. Rēgīna incolās iuvat, et vīta est beāta. In Ītaliā sunt viae longae, quae² sunt antīquae et clārae.

LESSON XI

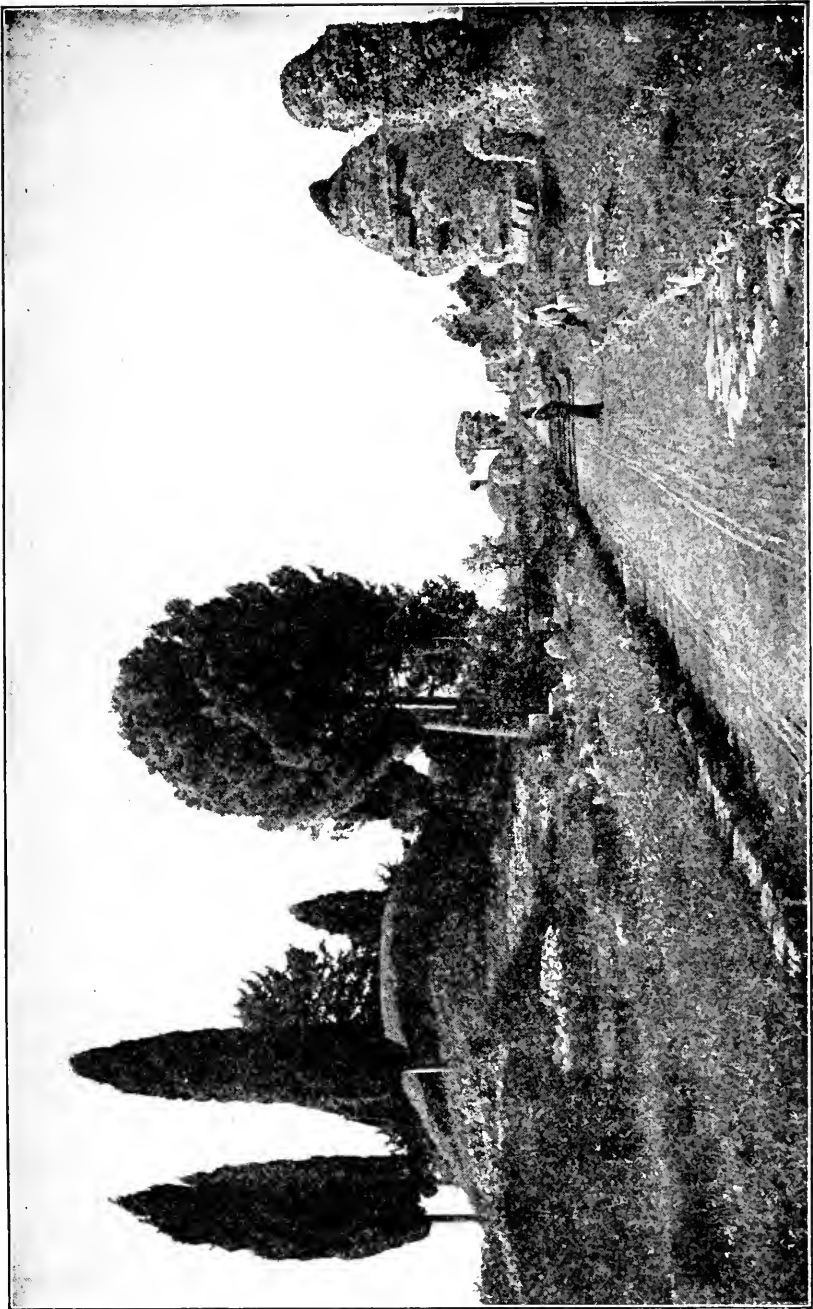
GENDER. THE SECOND DECLENSION: MASCULINE NOUNS

86. **Gender.** Latin, like English, has the masculine, feminine, and neuter genders. English words are masculine or feminine according as they signify male or female beings. So in Latin *nauta* is masculine and *filia* feminine. This is called *natural* gender. But in Latin many words are masculine or feminine which are neuter in English. Thus, for example, *aqua*, *via*, and *tuba* are feminine. The gender of such words is said to be *grammatical* and is determined by the form or *ending* of the noun, without regard to its meaning.

This idea is not so strange as it may seem, if we recall that

¹ For new words see the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

² *Which*, nom. pl.



THE APPIAN WAY

we say of a ship, "*She* is a staunch vessel," and speak of our country and *her* glory, the sun and *his* rays.

a. All nouns of the first declension are feminine, except a few which denote males.

87. The Second Declension. Most nouns of the second declension end in **-us** or **-um**. Nouns in **-us** are masculine, those in **-um** are neuter.

88. MODEL NOUN

SINGULAR		ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i>	car'rus, a (the) cart	-us
<i>Gen.</i>	car'rī, a (the) cart's, of a (the) cart	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	car'rō, to or for a (the) cart	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	car'rum, a (the) cart	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	car'rō, by or with a (the) cart	-ō
PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	car'rī, (the) carts	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	carrō'rum, (the) carts', of the carts	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	car'rīs, to or for (the) carts	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	car'rōs, (the) carts	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	car'rīs, by or with (the) carts	-īs

a. What is the base (49) of *carrus*?

89. Vir, man, has lost the ending of the nominative singular. The declension is:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i> vir	virī
<i>Gen.</i> virī	virōrum
<i>Dat.</i> virō	virīs
<i>Acc.</i> virum	virōs
<i>Abl.</i> virō	virīs

90.

VOCABULARY

amicus, -ī, ¹ M., ² friend	Mārcus, -ī, M., Marcus, a man's name
carrus, -ī, M., cart	
equus, equī, M., horse	servus, -ī, M., slave, servant
lēgātus, -ī, M., lieutenant, ambassador	vīcus, -ī, M., village
	vir, virī, M., man

a. The base of **equus** is **equ-**. The endings are added regularly to this.

Memorize:

Vīta sine litterīs mors est.

Life without literature is death.

Lūx et vēritās.

Light and truth. (The motto of Yale University)

EXERCISES

91. 1. Rēgīna servum laudat. 2. Galba amīcōs amat. 3. Lēgātum timent. 4. Amīcī servōs vocant. 5. Sagitta equum vulnerat. 6. Quī lēgātum monent?

92. 1. The farmers have carts. 2. We see the men. 3. You are helping Marcus. 4. Who sees the horses? 5. The slaves do not fight. 6. Who is calling the man?

93. 1. Mārcus equōs et carrōs habet. 2. Mārcus agricolās carrīs iuvat. 3. Quis inter silvās vīcōs videt? 4. Amīcus Iūliae trāns vīcum epistolam portat. 5. Virī amīcō lēgātī epistolās dant. 6. Amīcōs in vīcīs Ītaliae habēmus. 7. Lēgātum et cōpiās nōn accūsāmus. 8. Nōn estis servī rēgīnae. 9. Vir et servus sunt inter viās vīcī. 10. Pecūniam servīs nōn dat. 11. Lēgātī amīcīs Galbae et Mārcī victōriam magnam nūntiant. 12. Sumus amīcī lēgātōrum et nautārum.

94. 1. The horses and carts are in the village. 2. I do not fear the friend of Marcus. 3. The girls give good water to the man's

¹ In the vocabularies the genitive ending is indicated after the noun.

² The gender of nouns is indicated by M., F., or N.

horses. 4. Where are the lieutenant and the sailor? 5. Galba's servants are warning the men. 6. The lieutenant praises (his) new troops. 7. (There) are villages and long roads in the province.

LESSON XII

THE SECOND DECLENSION: NEUTER NOUNS

APPOSITIVE AND PREDICATE NOUNS

95.

MODEL NOUN

	SINGULAR	ENDINGS
Nom.	pī'lum, a (the) javelin	-um
Gen.	pī'lī, a (the) javelin's, of a (the) javelin	-ī
Dat.	pī'lō, to or for a (the) javelin	-ō
Acc.	pī'lum, a (the) javelin	-um
Abl.	pī'lō, by or with a (the) javelin	-ō

PLURAL

Nom.	pī'la, (the) javelins	-a
Gen.	pīlō'rum, (the) javelins', of the javelins	-ōrum
Dat.	pī'līs, to or for (the) javelins	-īs
Acc.	pī'la, (the) javelins	-a
Abl.	pī'līs, by or with (the) javelins	-īs

a. What is the base of pīlum?

96. Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** have the genitive singular in **-ī** (not **-īi**): **filius**, son, **fīlī**, of a son; **proelium**, battle, **proelī**, of the battle. The other cases retain the **-ī** of the base: dat. **fīliō**, **proeliō**, etc.

a. The genitive singular of words in **-ius** and **-ium** is accented on the penult even when this is short: **impe'rī**, genitive of **imperium**, command.

97.

APPOSITIVE AND PREDICATE NOUNS

I. Galba, **filius lēgātī**, est nauta, Galba, the lieutenant's son, is a sailor.

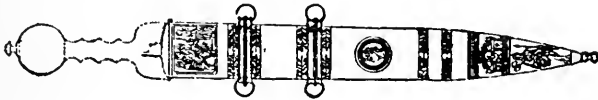
2. **Galbam, filium lēgātī, videō, I see Galba, the lieutenant's son.**

a. A noun used to explain or define another is an *appositive* noun, or a noun in apposition. Such nouns agree in case, as **filius** and **filium** in the models.

b. A noun in the predicate used with an intransitive or a passive verb, to define the subject, is a *predicate* noun. It agrees with the subject, as **nauta** above.¹

98. **RULE. Agreement of an Appositive.** *A noun in apposition with another noun or pronoun agrees with it in case.*

99. **RULE. Agreement of a Predicate Noun.** *A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.*



AN ANCIENT ROMAN SWORD

100.

VOCABULARY

filius, fili, M., son

gladius, gladi, M., sword

Lūcius, Lūcī, M., Lucius, a man's name

nuntius, nūntī, M., messenger; message

frūmentum, -ī, N., grain; pl. crops

pīlum, -ī, N., javelin, spear
praemium, praemī, N., reward

crōelium, proeli, N., battle

oppīdum, -ī, N., town

signum, -ī, N., (sign), signal; standard (military)

cūr, adv., why?

Memorize:

Fortēs fortūna iuvat.

Fortune favors the brave.

Fortī et fidēli nīl difficile.

To the brave and faithful, nothing is difficult.

¹ A predicate noun is usually a predicate nominative, but may be a predicate accusative, as will be seen later (190).

EXERCISES

101. 1. Rēgīna praemia dat. 2. Puellae pīla timent. 3. Proelium nūntiant. 4. Filiī nautam laudant. 5. Filiōs nauta laudat. 6. Virī gladiōs habent. 7. Frūmentum damus. 8. Nūntius pīlum portat. 9. Sīgnum videt. 10. Quī oppida vident?

102. 1. Filiī et filiae Galbae, lēgātī, sunt in oppidō. 2. Cūr nūntius rēgīnam monet? 3. Lēgātus sīgnum proelī dat. 4. Nūntiī filiis et filiabus nautārum epistulās dant. 5. Inter oppida et vicōs est silva magna. 6. Virī nōn sunt servī; sunt nautae. 7. Gladiōs, pīla, et sagittās nōn habemus. 8. Gladiī, pīla, et sagittae ante portam oppidī sunt. 9. Filium et filiam Mārcī vocat. 10. Filiī Galbae et Lūcī frūmentō virōs iuvant. 11. Cūr sīgna nōn vidētis? 12. Lūcius, servus agricolae, magnam cōpiam frūmentī nōn habet. 13. Agricola equīs frūmentum nōn dat.

103. 1. They are fighting with swords and javelins. 2. The towns and villages are in the province. 3. The messenger reports the battle. 4. The farmers carry the grain through the towns of Italy. 5. The troops do not fight before the signal. 6. The friend of the lieutenant gives a reward to the slaves. 7. Who fears the swords and javelins? 8. Who are the friends of the men? 9. The men are aiding the sailor's sons.



SĪGNUM (AQUILA)

LESSON XIII

THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS: PRESENT INDICATIVE. THE PRESENT INFINITIVE

104. MODEL VERBS

THIRD CONJUGATION

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Stem: **rege-**Stem: **audi-**

SINGULAR

re'gō, *I rule*¹au'diō, *I hear*¹re'gis, *you rule*au'dīs, *you hear*re'git, (*he, she, it*) *rules*au'dit, (*he, she, it*) *hears*

PLURAL

re'gimus, *we rule*audī'mus, *we hear*re'gitis, *you rule*audī'tis, *you hear*re'gunt, (*they*) *rule*au'diunt, (*they*) *hear*

105. Verbs with stems in **-e** (not **ē**) compose the third conjugation and are conjugated like **regō**; verbs with stems in **-ī** compose the fourth conjugation and are conjugated like **audiō**.

a. Notice in **regō** that **-e** of the stem does not appear before **-ō**, that it becomes **-u-** before **-nt**, and **-i-** before the other endings. In **audiō** notice that **-u-** stands between the stem and **-nt**. How does the length of **-i-** differ in the two conjugations?

106. **The Present Infinitive.** Latin verbs have infinitive forms. The present infinitive active is the stem plus the ending **-re**: **amāre**, *to love*; **monēre**, *to warn*; **regere**, *to rule*; **audire**, *to hear*.

a. What are the infinitives of **laudō**, **portō**, **pugnō**, **vocō**; **habeō**, **timeō**, **videō**?

107. **Four Conjugations.** The four conjugations, the present indicative forms of which have now been given, include

¹ The progressive and emphatic meanings may also be given.

all regular Latin verbs. As we have seen, a conjugation is distinguished by the final vowel of the stem: *-ā, -ē, -e, -ī*, sometimes called the *characteristic* vowel. The stem is best seen in the infinitive, which hereafter will be printed in the vocabularies.

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Stem</i>	<i>Conjugation</i>	<i>Shown by</i>
amō	amāre	amā-	I	-āre
moneō	monēre	monē-	II	-ēre
regō	regere	rege-	III	-ere
audiō	audire	audī-	IV	-ire

108.

VOCABULARY

parō, parāre, <i>prepare, get ready</i>	regō, regere, <i>rule</i>
dēbeō, dēbere, <i>owe; (with inf.) ought</i>	audiō, audire, <i>hear</i>
dēfendō, dēfendere, <i>defend, protect</i>	mūniō, mūnire, <i>fortify</i>
mittō, mittere, <i>send</i>	veniō, venire, <i>come</i>

a. Conjugate the above verbs.

109. **Use of the Infinitive.** The infinitive may be used, as in English, like a verbal noun. Accordingly, it may be a subject or predicate nominative, an appositive, an object or complement: *Nautam iuvāre dēbēmus, we ought to aid the sailor.* When an infinitive fills out the meaning of another verb, as *iuvāre* does, it is called a *complementary* infinitive.

110. **RULE. Complementary Infinitive.** *An infinitive may be used to complete the meaning of another verb, as begin, decide, be able, dare, seem, ought, wish, hasten, hesitate, prepare.*

EXERCISES

111. 1. Parat, dēbet, mittit, venit. 2. Parāmus, dēbēmus, mittimus, venīmus. 3. Dēfendunt, mūniunt. 4. Oppidum mūnītis. 5. Tubās nōn audiō.

112. 1. They prepare. 2. They ought. 3. They send. 4. They come. 5. You are defending the queen. 6. Who is ruling? 7. Lucius and Galba are ruling.

113. 1. Cōpiaē terram dēfendere dēbent. 2. Amīcus Mārī per vīcum venit. 3. Lēgātus oppida munīre dēbet. 4. Nūntium trāns prōvinciam mittunt. 5. Servī venīre parant. 6. Rēgīna ante portam nūntium audit. 7. Rēgīnam bonam timēre nōn dēbēs. 8. Servus cōpiam frūmentī parat. 9. Filiōs et filiās amīcōrum dēfenditis. 10. Cūr epistulās nōn mittis? 11. Tubam audīmus et sīgnum vidēmus.

114. 1. The girl is sending letters. 2. The troops are preparing to fight. 3. You ought to see the forest. 4. The son of the lieutenant defends (his) friends. 5. I ought to praise the man. 6. Who is coming through the gate? 7. Why do they not fortify the towns?

LESSON XIV

ADJECTIVES IN -US, -A, -UM. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

115. **Declension of Adjectives.** Latin adjectives have different endings, denoting gender, number, and case; not because they have these properties themselves, but because they are used with nouns having them. We have learned that adjectives ending in **-a** are declined like **tuba** (58). These are feminine. The same adjectives have masculine forms in **-us**, declined like **carrus**, and neuter forms in **-um**, declined like **pīlum**. They are called adjectives of the first and second declensions, ending in **-us, -a, -um**.

116. MODEL ADJECTIVE¹

	SINGULAR		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō

¹ Learn and recite the three genders of each case together, thus: **bonus, bona, bonum; bonī, bonae, bonī;** etc.

	MASCULINE	PLURAL FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

117. VOCABULARY

aedifi'cium, aedifi'cī, N.,	dēnsus, -a, -um, dense
<i>building</i>	malus, -a, -um, bad
mūrus, -ī, M., wall	multus, -a, -um, much; pl., many
Gallia, -ae, F., Gaul¹	Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic
Gallus, -ī, M., a Gaul; pl., the	nunc, adv., now
<i>Gauls (inhabitants of Gaul)</i>	

a. The adjectives already given are **altus, -a, -um; bonus, -a, -um; clārus, -a, -um; lātus, -a, -um; longus, -a, -um; magnus, -a, -um; novus, -a, -um; parvus, -a, -um.**

b. Decline together **carrus novus; vir magnus; pīlum longum; porta parva.**

118. Agreement. When an adjective is used with a noun, it must show by its ending the same gender, number, and case: **filiās bonās habent; filiōs bonōs habent; pīla bona habent.**

a. This does not mean that the ending of the noun and the adjective must always be the same. For example, a masculine noun of the first declension takes a masculine adjective, which has the endings of the second declension:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
nauta bonus	nautae bonī
nautae bonī	nautārum bonōrum
nautae bonō	nautīs bonīs
nautam bonum	nautās bonōs
nautā bonō	nautīs bonīs

119. RULE. Agreement of Adjectives. *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

¹ The ancient name of the land now including France, Belgium, and Switzerland.

120. Attributive and Predicate Adjectives. When an adjective stands with a noun, as in *He has a large sword*, it is called an *attributive* adjective.¹ When it stands in the predicate, as in *The sword is large*, it is a *predicate* adjective. The same distinction is made in Latin: **Gladium magnum habet; Gladius est magnus.**

EXERCISES

121. 1. Amīcō bonō. 2. Amīcīs bonīs. 3. Vīcī parvī. 4. Vīcōrum parvōrum. 5. In oppidō longō. 6. In oppidīs longīs. 7. Inter servōs bonōs. 8. Inter multōs agricolās. 9. In silvā dēnsā. 10. Trāns vīcum lātum. 11. Multum in parvō.

122. 1. The high walls. 2. The long battles. 3. The new farmers. 4. With a large horse. 5. To the bad slave. 6. To the bad slaves. 7. Of the little son. 8. Of the little sons. 9. In the dense forests.

123. 1. Per silvam dēnsam venit. 2. Estis filiī bonōrum virōrum. 3. Mūrī oppidōrum sunt altī, nōn lātī. 4. Mārcus, agricola bonus, multōs amīcōs habet. 5. Oppida nova et vīcōs parvōs nunc dēfendunt. 6. Incolae Galliae sunt Gallī. 7. In Galliā sunt multī virī. 8. Gallī sunt bonī nautae et agricolae. 9. Mārcus nōn est Gallus, sed Gallōs laudat. 10. Aedificia Gallica nōn sunt nova. 11. Lēgātus multa praemia nautīs Gallicīs dat. 12. Mūrō longō et fossā altā oppidum mūniunt.

124. 1. They are reporting great battles. 2. The friends send many letters. 3. We ought to aid Lucius, the good farmer. 4. We are not friends of the bad sailors. 5. Who sees the long walls? 6. The messengers are now calling the men with new trumpets. 7. The Gauls do not have broad roads in the forests. 8. The farmer's horses are small. 9. The forests of the Gauls are not large. 10. You owe much grain to the Gallic sailor.

¹ Or *adherent* adjective.

LESSON XV

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN -ER. POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES



ROMAN YOUTH

125. Nouns in -er. Some masculine nouns of the second declension have lost the termination -us and end in -er: **puer**, *boy*, gen. **puerī**, base **puer-**; **ager**, *field*, gen. **agrī**, base **agr-**. Notice that **ager** drops -e- in the base. The base of any declined word is the genitive singular without the case ending. Learn the declension of **puer** and **ager** on page 267.

126. Adjectives in -er. In the same way, some adjectives have lost the termina-

tion -us: **liber**, *libera*, **liberum**, *free*, base **liber-**; **pulcher**, *pulchra*, **pulchrum**, *beautiful*, base **pulchr-**. Learn the declension of these adjectives on pages 270 and 271.

127. Possessive Pronominal Adjectives. The following pronominal adjectives are possessive: **meus**, *my*; **tuus**, (*thy*), *your*; **suus**, *his, her, its, their*; **noster**, *our*; **vester**, *your*.

a. *Your* is expressed by **tuus** when one possessor is addressed, by **vester** when two or more are addressed.

b. The meaning of **suus** is shown by the subject to which it refers:

1. **Galba amicum suum videt**, *Galba sees his friend.*
2. **Iūlia amicum suum videt**, *Julia sees her friend.*
3. **Galba et Iūlia amicum suum vident**, *Galba and Julia see their friend.*

c. As was stated in 41 b, possessives may be omitted in a Latin sentence when the meaning is clear without them.

128.

VOCABULARY

ager, agrī, M., *field*
liber,¹ **librī**, M., *book*
puer, puerī, M., *boy*; pl., *boys*
 or *children*
sīgnifer, sīgniferī, M., *stand-*
ard-bearer
liber, libera, liberum, *free*
miser, misera, miserum,
wretched, unfortunate
meus, -a, -um, *my*

tuus, -a, -um, (*thy*), *your*
suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its,*
their
noster, nostra, nostrum, *our*
vester, vestra, vestrum, *your*
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,
beautiful
magister, magistrī, M., *mas-*
ter, teacher

Memorize:

Alter ipse amicus.

A friend is a second self.

Amicī probantur rēbus adversīs.

Friends are proved by adversity.

EXERCISES

129. 1. Equī trāns agrum veniunt. 2. Nautae puerīs multās sagittās dant. 3. Ubi sunt librī filiae meae?¹ 4. Sīgnifer magnum sīgnum portat. 5. Lēgātus sīgniferīs sīgna nova dat. 6. Meī amicī sunt tuī amicī. 7. Sumus liberī virī; servī nōn sunt liberī. 8. Virī puerōs et puellās nōn semper laudant. 9. In Ītaliā sunt multī et² pulchrī vicī.

¹ Distinguish **liber** from **liber**.

² English omits the conjunction.

10. Cūr puerum miserum accūsātis? 11. Cornēlia filiās suās et filium nautae mittit. 12. Filiae vestrae sunt pulchrae.



STANDARD BEARERS

13. Gallia est terra libera. 14. Gallī terram suam amant. 15. Ubi est liber tuus? 16. Quis equōs agricolae in agrō videt? 17. Fīliam tuam et filiōs meōs laudō. 18. Cōpiaē rēgīnam terrae suae dēfendunt. 19. Magister noster Mārcum et Cornēliam laudat. 20. Mārcus et Cornēlia magistrum suum laudant. 21. Magistrī puerōrum sunt amīcī vestrī.

130. 1. The boy has a new book. 2. The farmer has broad fields.

3. Marcus is a good friend of the boys. 4. Cornelia praises your books. 5. We are the Gallic standard-bearers. 6. We ought to protect our friends. 7. Our country is not a province. 8. The daughters of Marcus aid the unfortunate slaves. 9. We see the beautiful streets of the town. 10. Where are my slaves? 11. Where are your arrows? 12. Who does not love our free country? 13. The lieutenant calls his son. 14. The lieutenant calls his daughter. 15. The daughters call their servant.

NOTE. As far as possible pupils should answer in Latin the interrogative sentences of the exercises. Thus we may answer sentence 3 of 129 by **Cornēlia librōs filiae tuae habet.**

LESSON XVI

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

131.

VOCABULARY

audācia, -ae, F., *boldness*cūra, -ae, F., *care*studium, studī, N., *zeal, eagerness*Rōma, -ae, F., *Rome*Rōmānus, -ī, M., *a Roman*Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*ad, prep., w.¹ acc., *to*cum, prep., w. abl., *with*in, prep., w. acc., *into*; w. abl., *in*dūcō, dūcere, *lead*

132. How to say *into*. We have learned that the accusative may be used with *ante*, *inter*, *per*, *post*, *trāns* (77), and the ablative with *in* (meaning *in*, 67). The accusative is also used with *in*, meaning *into*:

1. *In oppidō est, he is in the town* (place where).
2. *In oppidum venit, he comes into the town* (place into which).

133. How to say *to*. After verbs meaning *give*, *report*, and the like, the dative ending, as we know, expresses *to*; but after verbs meaning *go*, *come*, *send* (verbs of motion), the accusative with *ad* must be used:

1. *Filiō librum dat, he gives a book to his son* (indirect object).
2. *Ad oppidum venit, he comes to the town* (place to which).

134. RULE. Accusative with *ad* and *in*. The place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with *ad*; the place into which by the accusative with *in*.

135. How to say *with*. In section 65 it was shown that *with*, denoting the means of an action, is expressed by the

¹ w., the abbreviation for *with*.

ablative without a preposition: **Gladiis pugnant**, *they fight with swords*.

a. *With* may denote *accompaniment*: **Puer cum amico venit**, *the boy is coming with a friend*. This regularly requires **cum** and answers the question *With whom?*

b. *With* may also denote *manner*:

1. **Cum cura oppidum muniunt**, *they fortify the town with care*.
2. **Magna (cum) cura oppidum muniunt**, *they fortify the town with great care*.

These phrases answer the questions *How? In what manner?* **Cum** may be omitted if an adjective modifies the ablative.

136. RULE. Ablative of Accompaniment. *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative, regularly with the preposition cum.*

137. RULE. Ablative of Manner. *The manner of an action is expressed by the ablative with cum, but cum may be omitted if an adjective modifies the noun.*

138.

SUMMARY

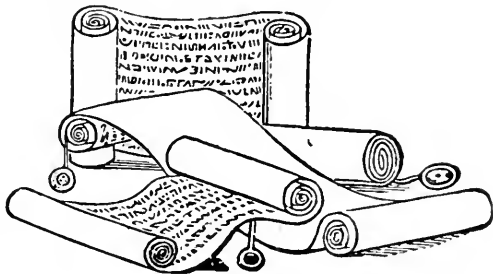
<i>Preposition</i>	<i>Denoting</i>	<i>Expressed by</i>
<i>To</i>	indirect object	dative
<i>To, into</i>	place to which	ad, in, + accusative
<i>In</i>	place where	in + ablative
<i>With</i>	{ means (by means of)	ablative
	{ accompaniment (together with)	cum + ablative
	{ manner (in what manner)	(cum +) ablative

EXERCISES

139. 1. **Nuntium ad reginam mittunt.** 2. **Servi in vicum frumentum portant.** 3. **Copiae magna cum audacia pugnant.** 4. **Galbam cum filiis meis video.** 5. **Galli magno cum studio oppida defendunt.** 6. **Viri in agrum pulchrum**

¹ A preposition of one syllable, like **cum**, often stands between an adjective and its noun: **magna cum cura**, *with great care*.

equōs dūcunt. 7. Amīcī nostrī ad portam veniunt. 8. Quis in prōvinciam cōpiās dūcit? 9. Multī puerī sunt in Galliā. 10. Cūr ad amīcōs vestrōs epistulās nōn mittitis? 11. Lēgātus Mārcō amīcō suō pecūniam nōn dēbet. 12. Agricola filiābus suīs librōs pulchrōs dat. 13. Lēgātus cum Gallīs pugnat. 14. Incolae Rōmae sunt Rōmānī. 15. Gallī sīgna Rōmāna nōn portant.



BOOKS OF ANCIENT ROME

140. 1. The girls are with friends in Italy. 2. The girls send letters to Julia. 3. We owe the slave (to the slave) a supply of grain. 4. The farmer is leading the horse to the water. 5. Galba is coming into the street. 6. They carry the new books carefully (with care). 7. The free men ought to fight very eagerly (with great eagerness). 8. The messenger boldly (with boldness) reports the battle.

LESSON XVII

REVIEW OF LESSONS XI-XVI

141.

VOCABULARY

aedificium	lēgātus	sīgnifer	pulcher	in
ager	liber	sīgnum	meus	parō
amīcus	mūrus	studium	tuus	dēbeō
audācia	nūntius	vīcus	suus	dēfendō
carrus	oppidum	vir	noster	dūcō
cūra	pīlum	dēnsus	vester	mittō
equus	praemium	līber	cūr	regō
filius	proelium	malus	nunc	audiō
frūmentum	puer	miser	ad	mūniō
gladius	servus	multus	cum	veniō

142. Give English derivatives. For example, *library* comes from **liber**, *book*; *liberal* from **liber**, *free*; *audience* from **audiō**.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

143. 1. How does the gender of Latin words differ from the gender of English words? 2. What are the case endings of masculine nouns of the second declension? Of neuter nouns? 3. How does a predicate noun differ from an appositive? 4. Decline **equus**, **filius**, **signum**. 5. How are the four conjugations distinguished? 6. What is a complementary infinitive? 7. Conjugate **dēfendō**. 8. Conjugate **veniō**. 9. Decline **altus**. 10. Decline **agricola magnus**. 11. How do adjectives agree with nouns? 12. How do attributive and predicate adjectives differ? 13. Decline **signifer**. 14. Decline **noster**. 15. Distinguish the ways of expressing *to* in Latin. 16. Distinguish the ways of expressing *with*.

RŌMA

144. In Ītaliā sunt multa et¹ pulchra oppida. Rōma est in Ītaliā. Magna est fāma Rōmae, dominae orbis² terrārum. Altōs mūrōs et multās portās habet. Pulchra sunt aedificia et templa et hortī. Ruinās Forī Rōmānī nunc vidēmus.

LESSON XVIII

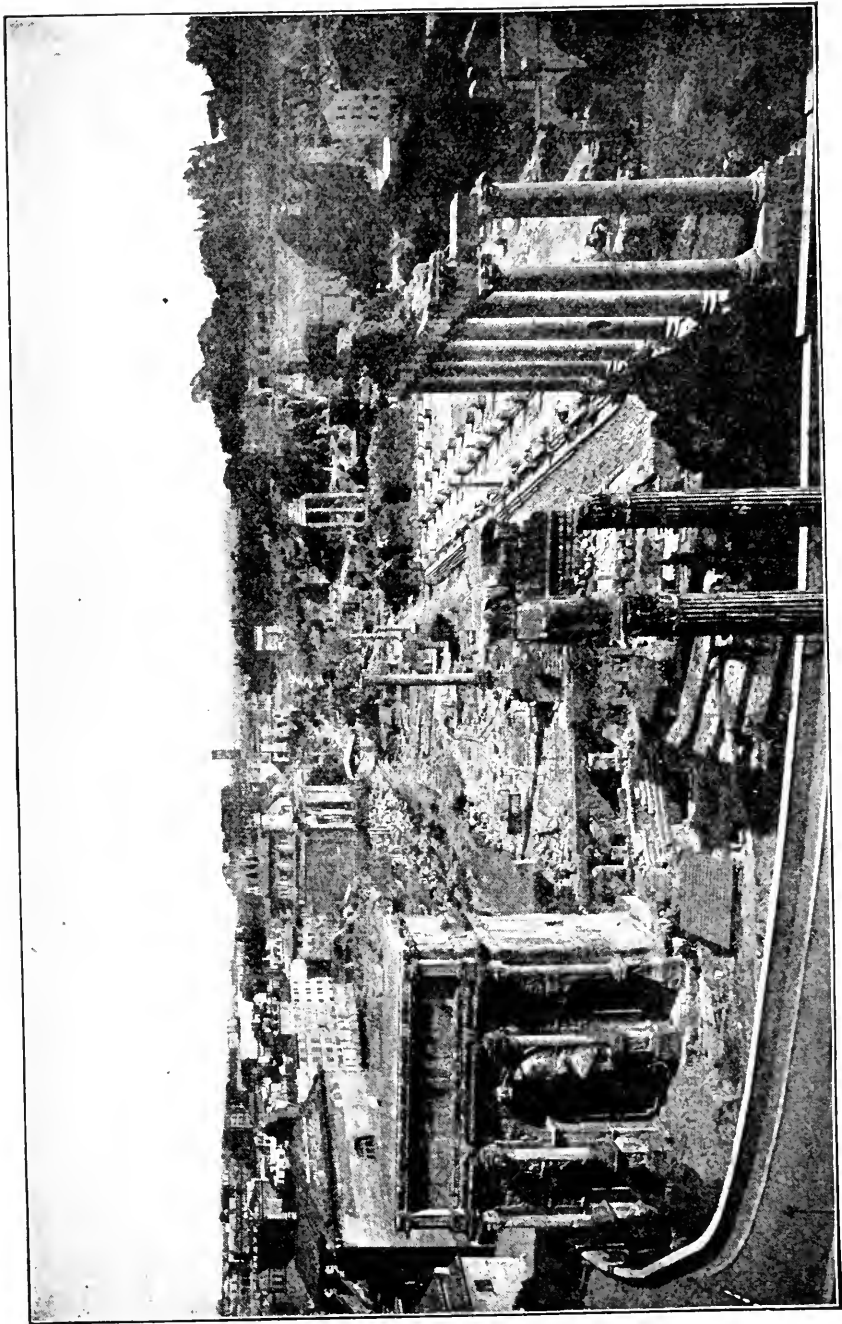
THE PASSIVE VOICE: PRESENT INDICATIVE

THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT

145. **The Passive Voice.** The verbs in the preceding lessons have been in the active voice, the form required when

¹ Omit **et** in translation. Latin regularly requires a conjunction to connect two adjectives belonging to the same noun.

² **Orbis terrārum**, *of the world* (the "circle" of lands).



THE ROMAN FORUM AS IT IS TO-DAY

the subject is represented as *acting* or *being*. Latin verbs have also a passive voice, when the subject is *acted upon*.

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>The boy praises (is praising),</i> puer laudat.	<i>The boy is praised,</i> puer laudātur.
<i>The boy sees (is seeing),</i> puer videt.	<i>The boy is seen,</i> puer vidētur.

146. Passive Endings. The present indicative passive is formed by adding to the stem the following personal endings:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>First Person</i>	-r, I	-mur, we
<i>Second Person</i>	-ris (-re),¹ thou, you	-mini, you
<i>Third Person</i>	-tur, (he, she, it)	-ntur, (they)

147.**MODEL VERBS****FIRST CONJUGATION****SECOND CONJUGATION**

	SINGULAR
<i>a'mor², I am loved³</i>	<i>mo'neor, I am warned³</i>
<i>amā'ris, you are loved</i>	<i>monē'ris, you are warned</i>
<i>amā'tur, (he, she, it) is loved</i>	<i>monē'tur, (he, she, it) is warned</i>
	PLURAL
<i>amā'mur, we are loved</i>	<i>monē'mur, we are warned</i>
<i>amā'minī, you are loved</i>	<i>monē'minī, you are warned</i>
<i>aman'tur, (they) are loved</i>	<i>monen'tur, (they) are warned</i>

a. In **dare**, the infinitive of **dō**, *give*, the **-a-** is short, contrary to rule (43 *a*). The passive present indicative is **dar, daris, datur, daminī, dantur**.

b. Conjugate the present passive of **laudō**, **nūntiō**, **vulnerō**; **timeō**, **videō**.

¹ The less common ending **-re** is omitted in this book.

² **r** is added to the corresponding active form, not to the stem.

³ The progressive meanings *I am being loved*, *I am being warned* are sometimes used.

148.

VOCABULARY

Celtae, -ārum, M. pl., <i>the Celts, a people of Gaul</i>	superō, superāre, <i>overcome, defeat</i>
Garumna, -ae, M., <i>the Garonne, a river of Gaul</i>	vāstō, vāstāre, <i>lay waste, devastate</i>
Sēquana, -ae, F., <i>the Seine, a river of Gaul</i>	doceō, docēre, <i>teach</i>
numerus, -ī, M., <i>number</i>	ā or ab, prep., w. abl., <i>by</i>

a. ā is used before consonants except h; ab before vowels or consonants.

149.

THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT

1. Nautae puerum laudant, *the sailors praise the boy.*
2. Puer ā nautīs laudātur, *the boy is praised by the sailors.*

Notice that **nautae**, the subject of the active verb **laudant**, is put in the ablative with the passive verb **laudātur**. The ablative here denotes the *doer* or *agent* of the action and answers the question *By whom?*

a. The ablative of the agent denotes a *person by whom* something is done, with ā (**ab**) meaning *by*. The ablative of means (66) denotes a *thing by or with which* something is done, without a Latin preposition.

150. RULE. *With a passive verb the person by whom an act is done is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

Memorize:

Tempora mūtantur, et nōs mūtāmur in illīs.
The times change, and we change with them.

EXERCISES

151. 1. Laudor, videor. 2. Accūsāmur, docēmur. 3. Por-tāris, docēris. 4. Vocāminī, vulnerāminī. 5. Datur, timētur. 6. Iuvantur, timentur.

152. 1. You are taught. 2. We are wounded. 3. We are feared. 4. They are defeated. 5. They are seen. 6. It is reported. 7. He is aided. 8. You (sing.) see, are seeing, are seen.

153. 1. Puer servum vocat; servus ā puerō vocātur. 2. Rōmānī Gallōs superant. 3. Gallī ā Rōmānis superantur. 4. Ab amīcō meō vocor. 5. Ā cōpiīs Rōmānis iuvāris. 6. Rēgīna ā magnō numerō puellārum amātur. 7. Cornēlia, filia mea, ā Galbā docētur. 8. Cūr nauta Rōmānus accūsātur? 9. Sagittīs cōpiārum vulnerāmur. 10. In agrōs vocāminī. 11. Sīgnum tubā datur. 12. Multa praemia puerīs dantur. 13. Cōpiae Rōmānōrum ab incolīs nōn timentur. 14. Multī equī et carrī in viīs Rōmae videntur. 15. Victōria Rōmānōrum ā sīgniferō nūntiātur. 16. Rōmānī agrōs Celtārum inter Sēquanam et Garumnam vāstant. 17. Agrī Celtārum ā cōpiīs Rōmānis vāstantur.

154. 1. The grain is carried by slaves. 2. Galba teaches a great number of boys and girls. 3. Many boys are taught by Galba. 4. We are called into the town. 5. You (sing.) are warned by the messenger. 6. I am praised by the Roman lieutenant. 7. You (pl.) are not seen by your friends. 8. Why is the good queen feared? 9. Who is defeating the Roman farmers?

LESSON XIX

THE PASSIVE VOICE: PRESENT INDICATIVE (COMPLETED)

THIRD CONJUGATION IN -IŌ

155.

MODEL VERBS

THIRD CONJUGATION

FOURTH CONJUGATION

SINGULAR

re'gor, *I am ruled*

au'dior, *I am heard*

re'geris, *you are ruled*

audī'ris, *you are heard*

re'gitur, *(he, she, it) is ruled*

audī'tur, *(he, she, it) is heard*

PLURAL

re'gimur, <i>we are ruled</i>	audī'mur, <i>we are heard</i>
regi'minī, <i>you are ruled</i>	audī'minī, <i>you are heard</i>
regun'tur, <i>(they) are ruled</i>	audiun'tur, <i>(they) are heard</i>

156. **Verbs in -iō.** Some verbs of the third conjugation end in **-iō** and are distinguished from those of the fourth conjugation by the infinitive ending **-ere**: **capiō, capere, take.** They are inflected like **audiō**, but the **-i-** is short throughout and becomes **-e-** in the second singular of the passive.

MODEL VERB

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>I take, am taking, do take</i>		<i>I am taken</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

157.

VOCABULARY

bellum, -ī , N., <i>war</i>	iaciō, <i>iacere, throw, hurl</i>
oppidānus, -ī , M., (<i>oppidum</i>), <i>townsman, inhabitant of a</i> <i>town</i>	gerō, <i>gerere, bear; carry on,</i> <i>wage</i>
capiō, <i>capere, take, capture</i>	scribō, <i>scribere, write</i>
cupiō, <i>cupere, desire, wish</i>	vincō, <i>vincere, conquer</i>

EXERCISES

158. 1. Dēfenderis, mūnīris. 2. Vincimur, mūnīmur.
3. Mittitur, dūcitur. 4. Mittiminī, dūciminī. 5. Scribunt,
iaciunt. 6. Cupit, gerit. 7. Mittor, mittuntur.

159. 1. They are defended. 2. They are conquered. 3. It is
written. 4. It is fortified. 5. He is throwing. 6. It is thrown.
7. He conquers; he is conquering; he is conquered.

160. 1. Rōma mūnītur. 2. Rōmānī cōpiās Gallōrum vincere parant. 3. Epistulam longam scribere dēbēs. 4. Cōpiae pīla iacere docentur. 5. Nauta praedam capere parat. 6. Vīcus magnō cum studiō dēfenditur. 7. Epistulae



PORTA ASINARIA

Showing part of the wall about Rome

magnā cum cūrā scribuntur. 8. Puer in oppidum cum amīcīs mittitur. 9. Equī agricolae in viam dūcuntur. 10. Magna oppida ā Gallīs mūniuntur. 11. Ā magnō numerō amīcōrum dēfendor. 12. Ā cōpiīs Rōmānīs vinciminī. 13. Ā rēgīnā nōn regimur. 14. Sīgna trāns agrum nōn audiuntur. 15. Celtae cum oppidānīs bellum gerere cupiunt. 16. Celtae oppidānōs vincere cupiunt.

161. 1. The javelins are being hurled. 2. Why do the Roman troops hurl javelins? 3. Who is captured by the Gauls? 4. We are not conquered; we are free. 5. You are sent (as) a messenger (99) to (133) the queen. 6. You (pl.) are heard by your daughters. 7. The town is being fortified by Marcus, the lieutenant. 8. The province is ruled by the queen's friend. 9. We are protected by the high walls of the town.

LESSON XX

THE THIRD DECLENSION: NOUNS IN *-L*, *-Ō*, *-R*

162. Genitive Singular. The third declension is composed of nouns whose genitive singular ends in *-is*. There is no common ending for the nominative singular. The base and declension are to be learned, therefore, from the genitive, which is given after the nominative in the vocabularies.

163. Gender. Nouns of the third declension are masculine, feminine, or neuter. Masculine and feminine nouns have the same case endings. Nouns in *-tor* are masculine: *victor*, *victor*; most nouns in *-iō* are feminine: *nātiō*, *nation*.

164.

MODEL NOUNS

	cōnsul, M.	victor, M.	pater, M.	nātiō, F.	
	<i>consul</i>	<i>victor</i>	<i>father</i>	<i>nation</i>	
<i>Base</i>	cōnsul-	victōr-	patr-	nātiōn-	
		SINGULAR			ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i>	cōn'sul	vic'tor	pa'ter	nā'tiō	—
<i>Gen.</i>	cōn'sulis	victō'ris	pa'tris	nātiō'nis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	cōn'sulī	victō'rī	pa'trī	nātiō'nī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	cōn'sulem	victō'rem	pa'trem	nātiō'nem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	cōn'sule	victō're	pa'tre	nātiō'ne	-e

	PLURAL				ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i>	cōn'sulēs	victō'rēs	pa'trēs	nātiō'nēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cōn'sulum	victō'rum	pa'trum	nātiō'num	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsu'libus	victō'ribus	pa'tribus	nātiō'nibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōn'sulēs	victō'rēs	pa'trēs	nātiō'nēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsu'libus	victō'ribus	pa'tribus	nātiō'nibus	-ibus

165. Some nouns in -ō have -inis in the genitive, as **homō**, **hominis**, M., *man*; base, **homin-**.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	ho'mō	ho'minēs
<i>Gen.</i>	ho'minis	ho'minum
<i>Dat.</i>	ho'minī	homi'nibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ho'minem	ho'minēs
<i>Abl.</i>	ho'mine	homi'nibus

166.

VOCABULARY

cōnsul, cōnsulis, M., <i>consul</i> ¹	pater, patris, M., <i>father</i>
sōl, sōlis, M., <i>sun</i>	māter, mātris, F., <i>mother</i>
soror, sorōris, F., <i>sister</i>	frāter, frātris, M., <i>brother</i>
victor, victōris, M., <i>victor</i>	legiō, legiōnis, F., <i>legion</i> ²
imperātor, imperātōris, M., <i>commander, general</i>	nātiō, nātiōnis, F., <i>race, na- tion</i>
mercātor, mercātōris, M., <i>trader</i>	homō, hominis, M., <i>human being, man</i> ³

a. Decline frāter meus, legiō nova, imperātor noster.

EXERCISES

167. 1. Cōnsulēs Rōmānī. 2. Ā cōnsule Rōmānō. 3. Cōn-
sulibus Rōmānīs. 4. Cum sorōre meā.⁴ 5. Sorōris meae.

¹ In the Roman republic there were two presidents, called *consuls*.

² The main division of the Roman army was the *legion*, corresponding to our regiment. It numbered 6000 foot soldiers when fully recruited.

³ **Homō** means *man* as opposed to lower animals or to the gods; **vir** means *man* as opposed to woman.

⁴ A possessive adjective, unless emphatic, follows its noun.

6. Sorōrum meārum. 7. Mercātōrī magnō. 8. Ā mercātōribus magnīs. 9. Pater noster. 10. Mātrēs nostrae.

168. 1. A small nation. 2. Of the small nations. 3. Between the legions. 4. With the legions. 5. Of your brother. 6. To your brothers. 7. The good commanders. 8. Of the Gallic commander. 9. To the free man. 10. Many human beings.

169. 1. Sōlem nōn semper vidēmus. 2. Gallī in proeliō nōn sunt victōrēs. 3. Magna praemia victōribus dantur. 4. Mārcus est imperātor legiōnum Rōmānarum. 5. Agricolae ā mercātōribus monentur. 6. Puerī servōs patris suī vocant. 7. Iūlia epistulam mātī dat. 8. Cornēlia epistulās ad mātrem scribit. 9. Nautae frātrēs cōsulis iuvant. 10. Rēgīna sorōrem Mārcī laudat. 11. Frātrēs mercātōris ā cōpiīs capiuntur. 12. Multae nātiōnēs ā legiōnibus superantur. 13. Magnus hominum numerus trāns prōvinciam venit. 14. Quis hominibus miserīs proelium nūntiat?

170. 1. The sun is large. 2. The boy is taught by his father. 3. The traders warn the farmers. 4. We are good friends of the traders. 5. The legions are led by the consul. 6. Galba is the little son of the commander. 7. The girl is coming with her sisters. 8. The Gauls are a great nation. 9. The commander is sending men to the town.

LESSON XXI

THE THIRD DECLENSION: NOUNS IN -S AND -X

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF SUM

171. **Nominative Singular.** Some nouns of the third declension have the ending **-s** in the nominative singular: **hiems**, *winter*; **princeps**, *chief*. Bases in **-d-** or **-t-** drop these letters in the nominative: **pēs**, *foot*, for **ped**s, from base **ped-**; **virtūs**, *manliness*, for **virtūt**s, from base **virtūt-**.

a. Bases in **-c-** or **-g-** have **-x** in the nominative, standing for **-cs** or **-gs** (6): **dux**, *leader*, for **duc**s, from base **duc-**; **rēx**, *king*, for **rēg**s, from base **rēg-**.

172. **Gender.** Nouns in *-tās* or *-tūs* are feminine: *cīvitās*, *state*; *servitūs*, *slavery*. Nouns in *-x* are masculine or feminine: *rēx*, *king*, M.; *lēx*, *law*, F.

173. MODEL NOUNS

	<i>rēx</i> , M.	<i>dux</i> , M.	<i>pēs</i> , M.	<i>mīles</i> , M.	<i>libertās</i> , F.	
	<i>king</i>	<i>leader</i>	<i>foot</i>	<i>soldier</i>	<i>liberty</i>	
Base	<i>rēg-</i>	<i>duc-</i>	<i>ped-</i>	<i>mīlit-</i>	<i>libertāt-</i>	
	SINGULAR					ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēx</i>	<i>dux</i>	<i>pēs</i>	<i>mī'les</i>	<i>liber'tās</i>	<i>-s</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēgis</i>	<i>ducis</i>	<i>pedis</i>	<i>mī'litis</i>	<i>libertā'tis</i>	<i>-is</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēgī</i>	<i>ducī</i>	<i>pedī</i>	<i>mī'litī</i>	<i>libertā'tī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēgem</i>	<i>ducem</i>	<i>pedem</i>	<i>mī'litem</i>	<i>libertā'tem</i>	<i>-em</i>
<i>Ab!</i>	<i>rēge</i>	<i>duce</i>	<i>pede</i>	<i>mī'lite</i>	<i>libertā'te</i>	<i>-e</i>

a. The plural has the endings already learned (164).

174. THE IMPERFECT TENSE INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

The second tense is called the *imperfect*. The imperfect of *sum* expresses a state existing in past time.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>e'ram</i> , <i>I was</i>	<i>erā'mus</i> , <i>we were</i>
<i>e'rās</i> , <i>you were</i>	<i>erā'tis</i> , <i>you were</i>
<i>e'rat</i> , (<i>he, she, it</i>) <i>was</i>	<i>e'rant</i> , (<i>they</i>) <i>were</i>

175. VOCABULARY

<i>Caesar, Caesaris</i> , M., <i>Caesar</i>	<i>libertās, libertātis</i> , F., <i>free-</i>
<i>eques, equitis</i> , M., <i>horseman</i>	<i>dom, liberty</i>
<i>mīles, mīlitis</i> , M., <i>soldier</i>	<i>virtūs, virtūtis</i> , F., (<i>manli-</i>
<i>dux, ducis</i> , M., <i>leader</i>	<i>ness</i>), <i>courage, valor</i>
<i>rēx, rēgis</i> , M., <i>king</i>	<i>prīnceps, prīncipis</i> , M., <i>chief,</i>
<i>cīvitās, cīvitātis</i> , F., (<i>citizen-</i>	<i>foremost man</i>
<i>ship</i>), <i>state</i>	

a. Decline *eques bonus, virtūs Rōmāna, prīnceps noster*.

Memorize:

Palma nōn sine pulvere.

The palm is not gained without dust; success is not won without effort.

EXERCISES

176. 1. Caesar erat cōsul Rōmānus; nōn erat rēx.
 2. Militēs magnā cum virtūte pugnānt. 3. Libertās servīs
 ā victōre datur. 4. Ducēs Gallōrum pīlīs vulnerantur.
 5. Puer erat filius equitis. 6. Prīncipēs cīvitatū ad rēgem
 mittuntur. 7. Multa pīla ā mīlitibus iaciuntur. 8. Cūr
 ducem cīvitatīs vestrae nōn iuvātis? 9. Miles rēgī gladium
 novum dat. 10. Erat magnus equitum numerus in Ītaliā.
 11. Equitēs Rōmānōs vidēre dēbēmus. 12. Cīvitatē par-
 vam iuvāre parāmus. 13. Dux mīlitibus gladiōs et pīla dat.
 14. Cōsul in prōvinciā cum multīs mīlitibus erat. 15. Erā-
 mus amīcī mīlitis bonī.



ROMAN HORSEMEN

177. 1. Caesar was the commander of the soldiers. 2. The king praises the valor of his troops. 3. Men ought to love liberty. 4. The victory is reported to the leaders. 5. The queen's horsemen have good horses. 6. A messenger is sent by the chief. 7. The soldiers are conquering many states. 8. The king's son and daughter were in the forest.

LESSON XXII

THE THIRD DECLENSION: NEUTER NOUNS IN *-MEN*, *-US*

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

178. **Special Endings.** In the singular of neuter nouns, the nominative and accusative forms are alike and have no case endings. In the plural the nominative and accusative are also alike and end in *-a*. Nouns in *-men* (gen. *-minis*) and *-us* (gen. *-eris*, *-oris*) are neuter.

179. MODEL NOUNS

	<i>flūmen</i> , N. <i>river</i>	<i>opus</i> , N. <i>work</i>	<i>tempus</i> , N. <i>time</i>	<i>caput</i> , N. <i>head</i>	
Base	<i>flūmin-</i>	<i>oper-</i>	<i>tempor-</i>	<i>capit-</i>	
	SINGULAR				ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>flū'men</i>	<i>o'pus</i>	<i>tem'pus</i>	<i>ca'put</i>	—
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>flū'minis</i>	<i>o'peris</i>	<i>tem'poris</i>	<i>ca'pitis</i>	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>flū'minī</i>	<i>o'perī</i>	<i>tem'porī</i>	<i>ca'pitī</i>	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>flū'men</i>	<i>o'pus</i>	<i>tem'pus</i>	<i>ca'put</i>	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>flū'mine</i>	<i>o'pere</i>	<i>tem'pore</i>	<i>ca'pite</i>	-e
	PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>flū'mina</i>	<i>o'pera</i>	<i>tem'pora</i>	<i>ca'pita</i>	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>flū'minum</i>	<i>o'perum</i>	<i>tem'porum</i>	<i>ca'pitem</i>	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>flūmi'nibus</i>	<i>ope'ribus</i>	<i>tempo'ribus</i>	<i>capi'tibus</i>	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>flū'mina</i>	<i>o'pera</i>	<i>tem'pora</i>	<i>ca'pita</i>	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>flūmi'nibus</i>	<i>ope'ribus</i>	<i>tempo'ribus</i>	<i>capi'tibus</i>	-ibus

180. THE FUTURE TENSE, INDICATIVE OF SUM

SINGULAR	PLURAL
e'rō, <i>I shall be</i>	e'rimus, <i>we shall be</i>
e'ris, (<i>thou wilt be</i>), <i>you will be</i>	e'ritis, <i>you will be</i>
e'rit, (<i>he, she, it will be</i>)	e'runt, (<i>they will be</i>)

181. VOCABULARY

annus, -ī, <i>M., year</i>	opus, operis, <i>N., work</i>
agmen, agminis, <i>N., army</i>	tempus, temporis, <i>N., time</i>
flūmen, flūminis, <i>N., river</i>	dīvidō, dīvidere, <i>separate,</i> <i>divide</i>
nōmen, nōminis, <i>N., name</i>	propter, prep., w. acc., <i>on</i> <i>account of</i>
caput, capitis, <i>N., head;</i> <i>capital</i>	

a. Decline agmen bonum, opus magnum.

EXERCISES

182. 1. Lāta prōvincia est inter flūmina. 2. Nōmen puerī est Mārcus. 3. Magnum agmen nōn habēmus. 4. Capita equōrum agricolae videō. 5. Opus bonum puellārum laudant. 6. Propter tempus annī militēs nōn pugnant. 7. Mercātōrēs in vīcō erunt. 8. Erimus cum mercātōribus. 9. Propter numerum ducum bonōrum cīvitās erit libera.



THE ROMAN ARMY MARCHING OUT
A bas relief on Trajan's Column

10. Terrae flūminibus dīviduntur. 11. Agminī magnō cōpiam frūmentī dant. 12. Terra vestra agmine magnō dēfenditur. 13. Praeda inter nautās dīviditur. 14. Agmen trāns prōvinciam venit et in terrā rēgis erit. 15. Ubi erunt amīcī tuī?

183. 1. The rivers are broad and deep. 2. Julia and Marcus were Roman names. 3. The kings have large armies. 4. Rome is the capital of Italy. 5. The town is fortified by the work of the soldiers. 6. You ought to praise the boys on-account-of (their) good work. 7. Who will be the leaders of the armies?

LESSON XXIII

THE IMPERFECT TENSE, INDICATIVE ACTIVE

THE PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE

184. **Tenses.** There are six tenses in Latin: present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.

185. THE FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR	TENSE ENDINGS
amā'bam, <i>I was loving, I loved</i>	-bam
amā'bās, <i>you were loving, you loved</i>	-bās
amā'bat, <i>(he, she, it) was loving, (he, she, it) loved</i>	-bat
PLURAL	
amābā'mus, <i>we were loving, we loved</i>	-bāmus
amābā'tis, <i>you were loving, you loved</i>	-bātis
amā'bant, <i>(they) were loving, (they) loved</i>	-bant

186. **Tense Sign.** A tense sign is an element in a verb to indicate time, corresponding to the English auxiliary words *was, shall, will*, etc. The imperfect tense is formed by adding to the stem the tense sign **-bā-** and the personal endings **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**. **-bā-** is shortened to **-ba-** before **-m, -t, -nt** (7 b).¹

¹ The position of the tense sign is immediately before the personal ending.

187. In the other conjugations the models are **monē-bam**, *I was warning, I warned*; **regē-bam**, *I was ruling, I ruled*; **capiē-bam**, *I was taking, I took*; **audiē-bam**, *I was hearing, I heard*. Notice that in the third conjugation final *-e-* of the stem (**rege-**) is lengthened (**regē-**), and that there is an additional *-i-* in *-iō* verbs of the third and fourth conjugations.

- a. Learn the conjugation of these models given on page 281.
- b. Conjugate also the imperfect active of **parō**, **habeō**, **scribō**, **iaciō**, **veniō**.

188. **Time of the Imperfect Tense.** The imperfect indicative represents an act or state as *continuing* in past time, like the English past progressive: **Caesar cōpiās laudābat**, *Caesar was praising the troops*.

189. VOCABULARY

Germānia, -ae, F., <i>Germany</i>	rīpa, -ae, F., <i>bank</i>
Germānus, -ī, M., <i>a German</i>	appellō, appellāre, <i>call (by name)</i> , ¹ <i>name</i>
Germānus, -a, -um, <i>German</i>	nāvigō, nāvigāre, <i>sail, navigate</i>
Rhēnus, -ī, M., <i>the Rhine</i>	incolō, incolere, <i> dwell; w. acc.,</i>
Rhodanus, -ī, M., <i>the Rhone</i>	<i>inhabit</i>

190. THE PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE

1. **Terram Galliam appellant**, *they call the land Gaul*.
2. **Terra Gallia appellātur**, *the land is called Gaul*.

In the first sentence **terram** is the direct object, **Galliam** a predicate accusative. In the second sentence **Gallia** is a predicate nominative (97 b).

191. **RULE.** *The verbs name, call, choose, make, and the like take two accusatives: one the direct object, the other a predicate accusative.*

¹ To be distinguished from **vocō**, which means *call* in the sense of *summon*.

a. In the passive voice these verbs take two nominatives: the subject and a predicate nominative (99).

Memorize:

Dum vivimus, vivāmus.

While we live, let us live.

Gaudeāmus iuvenēs dum sumus.

Let us rejoice while we are young.

EXERCISES

192. 1. Laudābam, vidēbam. 2. Mittēbam, mūniēbam. 3. Dabam (43 a), iaciēbam. 4. Portābat, habēbat. 5. Dēfendēbat, mūniēbat. 6. Vocābātis, docēbātis. 7. Scrībēbātis, veniēbātis. 8. Nūntiābāmus. 9. Vincēbāmus. 10. Incolēbant.

193. 1. You were. 2. You were sailing. 3. You were leading. 4. You were fearing. 5. They were accusing. 6. They were dividing. 7. They were coming. 8. I was carrying. 9. He was writing. 10. We were taking.



THE RHONE AND THE ALPS, ST. MAURICE, SWITZERLAND

194. 1. Pater puerōs docēbat. 2. Agricola equīs frūmentum dabat. 3. Virī pīla iaciēbant. 4. Mūnīre parābāmus. 5. Miles magnā cum virtūte pugnābat. 6. Multās epistulās amīcīs tuīs scribēbās. 7. Caesar, imperātor Rōmānus, magnō agmine rēgem superābat. 8. Quis trāns flūmen nūntiōs mitēbat? 9. Mercātōrēs in vīcō multōs carrōs habēbant. 10. Puerī equitēs Gallicōs in viā vidēbant. 11. Prīnceps cīvitātis hominēs miserōs iuvābat. 12. Magnā cum cūrā epistulam scribēbam. 13. Cūr frātrem ducis capiēbant? 14. Incolae Germāniae Germānī appellantur. 15. Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolunt. 16. Fīliī mercātōris ad rīpam flūminis nāvigābant. 17. Rōmānī Celtās Gallōs appellat.

195. 1. The lieutenant was calling his son. 2. The German soldiers were defending the towns. 3. We were coming across the street. 4. I was coming with my friends. 5. The consul was leading a large army into Gaul. 6. The sailors were dividing the booty. 7. The slave was carrying a sword and a javelin. 8. The Rhone is a long river of Gaul. 9. The name of the boy's brother was Lucius.

LESSON XXIV

THE IMPERFECT TENSE, INDICATIVE PASSIVE

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

196. THE FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR	TENSE ENDINGS
amā'bar, <i>I was (being) loved</i>	-bar
amābā'ris, <i>you were (being) loved</i>	-bāris
amābā'tur, <i>(he, she, it) was (being) loved</i>	-bātur
PLURAL	
amābā'mur, <i>we were (being) loved</i>	-bāmur
amābā'minī, <i>you were (being) loved</i>	-bāminī
amāban'tur, <i>(they) were (being) loved</i>	-bantur

a. Notice that **-bā-** is the *sign* of the imperfect tense in the passive also, and that the personal endings are those already learned for the present passive (146).

b. Learn from page 284 the conjugation of **monēbar**, *I was (being) warned*; **regēbar**, *I was (being) ruled*; **capiēbar**, *I was (being) taken*; **audiēbar**, *I was (being) heard*.

197. Questions. **Quis, quī, ubi,** and **cūr** have been used to introduce Latin questions. When there is no special interrogative word, a question may be indicated by the enclitic **-ne** (18), joined to the first (the emphatic) word.

1. **Puerne tubam audit?** *does the BOY hear the trumpet?*
2. **Tubamne puer audit?** *does the boy hear the TRUMPET?*
3. **Auditne puer tubam?** *does the boy HEAR the trumpet?*

a. **-ne** has no meaning by itself; it is merely the sign of a question.

b. If the answer *yes* is implied, the question begins with **nōnne**: **Nōnne puer audit?** *does not the boy hear?* If the answer *no* is implied, the question begins with **num**: **Num puer audit?** *the boy does not hear, does he?*

198. Answers. The answer *yes* is usually expressed by repeating the verb of the question; the answer *no*, by repeating the verb with a negative. Thus **audit** or **nōn audit** answers the questions in 197.

199.

VOCABULARY

amicitia , -ae, F. (amicus), <i>friendship</i>	cōfirmō , cōfirmāre , (<i>make firm</i>), <i>establish, strengthen</i>
Belgae , -ārum, M., <i>the Belgae</i> (bel'jē), <i>the Belgians</i>	liberō , liberāre , (liber), <i>set free, liberate</i>
captivus , -ī, M. (capiō), <i>cap- tive, prisoner</i>	nōnne , interrog. adv., <i>not?</i> (implying <i>yes</i>)
pāx , pācis , F., <i>peace</i>	-ne (enclitic, 197 a)
pedes , peditis , M. (pēs), <i>foot soldier; pl., infantry</i>	num , interrog. particle (im- plying <i>no</i>)

EXERCISES

200. 1. Laudatne? 2. Laudābatne? 3. Nōnne laudābat?
4. Laudātur? 5. Laudābātur, vidēbātur. 6. Mittēbātur,
mūniēbātur. 7. Portābāmur, timēbāmur. 8. Dēfendē-
bāmur, capiēbāmur. 9. Vocābantur, docēbantur. 10. Dūcē-
bantur, iaciēbantur. 11. Vidētur?

201. 1. I was being accused. 2. You were being warned. 3. He
was being heard. 4. We were being aided. 5. You were, you were
sending, you were sent. 6. They were being conquered. 7. Do
you give? 8. Did you give? 9. Was he seen? 10. Was he not
seen?

202. 1. Estne Mārcus in viā?
2. Eratne Caesar rēx Rōmānōrum?
3. Nōn erat rēx. 4. Puellaene erunt
cum amīcīs tuīs? 5. Tēla ā militi-
bus iaciēbantur. 6. Nōnne sīgnum
īperātōris audiēbātur? 7. Gallī ā
Caesare superābantur. 8. Ā patri-
bus bonīs docēbāmur. 9. Multī
captīvī in Ītaliā dūcēbantur.
10. Prīnceps cīvītātis captīvōs
liberābat. 11. Ā cōsule Rōmānō
liberāminī. 12. Peditēs erant amīcī
oppidānōrum. 13. Eratne dux
peditum cum cōsule? 14. Cum
cīvītātibus pācem et amīcītiā cōn-
firmāre cupiēbat. 15. Belgae inter
Sēquanam et Rhēnum incolunt.



ROMAN FOOT SOLDIER

203. 1. The towns were being fortified by many men. 2. Mar-
cus was sent (as) a messenger. 3. I was advised by my brother.
4. You were being praised by the consul's friend. 5. The captive's
sister was before the gate of the chief. 6. The victory was being
announced to the men of the village. 7. Was the letter being
written to the king and queen?

LESSON XXV

REVIEW OF LESSONS XVIII-XXIV

204.

VOCABULARY

agmen	frāter	oppidānus	victor	vāstō
amīcītia	homō	opus	virtūs	doceō
annus	imperātor	pater	nōnne	dīvidō
bellum	legiō	pāx	ā, ab	gerō
captīvus	libertās	pedes	propter	incolō
caput	māter	prīnceps	appellō	scribō
cīvitās	mercātor	rēx	cōfirmō	vincō
cōnsul	mīles	rīpa	liberō	capiō
dux	nātiō	sōl	nāvigō	cupiō
eques	nōmen	soror	superō	iaciō
flūmen	numerus	tempus		

a. Give English derivatives, if possible.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

205. 1. What are the personal endings of the passive voice? 2. Conjugate the present passive of **vocō**; of **mittō**; of **iaciō**. 3. Conjugate the imperfect active of **veniō**; the imperfect passive of **teneō**; the future of **sum**. 4. What are the case endings of masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension? Of neuter nouns? 5. How is the base of a noun or adjective found? 6. Decline **māter mea**, **homō liber**, **eques Rōmānus**, **nōmen bonum**. 7. Distinguish "agency" and "means." 8. How are Latin questions introduced? 9. How are answers expressed?

Memorize:

Multa petentibus dēsunt multa.—HORACE.

The covetous are always in want.

TERRAE EURŌPAE

206. Britannia, Gallia, Germānia, Hispānia, sunt terrae Eurōpae. Britannia, magna īnsula, contrā Galliam est. Incolae Britanniae Britannī appellantur. Gallī et Rōmānī in Britanniam nāvigant.

Gallia inter Rhēnum flūmen et Ōce'anum posita¹ est. Flūmina Galliae sunt Rhodanus, Sēquana, Mātrona, Garumna, Axona, Arar. Genava et Māssilia sunt oppida Gallica. Belgae et Cetae et Aquītānī Galliam incolunt.

Trāns Rhēnum incolunt Germānī. In Germāniā sunt silvae lātae et multa flūmina. Pulchrī vicī Germānōrum in rīpīs Rhēnī sunt.

Hispānia, terra clāra Hispanōrum, erat prōvincia Rōmāna, sed Germānia nōn erat prōvincia.

LESSON XXVI

THE THIRD DECLENSION: GENITIVE PLURAL IN -IUM

207. Learn the declension of **nūbēs**, *cloud*; **hostis**, *enemy*; **mōns**, *mountain*; **nox**, *night*; **animal**, *animal*; **īnsigne**, *decoration*, page 269.

208. **The Genitive Plural.** The genitive plural ends in **-ium** in the following classes of nouns:

a. Nouns in **-ēs** or **-is** having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative: **nūbēs**, **hostis**.

b. Nouns in **-s** or **-x** having a base ending in two consonants: **mōns**, **nox**.

c. Neuter nouns in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**: **īnsigne**, **animal**, **calcar** (*spur*).

¹ *Situated.*

209. **The Accusative Plural.** The accusative plural ends in **-īs** or **-ēs**. In this book only **-ēs** is used.

210. **The Ablative Singular.** The ablative singular ends in **-ī** or **-e** in some words: as **avis** (*bird*), **cīvis** (*citizen*), **classis** (*fleet*), **collis** (*hill*), **fīnis** (*end*), **īgnis** (*fire*), **nāvis** (*ship*), **puppis** (*stern*), **sēmentis** (*sowing*), **turris** (*tower*).

a. Neuters in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar** have **-ī** in the ablative singular, **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural.

211.

VOCABULARY

animal, animālis, N., <i>animal</i>	nāvis, nāvis, F., <i>ship</i>
cohors, cohortis, F., <i>cohort</i> (a tenth of a legion)	nox, noctis, F., <i>night</i>
hostis, hostis, M., <i>enemy</i> ; pl., <i>enemy</i> ¹	pars, partis, F., <i>part</i>
īnsigne, īnsignis, N., <i>decoration, badge</i>	urbs, ² urbis, F., <i>city</i>
mōns, montis, M., <i>mountain</i>	decem, adj., (indeclinable), <i>ten</i>
	teneō, tenēre, <i>hold</i>

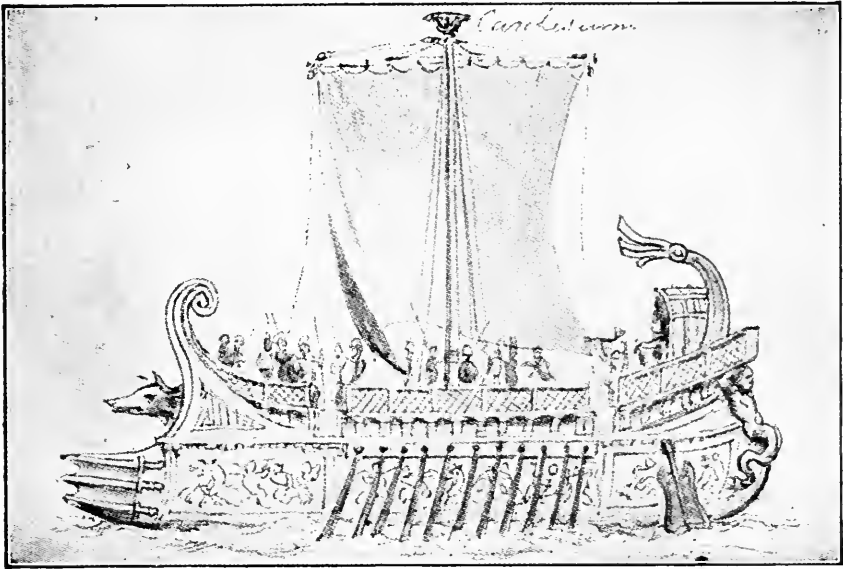
EXERCISES

212. 1. Rōmānī multās nāvēs nōn habēbant. 2. Dux hostium erat miles bonus. 3. Agricola animalibus partem frūmentī dabat. 4. Erant decem cohortēs in legiōne Rōmānā. 5. Quis erat dux cohortium? 6. Vidēsne pulchrum montem? 7. Nōnne urbs mūrīs lātīs mūnītur? 8. Nōmen urbis est Rōma. 9. Equitēs ab hostibus capiēbantur. 10. Filī et filiae nautārum sunt in nāvī. 11. Gallī magnā cum virtūte oppidum tenēbant. 12. Militēs gladiōs tenent; pīla iacere parant. 13. Parva pars montis ā cōpiīs tenēbātur.

¹ Hostis means *enemy of the state*; inimicus, *personal enemy*.

² Pronounced **urps**; see 6.

213. 1. The nights will not be long. 2. Rome is a large city of Italy. 3. Many animals were seen on (in) the mountain. 4. The boy has the soldier's badge. 5. The soldiers' badges are new. 6. The general was conquering the enemy with ten cohorts. 7. The sailors ought to have a large number of ships.



ROMAN WAR SHIP

LESSON XXVII

THE THIRD DECLENSION: GENDER; SPECIAL NOUNS

214. **Gender.** As we have seen, the gender of nouns of the third declension cannot be determined by the nominative singular, as in the first and second declensions. It must be learned with the word. Abstract nouns in *-dō, -iō, -tās, -tūs*, are feminine: *altitūdō, nātiō, libertās, virtūs*. Nouns in *-al, -e, -men, -us* (gen. *-eris, -oris*) are neuter: *animal, insigne, flūmen, opus, tempus*.

215.

VOCABULARY

castra, castrōrum, N. pl., <i>a camp</i> ¹	multitūdō, multitūdinis, F., (multus), <i>multitude, (great) number</i>
iter, itineris, N., <i>journey, march, route, way</i>	pōns, pontis, M., <i>bridge</i>
mare, maris, N., <i>sea</i>	vīs, vīs, F., <i>force; pl., strength</i>
altitūdō, altitūdinis, F., (altus), <i>height, depth</i>	faciō, facere, ² <i>make, do; iter facere, march</i>

a. Learn the declension of iter and vīs, page 269.

EXERCISES

216. 1. Militēs Rōmānī castra dēfendēbant. 2. Mūrō et fossā castra semper mūniēbant. 3. Ad³ portam castrōrum pugnābant. 4. Signiferī signa in castra portant. 5. Iter erit nōn longum. 6. Erant multa itinera ad urbem. 7. Agmen per prōvinciam iter faciēbat. 8. Cōpiae longō itinere dūcuntur. 9. Mōns multitūdine hominū tenēbātur. 10. Multitūdō Gallōrum per terram dūcēbātur. 11. Gallī multitūdinem equitū habēbant. 12. Estne mare altum? 13. Multae nāvēs sunt in⁴ marī. 14. Vim facere⁵ parābant. 15. Cōsul vī viam facit. 16. Pontem lātum in⁶ flūmine faciēbāmus. 17. Caesar ponte trāns flūmen agmen dūcit. 18. Cūr magnās nāvēs nōn faciunt? 19. Altitūdō montis nōn est magna.

217. 1. Do you fear the deep sea? 2. He fears the great force of the river. 3. Did you not see the mountains, the rivers, and the seas? 4. We have cities, towns, and villages in our country. 5. The king was giving liberty to a great number of men. 6. Ten

¹ The plural form **castra** has a singular meaning. The singular form **castrum**, *fort*, is rarely used.

² The passive of **faciō** is irregular (597).

³ *At.*

⁵ *To use.*

⁴ *On.*

⁶ English says *over*.

cohorts were marching into the camp. 7. They were coming to the bridge by many routes. 8. In the camp (there) were captives of the Romans.

LESSON XXVIII

THE ABLATIVE CASE: SEPARATION; PLACE FROM WHICH

218.

VOCABULARY

ā, ab , prep., w. abl., <i>away from, from; by</i>	absum (ab + sum), <i>be away, be absent, be distant</i>
dē , prep., w. abl., <i>down from, from</i>	expectō, expectāre , <i>expect, wait for</i>
ē, ex , prep., w. abl., <i>out of, from</i>	pertineō, pertinēre (per + teneō), <i>extend, reach, belong</i>
periculum, -ī , N., <i>peril, danger</i>	longē , adv., <i>far</i>

a. **Ab** means *away from*; **dē**, *down from*; **ex**, *out from*.

b. **Ē**, like **ā**, stands before consonants except **h**; **ex**, like **ab**, before vowels or consonants (148 a).

219. **How to say from.** We have seen that the ablative expresses:

a. *by* a person or thing (the agent or the means).

b. *with* a person or thing (denoting accompaniment, means, or manner).

c. *in* a place (the place where).

The ablative is also used to express *from* a person or thing:

1. **Cūrā rēgem liberat**, *he frees the king from care.*

2. **Flūmen Rhēnus Gallōs ā Germānīs dīvidit**, *the Rhine river separates the Gauls from the Germans.*

An ablative answering the question *From what person? From what thing?* is called an ablative of *separation*.¹

¹ The ablative case is named from this use, for "ablative" means the case of "taking away."

220. The ablative expressing separation is used with such verbs as *separate, divide, differ, defend, deprive, refrain, move, set free, lack, be absent*.

221. RULE. **Ablative of Separation.** *Verbs denoting separation require an ablative to complete their meaning, with or without ab, dē, or ex.*

a. A preposition is used when the ablative denotes a person.

b. A preposition is regularly used when the separation is *literal*, as in 219, 2.

c. A preposition is regularly omitted when the separation is *figurative*, as in 219, 1.

222. **Place from which.** In the following sentences the ablative answers the question *Whence? From what place?*

1. **Ab urbe venit,** *he comes from the city.*

2. **Rōmā venit,** *he comes from Rome.*

223. RULE. *Place from which is regularly expressed by the ablative with ab, dē, or ex; but the preposition is omitted with names of towns.*

Memorize:

Factum fierī infectum nōn potest.

What has been done cannot be undone.

Facta nōn verba.

Deeds not words.

EXERCISES

224. 1. Agricolaē ex agrīs veniunt. 2. Frātrēs meī ā vicō absunt. 3. Epistolam ab amīcō expectō. 4. Pīla dē mūrō altō iaciēbantur. 5. Oppidum Gallicum ā prōvinciā Rōmānā longē aberat. 6. Terra ā montibus ad mare pertinet. 7. Legiōnēs novae ē castrīs in oppidum iter faciēbant. 8. Prīnceps bonus ab hostibus civitātem dēfendit. 9. Lēgātus militēs ab opere vocābat. 10. Vicus ā ponte longē abest. 11. Nōnne perīculum puerōrum vidēs? 12. Cūr frātre

tuum et Mārcum expectābās? 13. Nautae ex nāvibus frūmentum capiunt.

225. 1. The slaves were being sent out of the villages. 2. We ought to free our city from danger. 3. The animals were not far away from the forest. 4. He was expecting a messenger from the consul. 5. Who was defending the bridge from¹ the army of the enemy? 6. The camp extended from the river to the mountain. 7. The boy throws a javelin (down) from the bridge into the water.



ROMAN BRIDGE, NARNI, ITALY

LESSON XXIX

THE FUTURE TENSE, INDICATIVE (CONJUGATIONS I AND II)

226. **Tense Sign.** The future tense of the first and second conjugations is formed by adding to the present stem the tense sign **-bi-** and the personal endings. In the first person singular **-i-** of the tense sign disappears before the ending

¹ **Dēfendō** always takes **ab**.

-ō; in the third person plural it becomes -u-; and in the second person singular passive it becomes -e-.

227.

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

TENSE ENDINGS

amā'bō, <i>I shall love</i> ¹	monē'bō, <i>I shall warn</i> ²	-bō
amā'bis, <i>you will love</i>	monē'bis, <i>you will warn</i>	-bis
amā'bit, <i>(he)</i> ³ <i>will love</i>	monē'bit, <i>(he)</i> ³ <i>will warn</i>	-bit
amā'bimus, <i>we shall love</i>	monē'bimus, <i>we shall warn</i>	-bimus
amā'bitis, <i>you will love</i>	monē'bitis, <i>you will warn</i>	-bitis
amā'bunt, <i>(they) will love</i>	monē'bunt, <i>(they) will warn</i>	-bunt

228.

PASSIVE VOICE

amā'bor, <i>I shall be loved</i>	monē'bor, <i>I shall be warned</i>	-bor
amā'beris, <i>you will be loved</i>	monē'beris, <i>you will be warned</i>	-beris
amā'bitur, <i>(he)</i> ³ <i>will be loved</i>	monē'bitur, <i>(he)</i> ³ <i>will be warned</i>	-bitur
amā'bimur, <i>we shall be loved</i>	monē'bimur, <i>we shall be warned</i>	-bimur
amābi'minī, <i>you will be loved</i>	monēbi'minī, <i>you will be warned</i>	-biminī
amābun'tur, <i>(they) will be loved</i>	monēbun'tur, <i>(they) will be warned</i>	-buntur

229.

VOCABULARY

arma, -ōrum, N. pl., <i>arms, weapons</i>	parātus, -a, -um, (parō), <i>ready</i>
explōrātor, explōrātōris, M., <i>scout</i>	prīmus, -a, -um, <i>first</i>
ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, F., <i>speech, oration</i>	decimus, -a, -um, (decem), <i>tenth</i>
atque or ac, conj., <i>and, and also</i>	-que, enclitic conj., <i>and</i>

¹ Or *I shall be loving.*² Or *I shall be warning.*³ Or *she, or it.*

a. Et, the common conjunction, simply connects; *-que* combines more closely and is attached to the second of the connected words: *terra mareque*, *the land and the sea*. *Atque* (*ac*) throws emphasis upon the second connected word or phrase: *terra atque mare*, *the land and also the sea*. *Atque* may stand before a vowel or a consonant, *ac* only before consonants.

EXERCISES

230. 1. Laudābō, vidēbō. 2. Portābis, timēbis. 3. Vocābit, docēbit. 4. Dabimus, habēbimus. 5. Nūntiābitis, tenēbitis. 6. Parābunt, pertinēbunt. 7. Vocābor, docēbor. 8. Laudābimur, vidēbimur.

231. 1. We shall expect. 2. We shall see. 3. You will set free. 4. You will teach. 5. They will fight. 6. They will fear. 7. I shall overcome. 8. I shall have. 9. He will aid. 10. He will be held. 11. You will be called. 12. They will be seen.

232. 1. Puella ā patre suō laudābitur. 2. Mārcus, amīcus noster, puerōs docēbit. 3. Multōs amīcōs in urbe habēbimus. 4. Cūrā liberāberis. 5. Ā nātiōnibus Gallīcīs iuvābimur. 6. Multī militēs ante victōriam vulnerābuntur. 7. Hostēs civitātis vestrae superābitis. 8. Quis ducem monēbit? 9. Montemne cōpiae nostrae tenēbunt? 10. Amīcī rēgis appellābiminī. 11. Arma militis Rōmānī erant gladius pilumque. 12. Explōrātōrēs prīmī castra hostium vidēbunt. 13. Prīncipēs civitātis ōrātiōnem cōsulis laudābant. 14. Decima legiō iter facere erit parāta. 15. Nātiōnēs pācem atque amīcitiā cōnfīrmant.

233. 1. The boys will be taught by Galba. 2. The trader will praise his daughter. 3. The messenger will give a letter to the king. 4. You will see the high mountains. 5. The slaves will be freed from peril. 6. I shall call the men out of the field. 7. Who will report the first victory of our forces?



THE ALPS, PONTRESINA, SWITZERLAND

LESSON XXX

THE FUTURE TENSE, INDICATIVE (CONJUGATIONS
III AND IV)

234. In the future of the third and fourth conjugations the tense sign is not **-bi-**, as in the first and second conjugations (226), but **-a-** for the first person singular, **-ē-** or **-e-** for the other persons.

235. THE FUTURE INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

<i>I shall rule</i>	<i>I shall take</i>	<i>I shall hear</i>
re'gam	ca'pīam	au'dīam
re'gēs	ca'piēs	au'diēs
re'get	ca'piet	au'diet
regē'mus	capiē'mus	audiē'mus
regē'tis	capiē'tis	audiē'tis
re'gent	ca'pient	au'dient

236. PASSIVE VOICE

<i>I shall be ruled</i>	<i>I shall be taken</i>	<i>I shall be heard</i>
re'gar	ca'piar	au'diar
regē'ris	capiē'ris	audiē'ris
regē'tur	capiē'tur	audiē'tur
regē'mur	capiē'mur	audiē'mur
regē'minī	capiē'minī	audiē'minī
regen'tur	capien'tur	audien'tur

a. Conjugate the future of **mittō** and **mūniō**.

237. VOCABULARY

cōnsilium, -ī, N., <i>plan</i>	obses, obsidis, M., <i>hostage</i> ¹
fīnis, fīnis, M., <i>end</i> ; pl., <i>boundaries, territory</i>	socius, sociī (96), M., <i>ally,</i> <i>confederate</i>
finitimus, -ī, M. (fīnis), <i>neighbor</i>	apud, prep., w. acc., <i>with,</i> <i>among, in the presence of</i>
liberī, -ōrum, M. pl., <i>children</i>	

EXERCISES

238. 1. Mittam, mūniam. 2. Dēfendis, dēfendēs. 3. Dūcitur, dūcētur. 4. Scribimus, scribēmus. 5. Vinciminī, vincēminī. 6. Dīvidunt, dīvident. 7. Capiēnt, capientur.

239. 1. They are throwing, they will throw. 2. We are making, we shall make. 3. You will be defended. 4. He will come. 5. You will fortify. 6. He will be conquered. 7. I shall be. 8. I shall be away. 9. I shall be sent. 10. We shall lead, we shall be led.

240. 1. Iūlia ad sorōrem suam librum pulchrum mittet. 2. Lēgātus in Galliam cum cōpiīs mittētur. 3. Urbem magnā cum audāciā dēfendēmus. 4. Fīliae rēgis ā periculō dēfendentur. 5. Legiōnēs ex castrīs dūcentur. 6. Nōnne filius cōsulis agmen dūcet? 7. Multīs proeliīs vincētis. 8. Multae

¹ A hostage was a person given by one nation to another, to be held as a pledge of good faith in keeping treaties.

cīvitātēs Galliae vincuntur. 9. Nāvēsne ā ponte longē abe-
runt? 10. Per terram novam iter faciētis. 11. Mīlitēs ante ¹
sīgnum pīla nōn iacent. 12. Gallī portās urbium suārum
mūnient. 13. Cōnsilia sociōrum ab explōrātōribus nūntiā-
buntur. 14. Liberī mittentur obsidēs.² 15. Apud liberōs
erit filius ducis. 16. Obsidēs erunt apud rēgem. 17. Flūmen
Rhodanus est in fīnibus Gallōrum.

241. 1. Marcus will write a letter to his father. 2. The letters
will be written by the slaves. 3. I shall come with your brother.
4. You will not be far away from the town. 5. The boys will
make new arrows. 6. We shall make a way into the forest. 7. The
javelins will be thrown (down) from the wall. 8. The tribe will
make peace with the neighbors.

LESSON XXXI

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

242. **Nominative Singular.** Adjectives of the third de-
clension are classified according to the number of endings in
the nominative singular:

1. Adjectives of *one ending*, for all genders: **potēns**, M., F.,
N., *powerful*; base, **potent-**.

2. Adjectives of *two endings* one for the masculine and
feminine, the other for the neuter: **fortis**, M. and F., **forte**,
N.; base, **fort-**.

3. Adjectives of *three endings*, differing for each gender:
ācer, M., **ācris**, F., **ācre**, N., *sharp*; base, **ācr-**.

243. **Endings.** Most adjectives of the third declension,
except comparatives, have **-ī** in the ablative singular, **-ium**
in the genitive plural, **-īs** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural,

¹ This expresses time.

² *As hostages* (99).

masculine and feminine, and **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural neuter.

a. Learn the declension of the models **potēns**, **fortis**, and **ācer**, as given on page 272.

244.

VOCABULARY

locus , -ī, M. (pl., loca , -ōrum, N.), <i>place</i>	fortis , forte , <i>brave, strong</i>
grātus , -a, -um, <i>pleasing, agreeable</i>	omnis , omne , ¹ <i>every, all</i>
proximus , -a, -um, ¹ <i>nearest, next; last</i>	similis , simile , <i>like, similar</i>
ācer , ācris , ācre , <i>sharp, keen, eager</i>	audāx (gen., audācis), <i>bold, daring</i>
idōneus , -a, -um, <i>suitable, fit</i>	pār (gen., paris), <i>equal</i>
	potēns (gen., potentis), <i>powerful</i>

a. Decline **puer ācer**, **omnis puella**, **nātiō potēns**.

245.

THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

1. **Civitās proxima Gallis est**, *the tribe is next to the Gauls.*
2. **Filius patrī similis est**, *the son is like his father.*
3. **Locus castris idōneus erat**, *the place was suitable for a camp.*

Notice that after **proxima**, **similis**, and **idōneus** the noun to which the quality is directed is in the dative. This construction is called the *dative with adjectives*.

246. RULE. *The dative is used with adjectives meaning near, like, equal, friendly, pleasing, suitable, and their opposites.*

¹ **Proximus** and adjectives of quantity, like **multus** and **omnis**, normally precede their nouns.

Memorize:

Vultus est index animī.

The countenance is the index of the mind.

Fidēli certa mercēs.

The reward of the faithful is certain.

EXERCISES

247. 1. Vir erit idōneus operī. 2. Epistulae tuae filiābus meis grātae sunt. 3. Imperātor castrīs idōneum locum videt.

4. Sumusne grātī rēgīnae?

5. Gallī multitudīne¹ hominum Rōmānīs nōn erant parēs. 6. Nūntiōs ad proxima oppida mittēmus.

7. Mīlitēs sunt audācēs; magnā cum audāciā pugnant. 8. Potēns cīvītās Galliae ā Caesare superābitur.

9. Similia praemia omnibus puerīs dabimus. 10. Cūr omne frūmentum ex nāvibus portant?

11. Multōs et fortēs hominēs habēre dēbēmus. 12. Erat proelium ācre cum cōpiīs hostium.

13. Cōpiae ācrēs sīgnum exspectābant. 14. In Ītaliā sunt multa et pulchra loca.

15. Labor omnia² vincit.



A STANDARD-BEARER

248. 1. The letter is pleasing to the trader. 2. The beautiful books will be pleasing to your brother. 3. The small field was not fit for a camp. 4. Our village is next to the river. 5. The cohort will be captured by the daring horsemen. 6. The danger will be equal for all the soldiers. 7. The army is not far away from powerful tribes. 8. The captives are like the slaves. 9. Marcus and the leader's sons are brave men.

¹ In number.

² All (things), everything.

LESSON XXXII

THE PERFECT TENSE, INDICATIVE ACTIVE

249. **Principal Parts.** Verbs have four principal parts, so called because all forms of the verb may be derived from them. They are the present indicative, the present infinitive, the perfect indicative, and the supine (a verbal noun form).

PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE	PERF. INDICATIVE	SUPINE
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātum
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum
regō	regere	rēxī	rēctum
capiō	capere	cēpī	captum
audiō	audire	audīvī	audītum
sum	esse ¹	fuī	—

250. **Perfect Stem.** The word "stem" in former lessons has referred to the present stem. The perfect stem is found by dropping the ending **-ī** of the perfect tense: **amāv-**, **monu-**, **rēx-**, **cēp-**, **audīv-**, **fu-**. The perfect tense is conjugated by adding special endings to this stem.

251. THE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF SUM

SINGULAR	ENDINGS
fu'ī, <i>I have been, I was</i>	-ī
fuis'tī, <i>you have been, you were</i>	-istī
fu'it, <i>(he, she, it) has been, (he, she, it) was</i>	-it
PLURAL	
fu'imus, <i>we have been, we were</i>	-imus
fuis'tis, <i>you have been, you were</i>	-istis
fuērunt, <i>(they) have been, (they) were</i>	-ērunt (or -ēre) ²

¹ The present stem of **sum** is **es-**, but **e** has been dropped in some forms, as **sum, sumus, sunt**.

² The ending **-ēre**, which is less common, is omitted in this book.

252. THE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF REGULAR VERBS

<i>I have loved</i>	<i>I have warned</i>	<i>I have ruled</i>
<i>I loved</i> ¹	<i>I warned</i> ²	<i>I ruled</i> ³
amā'vī	mo'nui	rē'xī
amāvis'tī	monuis'tī	rēxis'tī
amā'vit	mo'nuit	rē'xit
amā'vimus	monu'imus	rē'ximus
amāvis'tis	monuis'tis	rēxis'tis
amāvē'runt	monuē'runt	rēxē'runt

a. With the same endings conjugate *cēpī*, *I have taken*, *I took*, and *audīvī*, *I have heard*, *I heard*.

253. MEANINGS OF THE PERFECT TENSE

1. *Flūmen nōn vīdimus*, *we have not seen the river*.
2. *Lēgātus in castra vēnit*; *epistulam portābat*, *the lieutenant came into the camp*; *he was carrying a letter*.

The Latin perfect indicative has two uses:

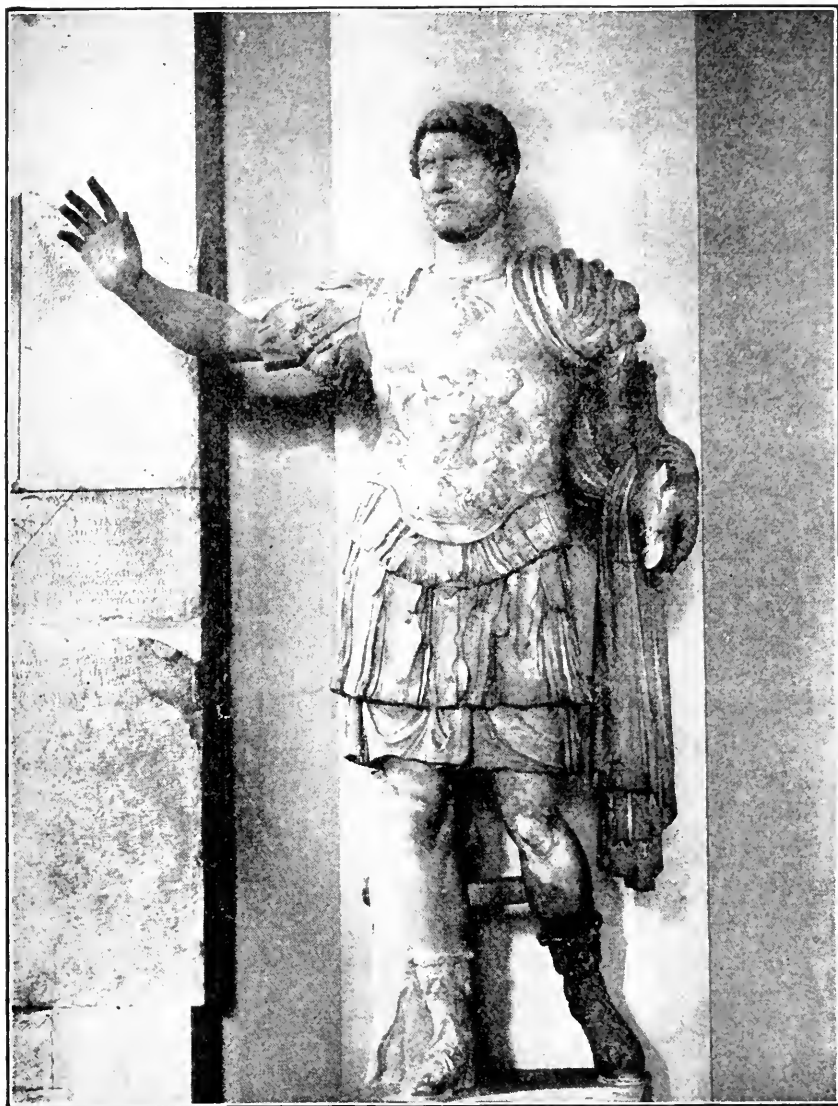
a. It may be equivalent to the English present perfect (with *have*) and be called the *present perfect*: *vīdimus*, *we have seen*. It thus represents an act or state as finished ("perfect") at the time of speaking.

b. It is more frequently equivalent to the English past tense and is then called the *historical perfect*: *vēnit*, *he came*. The historical perfect must be distinguished from the imperfect, which is also past in time, but with a progressive or descriptive force (188). In other words, the historical perfect expresses the simple occurrence of an act in past time; the imperfect expresses its continuance. Thus, in sentence 2, *vēnit* means *he (once) came*; *portābat*, *he was carrying* or *he carried* (at the time).

¹ Or *I did love*.

² Or *I did warn*.

³ Or *I did rule*.



A ROMAN EMPEROR IN MILITARY ATTIRE

EXERCISES

254. 1. Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī. 2. Āfuistī. 3. Dūxit. 4. Deditus. 5. Habuistis. 6. Fēcērunt. 7. Laudāvistī. 8. Docuit. 9. Mīsimus. 10. Mūnīvērunt. 11. Vīdimus. 12. Vocāvit.

255. 1. He has taken. 2. He has heard. 3. They have taken. 4. They have heard. 5. I have praised. 6. You feared. 7. We wrote. 8. You sent. 9. I defended. 10. We fought.

256. 1. Servus bonus multās epistulās scripsit. 2. Ad Caesarem, imperātōrem, lēgātōs mīsērunt. 3. Multa et idōnea loca vīdit. 4. Opusne fēcistī? 5. Ubi fuērunt nau-tae? 6. Nōnne cōnsilium audīvistī? 7. Pater cum filiīs at-que filiābus vēnit. 8. Via ab flūmine ad montem pertinēbat. 9. Dux signa dabat. 10. Tubā signum dedit. 11. Dux propter virtūtem cōpiās laudāvit. 12. Servōs incolārum liberāvimus. 13. Celtae in finēs Belgārum iter fēcērunt. 14. Incolae cum finitimīs bellum gessērunt.

257. 1. We have been friends. 2. There were brave horsemen in the city. 3. The horses have come to the bridge. 4. I have given many rewards to the girls. 5. Who conquered the Gauls? 6. Did you see the beautiful buildings of the city? 7. Why have they devastated the fields of the neighbors?

258. PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS THUS FAR GIVEN

FIRST CONJUGATION

laudō	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātum
iuvō	iuvāre	iūvī	iūtum

a. With the regular endings **-ō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, form the parts of **accūsō**, **appellō**, **cōfirmō**, **exspectō**, **liberō**, **nāvigō**, **nūntiō**, **pācō**, **parō**, **portō**, **pugnō**, **superō**, **vāstō**, **vocō**, **vulnerō**.

SECOND CONJUGATION

dēbeō	dēbere	dēbuī	dēbitum
doceō	docēre	docuī	doctum
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitum
pertineō	pertinēre	pertinuī	—
teneō	tenēre	tenuī	tentum
timeō	timēre	timuī	—
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsum

THIRD CONJUGATION

dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfēnsūm
dīvidō	dīvidere	dīvīsī	dīvīsūm
dūcō	dūcere	dūxī	ductūm
gerō	gerere	gessī	gestūm
incolō	incolere	incoluī	— ¹
mittō	mittere	mīsī	missūm
scribō	scribere	scripsī	scriptūm
vincō	vincere	vīcī	victūm
cupiō	cupere	cupīvī	cupītūm
faciō	facere	fēcī	factūm
iaciō	iacere	iēcī	iactūm

FOURTH CONJUGATION

mūniō	munīre	munīvī	munītūm
veniō	venīre	vēnī	ventūm

IRREGULAR

dō	dare	dedī	datum
absum	abesse	āfuī	

LESSON XXXIII

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE

THE PERFECT TENSE, INDICATIVE PASSIVE

259. Participles. A participle is a verbal adjective, a word that is partly verb and partly adjective. Being derived from a verb, it has voice and tense. Having the form of an adjective, it agrees with a noun in gender, number, and case.

¹ Some verbs lack one or more parts and are called *defective*.

260. Perfect Participle. Latin verbs have a perfect passive participle, which is made by changing final **-m** of the supine (249) to **-s**:

amā'tus, -a, -um, loved, having been loved
mo'nitus, -a, -um, warned, having been warned
rēc'tus, -a, -um, ruled, having been ruled
cap'tus, -a, -um, taken, having been taken
audi'tus, -a, -um, heard, having been heard

a. This participle is declined like the adjective **bonus, -a, -um**.

261. Perfect Indicative Passive. The perfect indicative passive is a compound tense, consisting of the perfect participle and **sum**:

amātus (-a) sum, I have been loved, I was loved
amātus (-a) es, you have been loved, you were loved
amātus (-a, -um) est, (he, she, it) has been loved, was loved
amāti (-ae) sumus, we have been loved, we were loved
amāti (-ae) estis, you have been loved, you were loved
amāti (-ae, -a) sunt, (they) have been loved, were loved

a. The ending of the participle depends upon the gender and number of the subject: thus **pater amātus est**, but **filia amāta est**.

b. In the same way conjugate **monitus sum, I have been warned, rēctus sum, I have been ruled, captus sum, I have been taken, audītus sum, I have been heard**.

262.

VOCABULARY

centuriō, centuriōnis, M., centurion	scūtum, -ī, N., shield
cīvis, cīvis, M., citizen	centum, (indeclinable
populus, -ī, M., people, nation	adj.), hundred
Quīntus, -ī, M., Quintus	gravis, grave, heavy
Sextus, -ī, M., Sextus	

EXERCISES

263. 1. Vocātus est. 2. Vīsī sunt. 3. Missī sumus.
4. Audītus es. 5. Captī estis. 6. Laudātae sunt. 7. Doc-
tus sum. 8. Mūnītum est.
9. Iacta sunt. 10. Nōn
victī sumus.

264. 1. They have been called (or, were called).
2. He has been seen (or, was seen). 3. I have been led
(or, was led). 4. We have been heard. 5. She has been
expected. 6. You have been defended. 7. It has been.
8. It has been reported.



SCŪTUM

265. 1. Centuriō cen-
tum militēs dūxit. 2. Nō-
men centuriōnis erat
Sextus. 3. Quīntus et Sextus erant cīvēs Rōmānī.
4. Quīntus ā Sextō, centuriōne, laudātus est. 5. Scū-
tum Quīntī nōn grave erat. 6. Scūta nova militibus data
sunt. 7. Scūta nova militum vīdī. 8. Populus Rōmānus
cum cīvītātibus Galliae pācem faciet. 9. Ab urbe āfuimus.
10. Castra ā centuriōnibus mūnīta sunt. 11. Hostēs ā
populō Rōmānō superātī sunt. 12. Magnō cum periculō
dēfēnsī sumus. 13. Ad cīvēs nūntius missus sum. 14. Ā
mātre bonā doctus es.

266. 1. Many tribes in Gaul have been subdued. 2. The boy
has been warned. 3. The animals have been seen in the forest.
4. A beautiful shield was carried into the camp. 5. Who has seen
the brave centurion? 6. We have come to the gate of the city with
many citizens. 7. The war has been carried on with great bravery.
8. Who made the Roman shields? 9. Where were the citizens?
10. Were they away from the town?

LESSON XXXIV

267. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXVI-XXXIII

VOCABULARY

altitūdō	īnsigne	perīculum	fortis	ā (ab)
animal	iter	pōns	grātus	apud
arma	liberī	populus	gravis	dē
castra	locus	scūtum	idōneus	ē (ex)
centuriō	mare	socius	omnis	atque
cīvis	mōns	urbs	pār	-que
cohors	multitūdō	vīs	parātus	absum
cōnsilium	nāvis	ācer	prīmus	expectō
explōrātor	nox	audāx	potēns	teneō
fīnis	obses	centum	proximus	pertineō
finitimus	ōrātiō	decem	similis	faciō
hostis	pars	decimus	longē	

Memorize:

Levius fit patientiā

Quicquid corrigere est nefās. — HORACE.

Patience lightens the burden we cannot avert.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

268. 1. What nouns of the third declension have **-ium** in the genitive plural? 2. Decline **urbs nostra**. 3. Decline **iter longum**. 4. Decline **vīs**. 5. In the third declension what final letters of the nominative singular indicate masculine gender? Feminine? Neuter? 6. How is the future tense formed in the first and second conjugations? In the third and fourth conjugations? 7. Conjugate **vocābō**; **vidēbor**; **iaciam**; **mittar**. 8. What forms of a Latin verb are called the principal parts? 9. What are the endings of the perfect indicative active? 10. Conjugate **vēnī**. 11. How do

vēnī and **veniēbam** differ in meaning? 12. How is the perfect indicative passive formed? 13. How are adjectives of the third declension classified? 14. Decline **ācer**. 15. Decline **omnis**. 16. How is separation expressed? Place from which? 17. With what adjectives is the dative used?

POPULUS RŌMĀNUS

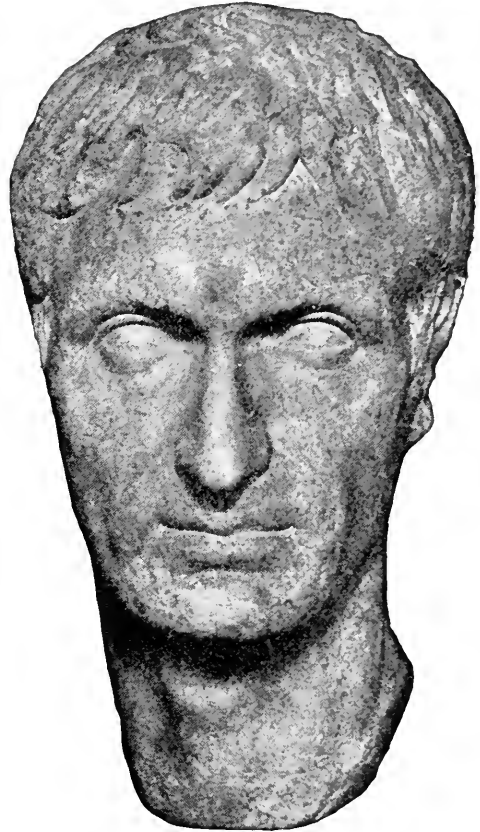
269. Multae fābulae dē¹ septem rēgibus Rŏmānīs nārrantur. Rŏmulus, pŕimus rēx, urbem Rŏmam appellāvit. Propter multās iniūriās Tarquinius Superbus, rēx septimus, ex urbe expulsus est. Post rēgēs cōsulēs creatī sunt.

Rŏmānī fuērunt populus potēns. Multīs cum nātiōnibus bellum gessērunt et Ītaliā, Graeciā, Galliā, Hispāniā vīcērunt.

Magnī imperātōrēs erant Scīpiō, Marius, Sulla, Caesar.

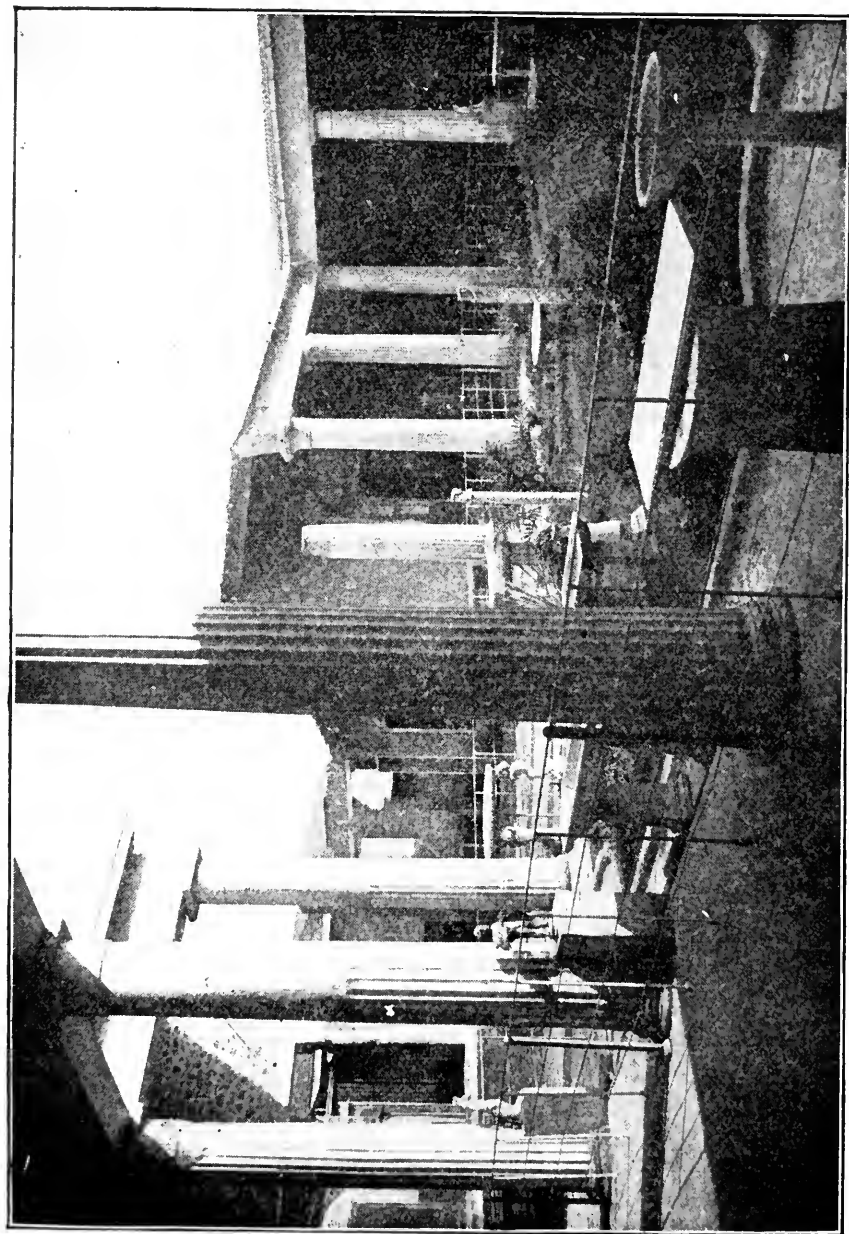
Apud Rŏmānōs fuērunt ōrātōrēs clārī. Quis dē ōrātiōnibus Cicerōnis nōn audīvit?

Vergilius et Horātius, poētae Rŏmānī, ab omnibus laudātī sunt.



L. CORNELIUS SULLA

¹ *About.*



HOUSE OF THE VETII, POMPEII, ITALY

LESSON XXXV

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

270. The fourth declension includes all nouns whose genitive singular ends in **-ūs**. The nominative ends in **-us** or **-ū**.

271. **Gender.** Most nouns of the fourth declension are masculine. **Domus**, *house*, **manus**, *hand*, and a few others are feminine. Those in **-ū** are neuter.

272.

MODEL NOUNS

senātus, M.

cornū, N.

*senate**horn*

ENDINGS

Base senāt-

corn-

M. and F.

N.

SINGULAR

Nom. senā'tus

cor'nū

-us

-ū

Gen. senā'tūs

cor'nūs

-ūs

-ūs

Dat. senā'tuī

cor'nū

-uī

-ū

Acc. senā'tum

cor'nū

-um

-ū

Abl. senā'tū

cor'nū

-ū

-ū

PLURAL

Nom. senā'tūs

cor'nua

-ūs

-ua

Gen. senā'tuum

cor'nuum

-uum

-uum

Dat. senā'tibus

cor'nibus

-ibus

-ibus

Acc. senā'tūs

cor'nua

-ūs

-ua

Abl. senā'tibus

cor'nibus

-ibus

-ibus

273. **Special Endings.** **Lacus**, *lake*, **portus**, *harbor*, and a few other words have **-ubus** or **-ibus** in the dative and ablative plural.

Domus, *house*, has some endings of the second declension, as well as those of the fourth; see page 269.

274.

VOCABULARY

cornū, cornūs, N., <i>horn;</i> <i>wing</i> (of an army)	lacus, lacūs, M., <i>lake</i>
domus, domūs, F., <i>house,</i> <i>home</i>	portus, portūs, M., <i>harbor,</i> <i>port</i>
exercitus, exercitūs, M., <i>army</i> (a trained body)	senātus, senātūs, M., <i>senate</i>
manus, manūs, F., <i>hand;</i> <i>band, force</i>	dexter, -tra, -trum, <i>right</i>
	sinister, -tra, -trum, <i>left</i>
	saepe, adv., <i>often</i>

a. Decline together **exercitus fortis; cornū dextrum.**

EXERCISES

275. 1. In cīvitātibus Galliae fuērunt prīncipēs et senātūs. 2. Cōsulēs ducēs exercituum saepe erant. 3. Noster exercitus nōn vincētur. 4. Animālia in silvā cornua longa habent. 5. Decem cohortēs mīlitum erant in dextrō cornū. 6. Dextrum cornū Rōmānōrum hostēs vīcit; sinistrum cornū hostium superātum est. 7. Lacus et flūmen prōvinciam Rōmānam ā Galliā divisērunt. 8. Domusne agricolae longē ā lacū abest? 9. Sextus et Mārcus, amīcī meī, domōs pulchrās in urbe habēbunt. 10. Manus dextra lēgātī vulnerāta est. 11. In manibus servōrum erant epistolae ab amīcīs nostrīs. 12. Iūlia manū suā epistolam scrīpsit. 13. Frūmentum in portum multīs nāvibus portābitur. 14. In portū nāvēs longās saepe vīdimus. 15. Senātus populusque Rōmānus.¹

276. 1. Caesar sent a message to the Roman senate. 2. The victory has been reported to the senate. 3. The consul was praising the brave army. 4. The leader of the army will be seen with his lieutenants. 5. Have you seen the beautiful lakes? 6. The little village is next to the lake (246). 7. The brave chief led a large band of Gauls.

¹ The title of the Roman government, abbreviated S. P. Q. R.

LESSON XXXVI

PREFIXES. THE LOCATIVE CASE

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE REVIEWED

277. Prefixes. Many compound verbs are made by combining simple verbs with adverbial prefixes. Most of the prefixes are also used as prepositions and include the following already learned: **ā** (**ab**), *away*; **ad**, *to*; **ante**, *before*; **dē**, *down, away*; **ē** (**ex**), *out*; **in** (**im-**), *in, into, against* (negative, *not*); **inter**, *between*; **per**, *through*; **post**, *after*; **trāns** (**trā-**), *across*.

Other common prefixes, not used separately, are **con-** (**com-**, **co-**), *together*; **dis-** (**dī-**), *apart*; **re-** (**red-**), *back*.

278.

VOCABULARY

Corinthus, -ī, F., <i>Corinth</i>	importō, (im + portō), <i>bring in, import</i>
Genava, -ae, F., <i>Geneva</i>	
Helvētia, -ae, F., <i>Helvetia</i> (Switzerland)	contineō, continēre, continuī, contentum (con + teneō), <i>hold together, restrain, bound</i> (geographically)
Helvētīi, -ōrum, M., <i>the Helvetii</i> , ¹ <i>the Helvetians</i>	ēdūcō, (ē + dūcō), ² <i>lead out</i>
Helvētius (Helvēticus), -a, -um, <i>Helvetian</i>	redūcō, (re + dūcō), <i>lead back</i>
Ōce'anus, -ī, M., <i>ocean</i>	trādūcō, (trā + dūcō), <i>lead across</i>
rūs, rūris, N., <i>country</i> (opposed to the city)	conveniō, (con + veniō), ² <i>come together, assemble</i>
vīnum, -ī, N., <i>wine</i>	perveniō, (per + veniō), (<i>come through</i>), <i>arrive, reach</i> .
habitō, -āre, -āvi, ātum, <i> dwell, live</i>	
comportō, (com + portō), ² <i>bring together</i>	

¹ Pronounced *Hel-vē'shi-ī*.

² The principal parts are like those of the simple verb.

279. The Locative Case. Names of towns in the singular of the first and second declensions, and a few other words, have a special case, the *locative* (47 a), denoting place where (*locus, place*). The ending in the first declension is **-ae**: **Rōmae**, at Rome; in the second declension, **-ī**: **Corinthī**, at Corinth. **Domus** and **rūs** have the locative forms **domī**, at home; **rūrī**, in the country.

280.

PLACE IN WHICH

Mārcus in oppidō est, *Marcus is in the town.*
Mārcus Rōmae est, *Marcus is in Rome.*
Mārcus domī est, *Marcus is at home.*

Place *in which* or *at which* is regularly expressed by the ablative with **in** (67), but the locative case is used for **domus**, **rūs**, and names of towns in the singular number.

281.

PLACE FROM WHICH

Ab oppidō vēnērunt, *they came from the town.*
Rōmā vēnērunt, *they came from Rome.*
Domō vēnērunt, *they came from home.*

Place *from which* is expressed by the ablative, regularly with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex** (223), but with names of towns, **domus**, and **rūs** the preposition is omitted.

282.

PLACE TO WHICH

Ad oppidum vēnērunt, *they came to the town.*
Rōmam vēnērunt, *they came to Rome.*
Domum vēnērunt, *they came home.*

Place *to which* is expressed by the accusative, regularly with **ad** or **in** (134), but with names of towns, **domus**, and **rūs** the preposition is omitted.

EXERCISES

283. 1. Gallia, magna terra, ā Rhodanō ad Ōceanum pertinēbat. 2. Helvētia montibus et flūminibus continēbātur. 3. Genava erat magnum oppidum et proximum

Helvētiīs. 4. Ex eō¹ op-
pidō pōns ad Helvētiōs
pertinēbat. 5. Filiī mer-
cātōris erunt Genavae.
6. Multae epistulae Ge-
navā mittentur. 7. Mār-
cus et Quīntus Rōmae in
Ītaliā habitāvērunt.
8. Iūlia in urbe habitat;
Sextus, frāter Iūliae, rūri.
9. Puerī Corinthī cum pa-
tre suō habitābunt.
10. Flūmen Rhēnus Ger-
māniam ā Galliā dīvidit.
11. Agricolae ex agrīs frū-
mentum comportābant.
12. Mercātorne in Galliam
vīnum importāvit?
13. Decemne cohortēs ex
castrīs ēductae sunt?
14. Lēgātus cōpiās in cas-
tra redūcet. 15. Hostēs
trāns Rhēnum in Galliam
trādūcuntur. 16. Virī con-
veniunt et ad lacum pul-
chrum perveniunt.

284. 1. Does your brother
live² at home? 2. The soldier
has carried home a supply of
grain. 3. The traders saw many ships at Corinth. 4. There were
many soldiers in the ships. 5. Caesar led his army to Geneva.
6. The Roman lieutenant is away from home. 7. The Roman
legions conquered the Germans and the Helvetians. 8. The Bel-
gians and the Celts defended their homes with great valor.

¹ *That.*

² **Habitō.**



STATUE OF A ROMAN MATRON

LESSON XXXVII

THE FIFTH DECLENSION. EXPRESSIONS OF TIME

285. The last declension, the fifth, includes all nouns whose genitive singular ends in *-ēī* or *-eī*. The nominative ends in *-ēs*.

286. **Gender.** Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except *diēs*, *day*, which is masculine in the plural, but masculine or feminine in the singular.

287.

MODEL NOUNS

	<i>diēs</i> , M., <i>day</i>		<i>rēs</i> , F., <i>thing</i>		ENDINGS	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rērum</i>	<i>-ēī, -eī</i>	<i>-ērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>-ēī, -eī</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-em</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>-ē</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>

288. In the endings of the genitive and dative singular *ē* occurs after a vowel, *e* after a consonant: *di-ēī, r-eī*.

Diēs and *rēs* are the only words having all the plural cases. Most nouns of this declension have only the singular, but *aciēs*, *army*, *spēs*, *hope*, and a few others, have also the nominative and accusative plural.

289. **The Five Declensions.** We have seen that the five declensions are distinguished by the ending of the genitive singular: *-ae, -ī, -is, -ūs, -ēī (eī)*. They are sometimes called (1) the *ā-* declension, (2) the *o-* declension, (3) the consonant and *i-* declension, (4) the *u-* declension, (5) the *ē-* declension. These distinctive letters are best seen in the genitive plural, standing before final *-rum* in the first, second, and fifth declensions, and *-um* in the third and fourth.

290. EXPRESSIONS OF TIME

1. **Multōs annōs Rōmae habitāvit**, *he lived at Rome (for) many years.*
2. **Proximō annō Rōmae habitāvit**, *he lived at Rome last year.*
3. **Decem annīs multās urbēs vīdit**, *within ten years he has seen many cities.*

The accusative phrase **multōs annōs** expresses the time *during which* he lived and answers the question *How long?* The ablative **proximō annō** expresses the time *when* he lived, while **decem annīs** tells the time *within which* he has seen the cities.

291. RULE. **Duration of Time.** *Duration of time is expressed by the accusative case.*

292. RULE. **Time When or Within Which.** *Time when or within which anything is or is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

293. VOCABULARY

aciēs, aciēi , F., <i>line of battle, army</i>	brevis, breve , <i>short</i>
diēs, diēi , M., <i>day</i>	pauci, -ae, -a , pl., <i>a few</i>
meridiēs, -ēi , M., <i>midday, noon</i>	herī , adv., <i>yesterday</i>
rēs, rei , F., <i>thing, fact, matter</i>	hodiē , adv., (on this day), <i>to-day</i>
aestās, aestātis , F., <i>summer</i>	crās , adv., <i>to-morrow</i>
hiems, hiemis , F., <i>winter</i>	maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsum , <i>remain, abide</i>
mēnsis, mēnsis , M., <i>month</i>	

294. **Synonyms.** Synonyms are words that have the same or nearly the same meaning: **aciēs**, *army in battle array*; **agmen**, *army on the march*; **exercitus**, *army, a trained force*; **cōpiae**, *troops, forces*.

Memorize:

Nōn multa, sed multum.

Not many things, but much.

Nōn nōbīs solum.

Not merely for ourselves.

EXERCISES

295. 1. Multōs diēs domī mānsimus. 2. Paucīs diēbus amīcōs nostrōs vidēbimus. 3. Ab monte aciem hostium vīdimus. 4. In aciē erant mīlītēs, centuriōnēs, lēgātī, imperātor. 5. Exercitus Rōmānus cum multīs cīvitātibus pugnāvit. 6. Nōn semper vīcit, sed nōn saepe superātus est. 7. Agmen partem noctis iter fēcit. 8. Aestāte diēs sunt longī; hieme sunt brevēs. 9. Erāmus rūrī magnam partem aestātis. 10. Omnium rērum magna cōpia erat in oppidō. 11. Diēs est in hōrās dīvīsa; annus in mēnsēs. 12. Mārcus herī erat Rōmae, crās erit in prōvinciā, paucīs mēnsibus erit in Galliā. 13. Nautae multōs mēnsēs domō aberunt. 14. Ante merīdiem (A. M.); post merīdiem (P. M.).

296. 1. The next day Caesar sent his army to Geneva. 2. Before noon they fortified the camp. 3. Have you seen your brother to-day? 4. We ought to be in the city to-morrow. 5. The king's forces held the mountain many hours. 6. The army will march a great part of the day. 7. A few slaves will remain in the village with the traders.

LESSON XXXVIII**THE PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE**

297. The pluperfect indicative corresponds in meaning to the English past perfect: active, *I had loved*; passive, *I had been loved*. It represents an act or state as completed in past time.

298. **The Pluperfect Indicative of Regular Verbs.** In the active voice the pluperfect tense is formed by adding **eram** to the perfect stem (250). The tense sign is **-erā-** (shortened to **-era-** before the endings **-m, -t, -nt**).

ACTIVE VOICE

<i>I had loved</i>	<i>I had warned</i>	<i>I had ruled</i>
amā'veram	monu'eram	rē'xeram
amā'verās	monu'erās	rē'xerās
amā'verat	monu'erat	rē'xerat
amāverā'mus	monuerā'mus	rēxerā'mus
amāverā'tis	monuerā'tis	rēxerā'tis
amā'verant	monu'erant	rē'xerant

a. With the same endings conjugate **cēperam**, *I had taken*; **audīveram**, *I had heard*; **fu'eram**, *I had been*.

299. In the passive voice the pluperfect indicative is compound, consisting of the perfect participle (260) and **eram**.

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

amātus (-a) eram, *I had been loved*
 amātus (-a) erās, *you had been loved*
 amātus (-a, -um) erat, *(he, she, it) had been loved*

PLURAL

amātī (-ae) erāmus, *we had been loved*
 amātī (-ae) erātis, *you had been loved*
 amātī (-ae, -a) erant, *(they) had been loved*

a. In the same way conjugate **monitus eram**, *I had been warned*; **rēctus eram**, *I had been ruled*; **captus eram**, *I had been taken*; **auditus eram**, *I had been heard*.

300.

VOCABULARY

magistrātus, -ūs, M., <i>magistrate</i>	quārtus, -a, -um, <i>fourth</i>
pāgus, -ī, M., <i>district, canton</i>	quattuor, (indeclinable adj.), <i>four</i>
vigilia, -ae, F., <i>watch</i> ¹	postea, adv., <i>afterwards</i>
antīquus, -a, -um, <i>ancient</i>	quod, conj., <i>because</i>
duodecim, (indeclinable adj.), <i>twelve</i>	creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum, <i>elect, create</i>

EXERCISES

301. 1. Laudāverās. 2. Vīderat. 3. Mīserāmus. 4. Mūnīverātis. 5. Fēcerant. 6. Vocātus erās. 7. Docta erat. 8. Victī erant. 9. Mūnītum erat. 10. Āfuerāmus.

302. 1. I had waited. 2. You had held. 3. He had written. 4. We had divided. 5. You had come. 6. They had been heard. 7. I had been elected. 8. He had been seen. 9. They had been led. 10. It had been hurled.

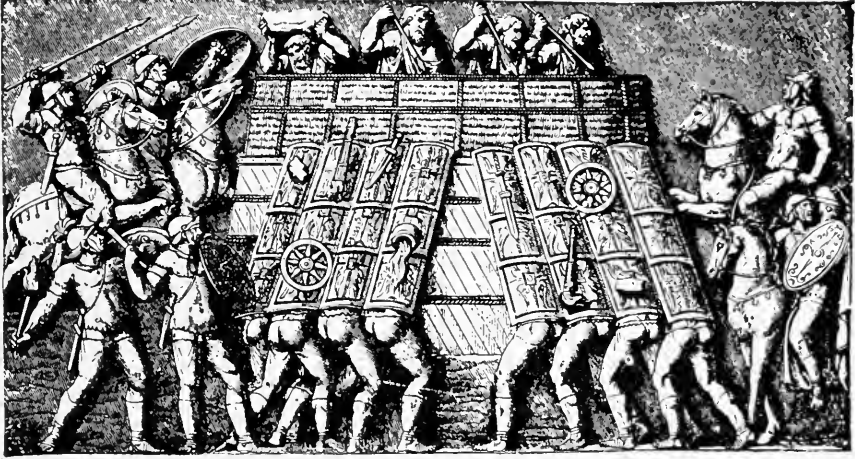
303. 1. Equōs ex agrō ēdūxerāmus. 2. Nūntius ad ducem equitum missus erat. 3. Nāvēsne in portum nāvīgāverant? 4. Nōnne ad vīcum in montibus pervēnerās? 5. Agmen quattuor hōrās iter fēcerat. 6. Helvētia erat in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa. 7. Quārta pars ab exercitū Caesaris victa erat. 8. Pāx cum Celtīs cōfirmāta erat. 9. Rēx Germānōrum ā populo Rōmānō amīcus appellātus erat. 10. Diem Rōmānī in duodecim hōrās dīvīsērunt; noctem in quattuor vigiliās. 11. Militēs laudātī sunt, quod magnā cum virtūte pugnāverant. 12. Vicērunt quod fortēs erant. 13. Oppidānī nōn timēbant, quod oppidum mūnīverant. 14. Antīquīs temporibus fuerant rēgēs in Galliā; postea magistrātūs ā cīvitatibus creātī sunt.

304. 1. I had called the boys my friends. 2. The boys had been called friends. 3. We had lived² ten years in the district of Hel-

¹ A *watch* was a fourth part of the night, from sunset to sunrise.

² **Habitō.**

vetia. 4. A supply of grain had been given to the men by the tribe's magistrate. 5. I shall remain in the country because I love the broad fields. 6. We had desired to see the house of the merchant. 7. Marcus will be elected consul because he has often defended the people.



ATTACK ON A GERMAN FORTRESS
As depicted on the column of Marcus Aurelius

LESSON XXXIX

THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

REVIEW OF THE INDICATIVE. SYNOPSES

305. The future perfect tense in Latin corresponds to the English future perfect: active, *I shall have loved*; passive, *I shall have been loved*. It represents an act or state as completed in future time.

306. **The Future Perfect Indicative of Active Verbs.** In the active voice the future perfect is formed by adding **-erō** to the perfect stem. The tense sign is **-eri-**.

ACTIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

<i>amā'verō, I shall have loved</i>	<i>monu'erō, I shall have warned</i>
<i>amā'veris, you will have loved</i>	<i>monu'eris, you will have warned</i>
<i>amā'verit, (he, she, it) will have loved</i>	<i>monu'erit, (he, she, it) will have warned</i>

PLURAL

<i>amāve'rimus, we shall have loved</i>	<i>monue'rimus, we shall have warned</i>
<i>amāve'ritis, you will have loved</i>	<i>monue'ritis, you will have warned</i>
<i>amā'verint, (they) will have loved</i>	<i>monu'erint, (they) will have warned</i>

a. With the same endings conjugate rēxerō, I shall have ruled, cēperō, I shall have taken, audiverō, I shall have heard, fuerō, I shall have been.

307. In the passive voice the future perfect indicative is compound, consisting of the perfect participle and **erō**.

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

<i>amātus (-a) erō, I shall have been loved</i>
<i>amātus (-a) eris, you will have been loved</i>
<i>amātus (-a, -um) erit, (he, she, it) will have been loved</i>

PLURAL

<i>amātī (-ae) erimus, we shall have been loved</i>
<i>amātī (-ae) eritis, you will have been loved</i>
<i>amātī (-ae, -a) erunt, (they) will have been loved</i>

a. In the same way conjugate **monitus erō**, *I shall have been warned*; **rēctus erō**, *I shall have been ruled*; **captus erō**, *I shall have been taken*; **auditus erō**, *I shall have been heard*.

308.

INDICATIVE ENDINGS

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Present</i>	-ō	-r
<i>Imperfect</i>	-bam	-bar
<i>Future</i>	-bō, -am	-bor, -ar
<i>Perfect</i>	-ī	-us sum
<i>Pluperfect</i>	-eram	-us eram
<i>Future Perfect</i>	-erō	-us erō

309. **Synopsis.** A synopsis is a table consisting of one form of each tense, in the same voice, number, and person:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	IRREGULAR
<i>Present</i>	amō	amor	sum
<i>Imperfect</i>	amābam	amābar	eram
<i>Future</i>	amābō	amābor	erō
<i>Perfect</i>	amāvī	amātus sum	fuī
<i>Pluperfect</i>	amāveram	amātus eram	fueram
<i>Future Perfect</i>	amāverō	amātus erō	fuerō
<i>Present</i>	regō	regor	
<i>Imperfect</i>	regēbam	regēbar	
<i>Future</i>	regam	regar	
<i>Perfect</i>	rēxī	rēctus sum	
<i>Pluperfect</i>	rēxeram	rēctus eram	
<i>Future Perfect</i>	rēxerō	rēctus ero	

a. Write synopses of **videō** in the third person singular; of **mūniō** in the third person plural; of **iaciō** in the first person plural; of **dō** in the second person singular; of **absum** in the second person plural.

310.

VOCABULARY

lūx, lūcis, F., *light, daylight*
rēgnum, -ī, N. (**regō**), *royal*
power, kingdom

celeriter, adv., (**celer**, *quick*),
quickly

fortiter, (**fortis**), adv., *bravely*

postquam, conj., *after*

ubi, adv. or conj.,¹ *when, where*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
seize, take possession of

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mō-
tum, *move*

contendō, -tendere, -tendī,
-tentum, (**con + tendō**,
stretch thoroughly), *strive,*
contend; hasten

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-
tum, (**per + faciō**),² (*do thor-*
oughly), *accomplish, com-*
plete

a. The perfect indicative is used with the conjunctions **postquam** and **ubi**.

Memorize:

Homō sum; hūmānī nihil ā mē aliēnum putō. *I am a man and deem nothing that relates to man a matter of indifference to me.*

EXERCISES

311. 1. **Vocāverō, dederō.** 2. **Habueris, vīderis.** 3. **Dē-**
fenderit, scrīpserit. 4. **Vēnerimus, pervēnerimus.** 5. **Cupī-**
veritis. 6. **Iēcērunt, iēc'erant, iēc'erint.** 7. **Missus erō.**
 8. **Mūnītum erit.** 9. **Captī erunt.** 10. **Docta eris.**

312. 1. I shall have made. 2. You will have aided.³ 3. He will have led. 4. We shall have brought-together. 5. They will have been absent. 6. He will be elected. 7. He will have been elected. 8. You will have been sent. 9. You will be sent.

313. 1. **Frūmentum ā mercātōribus importātum erit.**
 2. **Opus celeriter perficiētur.** 3. **Ante hōram decimam multās rēs perfēc'erimus.** 4. **Nostrī**⁴ **fortiter contenderint.**

¹ **Ubi** is either a conjunction or adverb, according to its use in a sentence.

² The passive of **perficiō** is regular, like that of **capiō**.

³ What are the principal parts of **iuvō**?

⁴ **Militēs** is often to be supplied, as here, with the masculine plural of possessive adjectives.

5. Gallī ante lūcem castra mōverint. 6. Prīnceps cīvitātis rēgnum occupābit, quod magnum exercitum habet. 7. Ubi sīgnum pugnae datum est, militēs fortiter pugnāvērunt. 8. Postquam pontem fēcit, Caesar trāns Rhēnum suōs¹ trādūxit. 9. Postquam militēs pila iēcērunt, gladiīs contendērunt. 10. Ubi cīvitātēs victae sunt, pācem facere parātae erant. 11. Hostēsne montem herī occupāvērunt? 12. Quis opus hodiē perficiet?



CAPTIVES PLEADING FOR MERCY FROM A ROMAN CONQUEROR

314. 1. When I was in the city, I saw the harbor and the ships. 2. After I arrived at (ad) the city, I wrote to my friends. 3. The camp will be moved before the fourth watch. 4. The magistrates will have been elected by the citizens. 5. They were hastening home, because they had completed the work.

¹ See page 100, footnote 4.

LESSON XL

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

315.

VOCABULARY

alius, alia, aliud, <i>another,</i> <i>other</i>	nūllus, -a, -um, <i>none, no</i> ūllus, -a, -um, <i>any</i>
alter, altera, alterum, <i>the</i> <i>other</i> (of two)	sōlus, -a, -um, <i>alone, sole</i> tōtus, -a, -um, <i>whole, entire</i>
neuter, neutra, neutrum, <i>neither</i> (of two)	ūnus, -a, -um, <i>one</i> sine, prep., w. abl., <i>without</i>
uter, utra, utrum, <i>which?</i> (of two)	

316. Nine pronominal adjectives of the first and second declensions, given in the above vocabulary, have the ending **-iūs** in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative singular, for all genders, instead of the regular endings. In other cases of the singular and in the plural they are declined like **bonus**, **liber**, or **pulcher**. Note the exceptional form of **alius** in the neuter.

a. Learn the declension of **alius**, **alter**, **neuter**, **ūnus** as given on page 271.

317. **Alter** repeated (**alter . . . alter**) means *one . . . the other*; **alius** repeated (**alius . . . alius**), *one . . . another*; pl., **aliī . . . aliī**, *some . . . others*: **Aliī pīla, aliī gladiōs portant**, *some carry spears, others swords*.

318. The pronominal adjectives of this lesson regularly stand before their nouns.

a. Decline **tōta nāvis, uter puer, neutrum cornū**.

319. **Adjectives as Nouns.** Adjectives in Latin as in English are often used alone as nouns: **altum**, *the deep* (sea); **fortēs fortūna iuvat**, *fortune favors the brave*. A masculine

adjective so used generally implies *man* or *men*, a neuter adjective, *thing* or *things*: **nostrī**, *our (men, soldiers)*;¹ **omnēs**, *all (men)*; **omnia**, *all (things)*.

EXERCISES

320. 1. Belgae ūnam partem Galliae incolunt; aliam (partem) Celtae. 2. Alterum oppidum erat in Galliā; alterum in Italiā. 3. Neuter locus castrīs erat idōneus. 4. Utrī puerō epistolam dedistī? 5. Prīncipēs tōtius Galliae ad Cæsarem vēnerunt. 6. Tōtam diem erant nūllae nāvēs in portū. 7. Opus sine ūllō periculō perfectum est. 8. Lēgātus cum sōlā decimā legiōne vēnit. 9. Multī contendērunt; paucī vicērunt. 10. Ubi victōrēs domum pervēnerunt, omnēs laudātī sunt. 11. Mercātōrēs per prōvinciam venient, quod aliud iter habent nūllum. 12. Nostrī castra fortiter dēfenderant.

321. 1. The boys were doing everything (all things) with great care. 2. Neither of the consuls was aided by the other. 3. The brave centurion fought without a shield. 4. Some Romans were soldiers, others were orators. 5. The men of one district are ready to come-together. 6. The sisters of Marcus will remain in the country the whole summer. 7. After our friends arrived at (ad) Corinth, they sailed to (in) Italy.

¹ See 313, sentences 4 and 8.



A ROMAN FESTIVAL

Alma-Tadema

LESSON XLI

REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXV-XL

322.

VOCABULARY

aciēs	pāgus	duodecim	crās	importō
aestās	portus	neuter	fortiter	occupō
cornū	rēgnum	nūllus	herī	contineō
diēs	rēs	paucī	hodiē	maneō
domus	rūs	quārtus	posteā	moveō
exercitus	senātus	quattuor	saepe	contendō
hiems	vigilia	sinister	sine	ēducō
lacus	vīnum	sōlus	postquam	redūcō
lūx	alius	tōtus	quod	trādūcō
magistrātus	alter	ūllus	ubi	perficiō
manus	antīquus	ūnus	comportō	conveniō
mēnsis	brevis	uter	creō	perveniō
merīdiēs	dexter	celeriter	habitō	

REVIEW QUESTIONS

323. 1. What are the endings of the fourth declension? 2. Decline **manus parva**. 3. What are the endings of the fifth declension? 4. Decline **aciēs potēns**. 5. How are the declensions of nouns distinguished? 6. What are the endings of the locative case? 7. Distinguish three ways of expressing place. 8. By what cases is time expressed? 9. What is meant by synonyms? 10. How is the pluperfect indicative formed? 11. How is the future perfect formed? 12. Name nine pronominal adjectives. 13. Decline **alter frāter**.

Memorize:

Nihil est ab omnī

Parte beātum.—HORACE.

There is no such thing as perfect happiness.



JULIUS CAESAR

VICTOR GALLIAE

324. Gāius Iūlius Caesar, vir clārrissimus ¹ Rōmae, mīles, orātor, ā populō Rōmānō cōsul creatus est. Post cōsulātum Galliam prōvinciam accēpit.² Tum octō annōs cum cīvitatibus Gallicīs bellum gessit, et eās omnēs pācāvit. Pontem in flūmine Rhēnō fēcit et Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum in-

¹ *Most famous.*

² *Received.*

colēbant, superāvit. Posteā in Britanniam nāvīgāvit, et cum Britannīs pugnāvit.

LESSON XLII

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *QUI*. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN *QUIS*. CLAUSES

325. The relative pronoun *quī*, *who*, *which*, or *that*, is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
				<i>who, which, or that</i>		
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cūius</i> ¹	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
				<i>whose, of whom, or of which</i>		
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i> ²	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
				<i>to or for whom or which</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
				<i>whom, which, or that</i>		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
				<i>from (etc.) whom or which</i>		

326. The interrogative pronoun *quis*, *who?* *what?* is declined in the plural like the relative *quī*; in the singular as follows:

	M. and F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>who? what?</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cūius</i> ¹	<i>cūius</i>	<i>whose? of whom? of what?</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i> ²	<i>cui</i>	<i>to or for whom? to or for what?</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>whom? what?</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>from (etc.) whom? from (etc.) what?</i>

¹ Pronounced *coo'yus*.

² Pronounced *kwee*.

327. The interrogative adjective **quī**, *what? which?* is declined like the relative pronoun in both numbers: **quī vir?** *what man?* **quae terra?** *what country?* **quod flūmen?** *what river?*

328. Use of the Relative Pronoun. The relative pronoun is a connecting word that refers or *relates* to a preceding noun or pronoun called its *antecedent*.

1. **Virī, quī oppidum dēfenderant, laudātī sunt,** *the men, who had defended the town, were praised.*
2. **Virī, quōrum oppidum dēfēnsus erat, laudātī sunt,** *the men, whose town had been defended, were praised.*

In these sentences **quī** and **quōrum** have the gender and number of the antecedent **virī**; but **quī** is a subject nominative and **quōrum** a possessive genitive without regard to the case of **virī**.

329. RULE. Agreement of Relative Pronouns. *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; its case depends on its use in its own clause.*

330. Complex Sentences. With regard to form, sentences are simple, complex, or compound, as in English. The Latin sentences of 328, and in former lessons those containing **postquam**, **ubi** (*when*), or **quod** (*because*), are complex; for they have two clauses each, a principal or independent, and a subordinate or dependent.

a. The clauses of a complex sentence are connected by a relative pronoun, or a subordinate conjunction. A clause beginning with a relative pronoun is called a *relative* clause.

331. The Use of Clauses. Clauses may be used as nouns, adjectives, or adverbs.

a. A *noun clause*, or *substantive clause*, is one that is used as the subject or object of a verb, or as an appositive or predicate noun: We know *that the earth revolves*. Latin illustrations are given later.

b. An *adjective clause* is one that modifies a noun or pronoun. Relative clauses are used in this way.

c. An *adverbial clause* is one that modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. Clauses introduced by **quod** (*because*), **ubi**, or **postquam** are illustrations.

332.

VOCABULARY

Aquītānia, -ae, F., <i>Aquitania</i>	trēs, tria, ¹ <i>three</i>
Aquītānus, -ī, M., <i>an Aquitanian</i> ; pl., <i>the Aquitanians</i>	expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (ex + pugnō), <i>capture, take</i>
cultus, -ūs, M., <i>civilization</i>	by storm
lingua, -ae, F., <i>tongue, language</i>	oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i>	(ob + pugnō), <i>fight against,</i>
tertius, -a, -um, <i>third</i>	attack

EXERCISES

333. 1. Puer, cūius frāter veniet. 2. Mīles, cui scūtum datum est. 3. Terra, quam incolimus. 4. Oppidum, quod est proximum. 5. Via, quā vēnistī. 6. Amīcus, quōcum² vēneram. 7. Montēs, quī sunt altī. 8. Flūmina, quae sunt lāta. 9. Incolae, quōs vīcimur. 10. Puellae, quās vocābant.

334. 1. The days, which are short. 2. The sailors, whose ship is new. 3. The merchants, to whom he gave the grain. 4. The camp, which they will see. 5. The leaders, by whom we were sent. 6. The villages, in which they lived. 7. The consul, whom they will elect. 8. The queen, to whom the letter has been given.

335. 1. Aquītānia est tertia pars Galliae. 2. Quī linguam Aquītānōrum audīvērunt? 3. Quās linguās audīvistī? 4. Helvētīi ā cultū prōvinciae Rōmānae nōn longē aberant. 5. Quis cultum Rōmānōrum nōn laudat? 6. Hostēs tria oppida expugnāvērunt; multa oppugnāverant. 7. Cōnsilia, quae nūntiant, sunt bona. 8. Quibus cōnsilia nūntiāvērunt? 9. Sextus amīcōs suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, vocāvit. 10. Neuter puerōrum, quōs vīdimus, nāvīgāre cupiēbat. 11. Cūius manū epistula scrīpta est? 12. Mīlītēs

¹ The numeral **trēs** is declined like the plural of **fortis**, page 272.

² **Cum** may follow the ablative of the relative pronoun, as an enclitic (18).

omnia signa, quae habent, comportābunt. 13. Urbs, quam oppugnant, nōn expugnābitur.

336. 1. We shall remain at home three days. 2. (There) were ten ships, that carried the sailors. 3. (There) are many animals in the forest, which you see. 4. To whom had they written the letter? 5. With what legions did the general attack the town? 6. Was the town quickly captured? 7. Caesar made peace with the tribe, whose chief had been wounded. 8. There are many other cities, that I desire to see.

GAUL

337. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam Celtae. Celtae linguā Rōmānōrum Gallī appellantur. Linguae cīvītātum sunt dissimilēs. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen (dīvidit); ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

LESSON XLIII

THE PRESENT INFINITIVE. THE USES OF THE INFINITIVE

338. **The Present Infinitive.** The Latin infinitive has three tenses in each voice: present, perfect, and future. The present passive infinitive is formed by changing final **-e** of the active to **-ī**, except in the third conjugation, in which **-ere** becomes **-ī**.

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
amāre, to love	amārī, to be loved
monēre, to warn	monērī, to be warned
regere, to rule	regī, to be ruled
capere, to take	capī, to be taken
audire, to hear	audīrī, to be heard

339. Uses of the Infinitive. The Latin infinitive is used in two ways:

1. As a noun in the nominative or accusative, without a subject.

2. As a verb, with a subject accusative.

340. The Infinitive without a Subject. As stated in 109 the infinitive is used as the subject, the object, or the complement of a verb; sometimes as an appositive or predicate nominative: **Errāre est hūmānum**, *to err is human*; **vidēre cupiunt**, *they desire to see*; **venīre dēbent**, *they ought to come*; **vidēre est crēdere**, *to see is to believe*.¹

341. THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

1. **Mōns est altus**, *the mountain is high*.

2. **Audiō montem esse altum**, *I hear (that) the mountain is high* (lit., the mountain to be high).

3. **Videō montem esse altum**, *I see (that) the mountain is high*.

4. **Nūntiō montem esse altum**, *I report (that) the mountain is high*.

In the first sentence there is a direct statement. In the other sentences **montem esse altum** is an indirect statement, having the verb in the infinitive with a subject in the accusative. This indirect statement forms a noun clause, used as the object of the main verb. Notice that there is no Latin word for *that*, to connect the clause.

342. RULE. Subject Accusative with Infinitive. *The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative case.*

343. RULE. Uses of Infinitive with Subject Accusative. *The infinitive with a subject accusative is used with verbs meaning say, think, know, perceive;² also with some verbs meaning order, compel, desire, permit.*

¹ Review 109 and 110.

² I. e. with verbs of "mental action."

344. The Meaning of the Present Infinitive. The present infinitive denotes the *same* time as the verb on which it depends (*say, think, etc.*).¹ It may, therefore, have a present or past meaning, as in the following sentences:

1. **Audit mīlitēs vincere**, *he hears that the soldiers conquer, or are conquering* (lit., the soldiers to be conquering).
2. **Audīvit mīlitēs vincere**, *he heard that the soldiers conquered, or were conquering* (lit., the soldiers to be conquering).
3. **Audit mīlitēs vincī**, *he hears (that) the soldiers are conquered.*
4. **Audīvit mīlitēs vincī**, *he heard (that) the soldiers were conquered.*

345.

VOCABULARY

putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, <i>think</i>	dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, <i>say</i>
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, <i>order</i>	discō, discere, didicī, —, <i>learn</i>
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum, <i>believe</i>	sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, <i>know</i>

EXERCISES

346. 1. Dīcit, "Puer epistolam scrībit."² 2. Dīcit puerum epistolam scrībere.³ 3. Dīxit puerum epistolam scrībere. 4. Putō cōpiās fortiter pugnāre. 5. Putāvī cōpiās fortiter pugnāre. 6. Scīmus puellās multōs amīcōs habēre. 7. Scīvīmus puellās multōs amīcōs habēre. 8. Discimus Galliam esse magnam terram. 9. Crēdisne nātiōnem

¹ With verbs like *plan, promise, and sometimes hope*, the present infinitive refers to future time.

² The direct statement, giving the exact words of the speaker.

³ The indirect statement.

pācārī? 10. Quis crēdidit nātiōnem pācārī? 11. Vidētisne agrōs vāstārī? 12. Frāter meus īnsulam esse pulchram scribit. 13. Rēx servōs liberārī iubet. 14. Lēgātus pīla iacī iussit. 15. Nūntiātum est Gallōs oppidum mūnīre. 16. Nōnne putās nautam sīgnum vidēre? 17. Mercātōrēs frūmentum mittī iusserant. 18. Omnēs sciunt magnum bellum gerī. 19. Vidī cīvēs quārtā hōrā convenīre. 20. Legiōnēs iter facere parātae sunt. 21. Esne puer quem Rōmae vidī? 22. Quae nāvis est illa¹quam vidēō?

347. 1. Do you think² the place is suitable? 2. Did you think the place was suitable? 3. I hear that my friends are not far away. 4. They will order the slaves to carry the grain. 5. The leader says that the army is marching into Gaul. 6. Marcus said that neither of the men was living at Rome. 7. They often come to Rome. 8. We all know the boys desire victory. 9. We desire to learn many (things). 10. All men ought to be free. 11. Do you know the farmer, whose horse is in the field?

¹ that (349).

² The conjunction *that* is understood.



A STREET SCENE IN ANCIENT ROME

LESSON XLIV

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *HIC, ILLE, ISTE*

THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

348. There are five demonstrative pronouns in Latin: **hic**, **ille**, **iste**, **is**, **īdem**. **Hic**, *this*, is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	hūius ¹	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic ²	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

349. **Ille**, **illa**, **illud**, *that* (yonder), and **iste**, **ista**, **istud**, *that* (of yours, near you) are declined alike.

a. Learn the declension of **ille** as given on page 276.

350. **Use of Demonstrative Pronouns.** Demonstrative pronouns *point out* a person or thing definitely: *This* is the man; *That* is the house. **Hic** means *this*, pl. *these* (near me); **iste**, *that*, pl. *those* (near you); **ille**, *that*, pl. *those* (remote in place, time, or thought). From this difference in meaning these words may be called demonstratives of the first, second, and third persons, respectively.

a. The demonstrative pronouns are often used as demonstrative *adjectives*, agreeing with a noun and preceding it: **hic amīcus**, *this friend*; **iste amīcus**, *that friend* (of yours); **ille amīcus**, *that friend* (yonder).

b. The demonstrative pronouns may be used as *personal* pronouns of the third person: **hic**, **ille**, *he*;³ **haec**, **illa**, *she*; **hoc**, **illud**, *it*; **hūius**, **illiūs**, *his*; **hunc**, **illum**, *him*; **hī**, **illī**, *they*, etc.

¹ Pronounced *hoo'yus*.

² Pronounced *wheek*.

³ Meaning *this man*, *that man*.

351.

VOCABULARY

cupidus , -a, -um, <i>desirous</i> , <i>eager</i>	hic, haec, hoc , <i>this; he, she, it</i>
cupiditās , -tātis, F., <i>desire</i>	ille, illa, illud , <i>that (yonder);</i> <i>he, she, it</i>
memoria , -ae, F., <i>memory</i> , <i>recollection</i>	iste, ista, istud , <i>that (of</i> <i>yours)</i>
spēs , speī, F., <i>hope</i>	dīū , adv., <i>long,¹ for a long</i>
indūcō (in + dūcō), <i>lead on</i> , <i>influence</i>	<i>time</i>

a. Decline **hic nauta, haec legiō, illa domus, istud pīlum**.

352.

THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

1. **Victōriam cupiunt**, *they desire the victory.*
2. **Cupidī victōriae sunt**, *they are desirous of (eager for) victory.*
3. **Magna cupiditās victōriae est**, *there is great desire for (of) victory.*

In the illustrations the genitive **victōriae** is related as an object to the adjective **cupidus** and the noun **cupiditās**, just as **victōriam** is the object of **cupiunt**. **Victōriae** is called an *objective genitive*.

353. RULE. *The genitive is used with certain nouns and adjectives to denote the object of an action or feeling implied.*

EXERCISES

354. 1. **Huic servō.** 2. **Ad hanc īnsulam.** 3. **Cum hīs ducibus.** 3. **Apud hōs equitēs.** 5. **Haec castra.** 6. **Istud opus.** 7. **Illa animālia.** 8. **Illōrum lacuum.** 9. **Illīs nautīs.** 10. **Ab illō prīncipe.** 11. **Illius aciē.** 12. **Sine istō gladiō.**

355. 1. **Hae puellae vēnērunt; illae āfuērunt.** 2. **Illī opus**

¹ *Long in time, opposed to longē, far.*

fēcērunt, nōn hī. 3. Memoria hūius victōriae diū manēbit.
 4. Hī fuērunt cupidī rēgnī. 5. Hic locus erit castrīs idōneus.
 6. Cum hāc natiōne Rōmānī pācem fēcērunt. 7. Illī servī
 cupiditāte libertātis in-
 ductī sunt. 8. Nūntius
 ab illīs cīvitātibus, quae
 trāns flūmen incolēbant,
 vēnit. 9. Ūnus ex hīs,¹
 quī nūntiū vēnerant, erat
 frāter centuriōnis.
 10. Neutrum illōrum
 librōrum, quōs mīsistī,
 vīderam. 11. Istud
 cōnsilium, quod ab ex-
 plōrātōre nūntiātum est,
 est bonum. 12. Hanc
 terram, quam amāmus,
 dēfendēmus. 13. Hoc
 facere didicimus.
 14. Illud facere dēbēō.
 15. Nautās spē praedae
 indūcī dīcunt.



STATUE OF A ROMAN DRESSED IN THE TOGA

356. 1. Who will do this?
 2. This river is deep, that
 is broad. 3. We shall re-
 main in that village all win-
 ter. 4. I have not seen
 those cities. 5. Who is not
 desirous of liberty? 6. The
 memory of these things will
 be pleasant.² 7. The en-
 emy are attacking these towns;
 those they have captured. 8. The
 soldiers of that legion fought
 bravely. 9. We have often
 written letters to that man
 concerning these things.

¹ See 529, b.² Iūcunda.

THE BELGAE

357. Hōrum ¹ omnium fortissimī ² sunt Belgae, proptereā ³ quod ā cultū prōvinciae Rōmānae longē absunt, et mercātōrēs vīnum nōn important; proximīque ⁴ sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum bellum gerunt.

LESSON XLV

THE PERFECT INFINITIVE. THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

358. **The Perfect Infinitive.** The perfect infinitive is formed in the active voice by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem; in the passive by combining the perfect participle and **esse**.

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
amāvisse, <i>to have loved</i>	amātus esse, <i>to have been loved</i>
monuisse, <i>to have warned</i>	monitus esse, <i>to have been warned</i>
rēxisse, <i>to have ruled</i>	rēctus esse, <i>to have been ruled</i>
audivisse, <i>to have heard</i>	audītus esse, <i>to have been heard</i>
	fuisse, <i>to have been</i>

359. **Meaning of the Perfect Infinitive.** The perfect infinitive denotes time *before* that of the main verb. It is to be translated by the perfect or the pluperfect indicative:

1. **Dīcit mīlitēs vīcisse**, *he says (that) the soldiers conquered, or have conquered.*
2. **Dixit mīlitēs vīcisse**, *he said (that) the soldiers conquered, or had conquered.*
3. **Dīcit mīlitēs victōs esse**, *he says (that) the soldiers were conquered, or have been conquered.*

¹ The three divisions of the Gauls.

² *The bravest.*

³ **Proptereā quod**; *for the reason that.*

⁴ See 229 a.

4. **Dixit militēs victōs esse**, *he said (that) the soldiers were conquered or had been conquered.*

a. The participle in the perfect passive agrees with the subject accusative in gender, number, and case.

360.

VOCABULARY

bonitās, bonitātis , F. (bonus), <i>goodness, excellence</i>	angustus, -a, -um , <i>narrow</i>
causa, -ae , F., <i>cause, reason</i>	ob , prep., w. acc., <i>on account of</i>
cibus, -ī , M., <i>food</i>	convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (con + vocō), <i>call together</i>
inopia, -ae , F., <i>lack, scarcity</i>	fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum , <i>flee</i>
timor, timōris , M. (timeō), <i>fear</i>	

361.

THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

Spē victōriæ fortiter pugnāvērunt, *because of the hope of victory they fought bravely.*

The ablative here answers the question *Why? For what reason?* and is called an ablative of *cause* or *reason*. The idea of cause is shown in English by *because of, on account of, from*.

362. RULE. *The ablative without a preposition is used to express cause or reason.*

a. Cause may also be expressed by **dē** or **ex** with the ablative and by **ob** or **propter** with the accusative: **multis dē causis**, *for (from) many reasons*; **quā ex rē**, *because of (from) this fact*; **ob hās causās**, *for these reasons*; **propter tempus anni**, *on account of the time of the year*.

EXERCISES

363. 1. **Lēgātum fuisse fortem sciō.** 2. **Lēgātōs fuisse fortēs scivī.** 3. **Rēgem nautās laudāvisse dicit.** 4. **Rēx principēs convocāverat.** 5. **Rēgem principēs convocāvisse dixit.** 6. **Quis nūntiābit Rōmānōs castra mōvisse?** 7. **Helvētiōs finēs angustōs habuisse discimus.** 8. **Nostra cōnsilia**

hostibus nūntiāta esse dicit. 9. Oppidum mūnitum esse nūntiāmus. 10. Epistulās scrīptās esse putāvit. 11. Putāsne pācem cōfirmātam esse? 12. Incolās monitōs esse audīvērunt. 13. Multīs dē causīs pontem in¹ flūmine Rhēnō fēcit. 14. Incolae inopiā cibī erant miserī. 15. Hostēs inopiā nāvium magnō in periculō fuērunt. 16. Puerum amīcitiā monēbō. 17. Agricolaē propter bōnitātem agrōrum in illā terrā manēbunt. 18. Ob hanc causam oppidum nōn expugnātum erat. 19. Timōre hostium oppidānī fūgērunt. 20. Explōrātor nūntiat oppidānōs fūgisse.

364. 1. He says the boys have come. 2. He said the boys had come. 3. The girls know (that) the letter was written. 4. I heard (that) the citizens had been called together. 5. The captives will flee, because there are few soldiers in the camp. 6. They said the captives were fleeing because-of a desire for (of) liberty. 7. The general is said to have been a large man. 8. Between the mountains there is a narrow road. 9. Does the leader fear the lack of food? 10. Whose work did you praise?

LESSON XLVI

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN IS

365. The demonstrative *is*, *this*, *that*; pl. *these*, *those*, *is* declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī (iī)</i> ²	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i> ²	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i> ²	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>

¹ *Over.*

² *Iī* and *iīs* are pronounced as monosyllables, *ī* and *īs*.

366. **The Use of *Is*.** Like **hic** and **ille** (350), **is** may be used as a demonstrative pronoun or adjective, or as a personal pronoun.

a. As a demonstrative **is** is less definite than **hic** or **ille** and may denote any person or thing mentioned: **is liber**, *this book* or *that book* (of which I am speaking); **hic liber**, *this book* (here); **ille liber**, *that book* (there).

b. **Is** is often used as the antecedent or in agreement with the antecedent of a relative pronoun:

1. **Eī, quī castra dēfendunt**, *those who are defending the camp*.

2. **Ea legiō, quae in castrīs est**, *that legion which is in the camp*.

367. ***Is* as a Personal Pronoun.** There is no special word in Latin for the pronouns of the third person, *he, she, it, they*. Of the four demonstratives, **hic, ille, iste, is**, which may be used as personal pronouns, **is** is the most common.

SINGULAR

Nom. **is, he; ea, she; id, it**

Gen. **ēius, his, her, its; of him, of her, of it**

Dat. **eī, to (or for) him; to (or for) her; to (or for) it**

Acc. **eum, him; eam, her; id, it**

Abl. **eō, from, etc., him; eā, from, etc., her; eō, from, etc., it**

PLURAL

Nom. **eī (iī), eae, ea, they**

Gen. **eōrum, eārum, eōrum, their, of them**

Dat. **eīs (iīs), to (or for) them**

Acc. **eōs, eās, ea, them**

Abl. **eīs (iīs), from, etc., them**

368. **Ēius and Suus Compared.** When *his, her, its, their* refer to the subject of the verb, **suus** is used. When a person

or thing other than the subject is meant, *his, her, or its* is expressed by **ēius**; *their* is expressed by **eōrum** or **eārum**.

1. **Cōsul filium suum laudāvit**, *the consul praised his (own) son.*
2. **Cōsul filium ēius laudāvit**, *the consul praised his (another man's) son.*
3. **Ēius filiī in oppidō sunt**, *his sons are in town.*
4. **Puerī amīcōs suōs vīdērunt**, *the boys saw their (own) friends.*
5. **Amīcōs eōrum vīdimus**, *we saw their friends.*

369.

VOCABULARY

initium, -ī, N., *beginning*

is, ea, id, *this, that, he, she, it*

vērus, -a, -um, *true*

memoriā teneō, (*hold in memory*), *remember*

obtimeō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -ten-

tum (ob + teneō), *hold, occupy*

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī,

-suāsum, *persuade*

a. In the phrase **memoriā teneō**, the noun remains unchanged; the verb is conjugated regularly.

b. **Persuādeō** means "I give a persuasive reason to" and so takes an indirect instead of a direct object, requiring the dative case instead of the accusative: **Virō persuādet**, *he persuades the man.*

c. Decline is **lacus, ea legiō, id flūmen.**

Memorize:

Leve fit quod bene fertur onus.

The burden which is well borne becomes light.

Ante victōriam nē canās triumphum.

Do not sing your triumph before your victory.

EXERCISES

370. 1. **Eās puellās laudat.** 2. **Eās laudat.** 3. **Eōs puerōs vocābit.** 4. **Fōs vocābit.** 5. **Frātrem tuum vīdī,**

et eī librōs dedī. 6. Frātrī eīus persuāsī. 7. Frātrī suō persuādēbit. 8. Puellae in eā urbe habitant; domus eārum est pulchra. 9. Liberī tuī venient; quis cum eīs veniet? 10. Incolae sunt miserī; cibum eīs dare dēbēmus. 11. Is fuit prīnceps cīvitatīs. 12. Helvētiū ad eum lēgātōs mīsērunt. 13. Caesar eās rēs, quās lēgātī dixerunt, memoriā tenēbat. 14. Ob eam rem nūntium mīsī. 15. Eā dē causā pācem cum finitimīs suīs facient. 16. Multōs eōrum, quī vulnerātī erant, vīdimus. 17. Pater eīus cōsul creātus esse dīcitur. 18. Sciō eōs fuisse amīcōs multōs annōs. 19. Sciō ea esse vēra. 20. Celtae eam partem Galliae obtinent. 21. Omnia, quae discimus, memoriā nōn tenēmus.

371. 1. His daughter was at home. 2. Their country is famous. 3. Brave men defend their country. 4. Do you not praise them? 5. Did you persuade your neighbor? 6. Who remembers the man's name? 7. Three cohorts of that legion were in Gaul. 8. Those boys, whom you see, are the merchant's sons. 9. Some fled into the forest, others across the river.

THE BOUNDARIES OF GAUL

372. Ea pars Galliae, quam Celtae obtinent, initium¹ capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit² flūmen Rhēnum.

Belgae ab finibus Celtārum ad inferiōrem³ partem flūminis Rhēnī pertinent.

Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad⁴ Hispāniam, pertinet.

Answer in Latin: 1. Quī Galliam incolēbant? 2. Quī erant fortissimī Gallōrum? 3. Cūr illī erant fortissimī? 4. Quae flūmina sunt in Galliā? 5. Ubi erat Aquītānia?

¹ *Initium capit ā* (takes a beginning from), *begins at.*

² *Borders on.*

³ *Lower.*

⁴ *Near.*

LESSON XLVII

THE FUTURE INFINITIVE. REVIEW OF THE INFINITIVE
THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

373. **Future Active Participle.** The future active participle is formed by adding **-ūrus** to the supine stem¹ and is declined like **bonus**: **amātūrus**, *about to love*; **monitūrus**, *about to warn*; **rēctūrus**, *about to rule*; **audītūrus**, *about to hear*. The future participle of **sum** is **futūrus**, *about to be*.

374. **The Future Infinitive.** The future infinitive active is the future participle with **esse**; the future infinitive passive is the supine with **īri**.²

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
amātūrus esse , <i>to be about to love</i> ³	amātum īri , <i>to be about to be loved</i>
monitūrus esse , <i>to be about to warn</i>	monitum īri , <i>to be about to be warned</i>
rēctūrus esse , <i>to be about to rule</i>	rēctum īri , <i>to be about to be ruled</i>
audītūrus esse , <i>to be about to hear</i>	audītum īri , <i>to be about to be heard</i>
futūrus esse , <i>to be about to be</i>	

375. **Meaning of the Future Infinitive.** The future infinitive denotes time *after* the main verb on which it depends. It is to be translated by *will* or *shall*, *would* or *should*.³

- i. **Dicit militēs victūrōs esse**, *he says (that) the soldiers will conquer.*

¹ The supine stem is found by dropping **-um** of the supine: **amāt-**, **monit-**, **rēct-**, **audīt-**.

² **īri** is the present passive infinitive of **eō**, *go*.

³ The phrase "to be about to" is used only to give the literal meaning of the infinitive form. See 375.

2. **Dixit militēs victūrōs esse**, *he said (that) the soldiers would conquer.*
3. **Dicit militēs victum irī**, *he says (that) the soldiers will be conquered.*
4. **Dixit militēs victum irī**, *he said (that) the soldiers would be conquered.*

a. The participle in the future active infinitive agrees with the subject accusative.

376. TABLE OF INFINITIVE ENDINGS

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Present</i>	-re	-rī (-ī)
<i>Perfect</i>	-isse	-us esse ¹
<i>Future</i>	-ūrus esse ¹	-um irī

a. Write the infinitives of **dō**, **vocō**, **habeō**, **videō**, **mittō**, **capiō**, **sciō**, **veniō**.

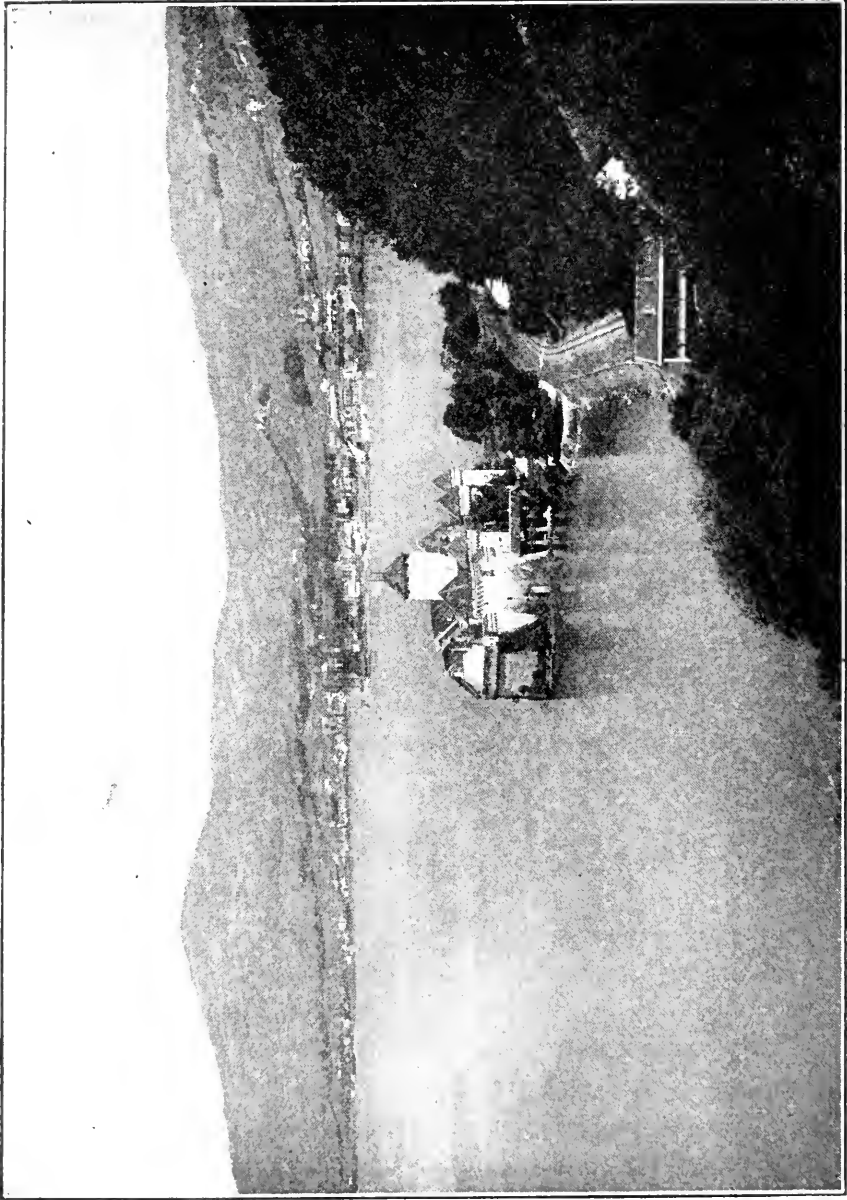
377. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION (OR RESPECT)

1. **Puer virtūte frātre superat**, *the boy excels his brother in courage.*
2. **Rōmānī et hostēs numerō parēs erant**, *the Romans and the enemy were equal in number.*

In the illustrations the ablatives answer the questions: In what respect does the boy excel? In what respect were the Romans equal? They are called *ablatives of specification*.

378. RULE. *The ablative without a preposition is used to show in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective applies.*

¹ **Esse** is often omitted in the perfect passive and future active infinitives.



LAKE GENEVA
The Ancient Lacus Lemannus

379.

VOCABULARY

auctōritās, -tātis, F., <i>influence, authority</i>	reliquus, -a, -um, <i>remaining, rest of</i> ; M. pl., as noun, <i>the rest</i>
potestās, -tātis, F., <i>power</i>	spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>hope</i>
lĕx, lĕgis, F., <i>law</i>	incendō, incendere, incendi, incensum, <i>set fire to, burn</i> ,
magnitūdō, -tūdinis, F. (<i>magnus</i>), <i>greatness, size</i>	—, —, coepī, —, <i>have begun, began</i>
undique, adv., <i>from all sides, on all sides</i>	

a. The defective verb *coepī* is used only in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses.

EXERCISES

380. 1. Helvētīi oppida incendent. 2. Dīcit Helvētīōs oppida incēnsūrōs esse. 3. Explōrātor dīxit Helvētīōs iter trāns prōvinciam factūrōs esse. 4. Sorōrēs tuās ventūrās esse spērō. 5. Nautās ad portum perventūrōs esse spērāmus. 6. Rēgīnam cōpiās missūram esse nūntiant. 7. Nūntiātūr cōpiās ā rēgīnā missum īrī. 8. Pīla iacere coepērunt. 9. Urbs undique dēfendī dīcitur. 10. Via esse longa dīcitur. 11. Ubi imperātor haec didīcit, sīgnum darī iussit. 12. Caesar scrībīt mercātōrēs ad Belgās nōn saepe vēnisse. 13. Gallī et Germānī erant linguā lēgibusque dissimilēs. 14. Hic prīnceps reliquōs potestāte superāvit. 15. Putō eum auctōritāte nōn superātum esse.

381. 1. He says the boys will come. 2. He said the boys would remain. 3. They are hoping that their friends will be at home. 4. We had begun to call the men together from-all-sides. 5. Our plan is to make friendship. 6. Did you know that your sons would see the camp? 7. In the village there was a sailor, Cornelius by name. 8. The houses are unlike in size. 9. I know that the law was good. 10. I knew that the bridge had been burned.

THE HELVĒTIĪ

382. Helvĕtiĭ sunt cĭvĭtās potĕns Galliae. Reliquōs Gallōs virtūte superant, quod saepe proeliis cum Germānīs contendunt. Undique Helvĕtiĭ continentur: ūnā ex parte¹ flūmine Rhĕnō, quī agrum Helvĕtium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā, quī est inter Sĕquanōs et Helvĕtiōs; tertiā (ex parte) lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam Rōmānam ab Helvĕtiis dīvidit.

LESSON XLVIII

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

383. **Personal Pronouns.** The personal pronouns are **ego**, *I*, of the first person, and **tū**, *thou, you*, of the second. For the third person the demonstratives, as already learned, and the reflexive **suī** (384) are used.

FIRST PERSON

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	ego , <i>I</i>	nōs , <i>we</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	meī , <i>of me</i>	nostrum (nostrī), <i>of us</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi , <i>to (for) me</i>	nōbīs , <i>to (for) us</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	mē , <i>me</i>	nōs , <i>us</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	mē , <i>from, etc., me</i>	nōbīs , <i>from, etc., us</i>

SECOND PERSON

<i>Nom.</i>	tū , <i>you</i>	vōs , <i>you</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	tuī , <i>of you</i>	vestrum , (vestrī), <i>of you</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	tibi , <i>to (for) you</i>	vōbīs , <i>to (for) you</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	tē , <i>you</i>	vōs , <i>you</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	tē , <i>from, etc., you</i>	vōbīs , <i>from, etc., you</i>

a. The nominative forms **ego**, **tū**, **nōs**, **vōs** are used only for emphasis or contrast: **Tū es miles, ego sum nauta.**

¹ Unā ex parte = ex ūnā parte; ex here means *on* (p. 40, foot note).

384.

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

THIRD PERSON

SINGULAR AND PLURAL

Gen. suī, of himself, herself, itself, themselves

Dat. sibi, to (for) himself, herself, itself, themselves

Acc. sē (sēsē), himself, herself, itself, themselves

Abl. sē (sēsē), from, etc., himself, herself, itself, themselves

385. The personal pronoun **suī** is called *reflexive*, because it refers back to the subject of the main verb for its meaning:

1. **Puer sē dēfendit**, *the boy defends himself.*
2. **Puella sē dēfendit**, *the girl defends herself.*
3. **Liberī sē dēfendunt**, *the children defend themselves.*

a. For the first and second persons **ego** and **tū** are used in the predicate as reflexives: **Mē dēfendō**, *I defend myself*; **tē dēfendis**, *you defend yourself*; **nōs dēfendimus**, *we defend ourselves*; **vōs dēfenditis**, *you defend yourselves.*

386. **Comparison of Suī and Is.** When *he, she, it, or they* refers to the subject of the main verb, Latin uses a form of **suī**; when these pronouns refer to a person or thing other than the subject, a form of **is** (or of another demonstrative) is required:

1. **Puer dīcit sē audīre**, *the boy says he (himself) hears.*
2. **Puer dīcit eum audīre**, *the boy says he (another person) hears.*

387.

VOCABULARY

coniūratiō, -ōnis, F., *conspiracy* (a swearing together)

fortitūdō, -tūdinis, F., (**fortis**), *bravery*

fuga, -ae, F., (**fugiō**), *flight*

nōbilitās, -tātis, F. (**nōbilis**), *nobility; the nobles* (collectively)

nōbilis, -e, *noble, distinguished*

numquam, adv., *never*

ego, I	praecēdō, (prae + cēdō, go before), <i>surpass</i>
tū, you	recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum, (re + capiō), <i>take back</i> ; sē recipere, (betake one's self), <i>retreat, withdraw</i>
suī, of himself, herself, itself	
cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, go; give way, yield	
discēdō, (dis + cēdō), go away, depart	

EXERCISES

388. 1. Ego tē laudō. 2. Quis nōs laudāvit? 3. Mārcus sē nōn laudābit. 4. Persuāsītne tibi?¹ 5. Nōnne vōbīs persuāsērunt? 6. Līberī amīcōrum meōrum vōbīscum² venient. 7. Mihi dedit epistulam, quam tū scrīpsistī. 8. Hostēs sē recipiunt; fugā sē recipiunt. 9. Eō diē fugā sē in proxima oppīda recēpērunt. 10. Helvētīī cōpiam frūmentī sēcūm² portāverant. 11. Dīcunt sē terram parvam habēre. 12. Fīlia lēgātī dīcit sē Lūcium vocātūram esse. 13. Sciō eam Lūcium vocāvisse. 14. Hī puerī sunt nōbilēs; sunt filiī prīncipis. 15. Prīnceps conīūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcīt. 16. Hī militēs sunt fortēs; illōs fortitūdine praecēdunt. 17. Fortiter vōs patriam vestram dēfendistis. 18. Caesar legiōnem ab eā parte vīcī discēdere iussit. 19. Ubi dux Helvētīōrum haec dīxit, discessit.

389. 1. I have done this; you ought to do that. 2. This work is pleasing³ to me; is it not pleasing to you? 3. These men are called Gauls by us, Celts by themselves. 4. Lucius hopes you will surpass all the rest. 5. (Because of) these things⁴ we will make peace with you.² 6. The flight of the horsemen has been reported. 7. These brave soldiers have never learned to retreat. 8. Our leader has persuaded us.

¹ See 369 b.

² Cum is used as an enclitic (18) with the ablative of personal and reflexive pronouns, as well as with that of the relative.

³ Grātus, -a, -um.

⁴ See 362.

LESSON XLIX

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *ĪDEM*. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN *IPSE*

390. *Īdem*. The demonstrative pronoun or adjective *īdem*, *the same*, is the demonstrative *is* + the suffix *dem*. Distinguish the masculine *īdem* from the neuter *idem* and note the accent of other forms. In the declension *m* is changed to *n* before *d*: *eundem*, not *eumdem*.

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ī'dem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>	<i>i'dem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ēius'dem</i>	<i>ēius'dem</i>	<i>ēius'dem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eī'dem</i>	<i>eī'dem</i>	<i>eī'dem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eun'dem</i>	<i>ean'dem</i>	<i>i'dem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eō'dem</i>	<i>eā'dem</i>	<i>eō'dem</i>
	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>eī'dem (īdem)</i>	<i>eaē'dem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eōrun'dem</i>	<i>eārun'dem</i>	<i>eōrun'dem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīs'dem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīs'dem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīs'dem (īsdem)</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eōs'dem</i>	<i>eās'dem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eīs'dem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīs'dem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīs'dem (īsdem)</i>

391. *Ipse*. The pronoun *ipse*, *-self*, is called *intensive*, because it emphasizes a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood: *Puer ipse*, *the boy himself*; *Ipse vidit*, *he himself saw*. It may be used of the first or second person as well as of the third: *Ipse* (or *ego ipse*) *vīdī*, *I myself saw*; *Ipse* (or *tū ipse*) *vīdistī*, *you yourself saw*. Learn the declension of *ipse* as given on page 277.

392. *Ipse* and *Suī* Distinguished. When the English *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves* agree with a noun or pro-

noun, **ipse** is used in Latin; when these English words are used alone, referring to the subject, **suī** is required in Latin: *He himself defended the bridge*, **ipse pontem dēfendit**; but *He defended himself*, **sē dēfendit**.

393. The pronouns thus far learned are of six classes:

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. Relative, quī | 4. Personal, ego, tū |
| 2. Interrogative, quis | 5. Reflexive, suī |
| 3. Demonstrative, hic, ille, iste, is, idem | 6. Intensive, ipse |

a. Notice the connection of the possessive adjectives **meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester** with **ego, tū, suī, nōs, vōs**.

394.

VOCABULARY

ascēnsus, -ūs, M., ascent, climbing	prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, (prō + habeō, hold forward), keep away, keep (from); prohibit
facilis, -e, easy	statuō, statuere, statui, statūtum, set up, station; resolve
perfacilis, -e, very easy	cōstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, (con + statuō, put together), station; determine, decide
īdem, eadem, idem, the same	
aut, or; aut . . . aut, conj., either . . . or	
prō, prep., w. abl., in front of, before; in proportion to	
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, himself, etc.	
dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, point out, explain	

EXERCISES

395. 1. Cōsul ipse in eō proeliō vulnerātus est. 2. Eāsdem rēs memoriā teneō. 3. Domum rēgis ipsius vidēbimus. 4. Nāvēs in eundem portum pervēnērunt. 5. Mercātōrī ipsī persuāsīmus. 6. Nōn omnēs sumus cupidī eārundem rērū.¹ 7. Haec epistula ā rēginā ipsā scrīpta esse dicitur. 8. Cōsilia nostra ab eīsdem nūntiāntur. 9. Nōs ipsī haec didicimus. 10. Iter per prōvinciam erat facile. 11. Ascēn-

¹ See 353.

sus montis est facilis. 12. Perfacile erit expugnāre illud oppidum. 13. Explōrātor dēmōnstrat perfacile futūrum esse expugnāre oppidum. 14. Caesar nāvēs exspectāre statuit. 15. Ūna legiō prō castrīs cōstitutā est. 16. Post castra erat flūmen lātum. 17. Helvētiī convenīre ad rīpam Rhēnī cōstituērunt. 18. Helvētiī aut suīs finibus¹ Germānōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. 19. Semper idem.²

396. 1. Marcus and Quintus were living in the same city. 2. Cornelia herself is ready to aid her mother. 3. These girls are daughters of the same man. 4. Have you seen the sailors themselves? 5. We shall come (by) an easy road. 6. You yourselves have often conquered. 7. The lieutenant explained the same things to me. 8. Some³ were fighting on the bank, others³ in the river itself.

LESSON L

REVIEW OF LESSONS XLII-XLIX

397.

VOCABULARY

ascēsus	magnitūdō	trēs	undique	cēdō
auctōritās	memoria	vērus	ob	coepī
bonitās	nōbilitās	ego	prō	cōstituō
causa	potestās	hic	aut	crēdō
cibus	spēs	īdem	convocō	dīcō
coniūrātiō	tīmor	ille	dēmōnstrō	discēdō
cultus	angustus	ipse	expugnō	discō
cupiditās	cupidus	is	oppugnō	fugiō
fortitūdō	dissimilis	iste	putō	incendō
fuga	facilis	quī	spērō	indūcō
initium	nōbilis	suī	iubeō	praecēdō
inopia	perfacilis	tū	obtimeō	recipiō
lēx	reliquus	diū	persuādeō	statuō
lingua	tertius	numquam	prohibeō	sciō

¹ See 221.² A motto.³ See 317.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

398. 1. What are the chief uses of the Latin infinitive?
 2. What is the difference in meaning of the three tenses of the infinitive, depending on a verb of *saying*? 3. Give all



A SCENE ALONG THE RHINE

- the infinitives of **mittō**; of **laudō**. 4. What is a demonstrative pronoun? An intensive pronoun? A reflexive pronoun? 5. What other classes of pronouns have been given? 6. Decline **quī**. 7. Decline **quis**. 8. What is the rule for the agreement of the relative pronoun? 9. What is a complex sentence? 10. Decline **hic**. 11. Decline **ille**. 12. Decline **is**. 13. What are the chief uses of **is**? 14. Distinguish the meaning of **ēius**, *his*, and **suus**, *his*. 15. What words may be used to say *himself*, and what is the difference in meaning? 16. Decline **īdem**. 17. Decline **ego** and **tū**. 18. Give an illustration of an accusative used as subject; of a genitive

used as object; of an ablative of cause; of an ablative of specification.

Memorize:

Tū, quamcumque Deus tibi fortūnāverit hōram,
Grātā sūme manū; nec dulcia differ in annum.

HORACE.

*Enjoy thankfully any happy hour Heaven may send you,
nor think that your delights will keep till another year.*

ORGETORIX

399. Apud Helvētiōs fuit prīnceps, Orgetorīx nōmine, quī reliquōs prīncipēs potestāte et auctōritāte superābat. Cupidus rēgnī erat, et coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit. Dīxit Helvētiōs virtūte omnēs praecēdere, et tōtīus Galliae perfacile¹ potitūrōs² esse. Facilius³ eīs⁴ persuāsit, quod finēs suōs esse angustōs prō⁵ multitudīne hominum et prō⁵ glōriā⁶ bellī atque fortitudinis putābant. Itaque Helvētiū dē finibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīre⁷ cōstituērunt.

LESSON LI

DEPONENT VERBS. THE ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN DEPONENTS

400. **Deponent Verbs.** Some verbs are passive in form, but active in meaning. They are called *deponent*, because they have "laid aside" (*dēpōnō*, *lay aside*) their active form. Deponent verbs are conjugated like the passive of other verbs, except that the future infinitive is active in form as well as in meaning. The principal parts of the model deponents are:

¹ Adverb, *very easily*.

² *Would-get-control* (of) with gen.

³ *More easily*.

⁴ *I.e. (id est), Helvetiūs.*

⁵ *Considering*.

⁶ *Their renown* (for).

⁷ *To go out, emigrate.*

CONJUGATION	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
I	cōnor	cōnārī	cōnātus sum, <i>try, attempt</i>
II	vereor	verērī	veritus sum, <i>fear</i>
III	ūtor	ūtī	ūsus sum, <i>use</i>
	patior	patī	passus sum, <i>suffer, allow</i>
IV	potior	potīrī	potītus sum, <i>get possession of</i>

401. INDICATIVE SYNOPSIS

<i>Present</i>	cōnor, <i>I try, am trying, do try</i>
<i>Imperfect</i>	cōnābar, <i>I was trying, tried, did try</i>
<i>Future</i>	cōnābor, <i>I shall try</i>
<i>Perfect</i>	cōnātus sum, <i>I have tried, tried, did try</i>
<i>Pluperfect</i>	cōnātus eram, <i>I had tried</i>
<i>Future Perfect</i>	cōnātus erō, <i>I shall have tried</i>

INFINITIVES

<i>Present</i>	cōnārī, <i>to try</i>
<i>Perfect</i>	cōnātus esse, <i>to have tried</i>
<i>Future</i>	cōnātūrus esse, <i>to be about to try</i>

a. Learn the indicative and the infinitive tenses of the other model deponent verbs, as given on page 288.

b. Conjugate the present and future indicative of the model verbs.

402. THE ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS

1. Magnīs nāvibus ūtuntur, *they are using large ships.*
2. Oppidō potiuntur, *they are getting-possession-of the town.*

The words for *ships* and *town* are in the ablative case, though we should expect them to be in the accusative. The ablative so used is really one of *means*, for the primary idea in the first sentence is "they help themselves *with ships*;" in the second, "they make themselves powerful *by the town*."

403. RULE. *The ablative is used like a direct object with the deponent verbs ūtor, fruor (enjoy), fungor (perform), potior, and vēscor (eat).*

a. Potior sometimes takes the genitive.

404.

VOCABULARY

Sēquanus, -ī, M., a *Sequanian*; pl., the *Sequani*, the *Sequanians*

hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, urge, exhort, encourage

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, promise

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, set out, depart, go sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow¹

EXERCISES

405. 1. Hoc facere² cōnābimur. 2. Imperātor suōs mīlitēs hortātus est. 3. Imperātor dīcit sē mīlitēs hortātūrum esse. 4. Nautae altum mare nōn verentur. 5. Nautae dīcunt sē altum mare nōn verērī. 6. Pollicētur sē ventūrum esse. 7. Pollicitī erant sē hoc factūrōs.³ 8. Aliīs cōnsiliīs ūsī sumus; nōnne hōc cōnsiliō ūtī dēbēmus? 9. Quae legiō imperātōrem sequētur? 10. Caesar decimam legiōnem secūtūram esse dīxit. 11. Lēgātum cum ūnā legiōne sequī iussit. 12. Illae cīvitātēs erant fortēs, quod vīnum ad sē importārī nōn patiēbantur. 13. Sēquanī erant proximī Helvētiīs.⁴ 14. Sēquanī Helvētiōs iter per finēs suōs facere passī sunt. 15. Tertiā vigiliā ē castrīs proficīscentur. 16. Explōrātor eōs profectōs esse nūntiat. 17. Amīcī nostrī hīs agrīs potītī sunt. 18. Sciō amīcōs nostrōs hīs agrīs potītōs esse.

406. 1. Do you fear the dangers of the journey? 2. They have not tried to persuade us.⁵ 3. We ought to encourage these boys.

¹ The present tense is sequor, sequeris, sequitur, sequimur, sequimini, sequuntur.

² A complementary infinitive (110).

⁴ See 246.

³ See page 123, footnote 1.

⁵ What case?

4. The men promised to defend (that they would defend)¹ the city. 5. The citizens will use many things that the merchants have brought-in.² 6. The ambassadors are said to have gone (set out) from³ Rome at⁴ the fourth hour. 7. These men will follow the others into the province. 8. They will allow us to do this. 9. The Romans got possession of the bridge which was near⁵ Geneva.

LESSON LII

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

407. There are three moods in Latin: the indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative. In the subjunctive there are four tenses: the present, the imperfect, the perfect, and the pluperfect.

408. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

<i>I may love</i> ⁶	<i>I may warn</i> ⁶	<i>I may rule</i> ⁶
amem	moneam	regam
amēs	moneās	regās
amet	moneat	regat
amēmus	moneāmus	regāmus
amētis	moneātis	regātis
ament	moneant	regant

a. Conjugate **capiam**, *I may take*, and **audiam**, *I may hear*, like **regam**.

b. Conjugate also the present subjunctive of **dō**, **videō**, **iaciō**, **dūcō**.

409. **Tense Sign.** The tense sign of the present subjunctive may be regarded as **-ē-** (**-e-**) in the first conjugation, **-ā-** (**-a-**) in the other conjugations. In the first and third

¹ See 405, sentence 7.

³ See 281.

⁴ See 292.

² **Importō.**

⁵ **Ad.**

⁶ This is only one of the subjunctive meanings, as explained in 410.

conjugations final **-ā-** and **-e-** of the stem (**amā-**, **rege-**) are dropped before the tense sign (**am-em**, **reg-am**); in the second and fourth conjugations final **-ē-** and **-ī-** of the stem are shortened (**mone-am**, **audi-am**). **Capiō** forms its present subjunctive like **audiō**.

410. Meaning and Use of the Subjunctive. The subjunctive in Latin has many uses, some of which are expressed in English by the subjunctive, but most by the indicative or the potential. The Latin present subjunctive is rendered not only by *may*, as in the models (408), but by *should*, *would*, or by the indicative present or future, according to the nature of the clause in which the subjunctive stands.

411. Clauses Expressing Purpose. When we say, "He comes to see the city," the infinitive expresses the *purpose* of his coming. In Latin prose the infinitive is *not* used to express purpose, but a subjunctive clause with the conjunction **ut**, *that, in order that*: **Venit ut videat**, *he comes to see (or that he may see)*.

a. The *present* subjunctive is used when the main verb is present, present perfect, future, or future perfect: **Veniō (vēnī, veniam, vēnerō) ut videam**, *I come (have come, shall come, shall have come) to see (that I may see)*.

b. Instead of **ut**, the relative pronoun **quī** may be used as the connective, if there is a convenient antecedent: **Virōs mittit, quī videant**, *he is sending men to see (who shall see)*.

412.

VOCABULARY

iūmentum, -ī, N., *yoke-animal, beast of burden*

profectiō, -ōnis, F., *departure*

coēmō, coēmere, coēmī, co-ēmptum (co + emō), *buy up*

comparō (com + parō, 108), *prepare, get ready*

dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dē-lēctum, *choose, select*

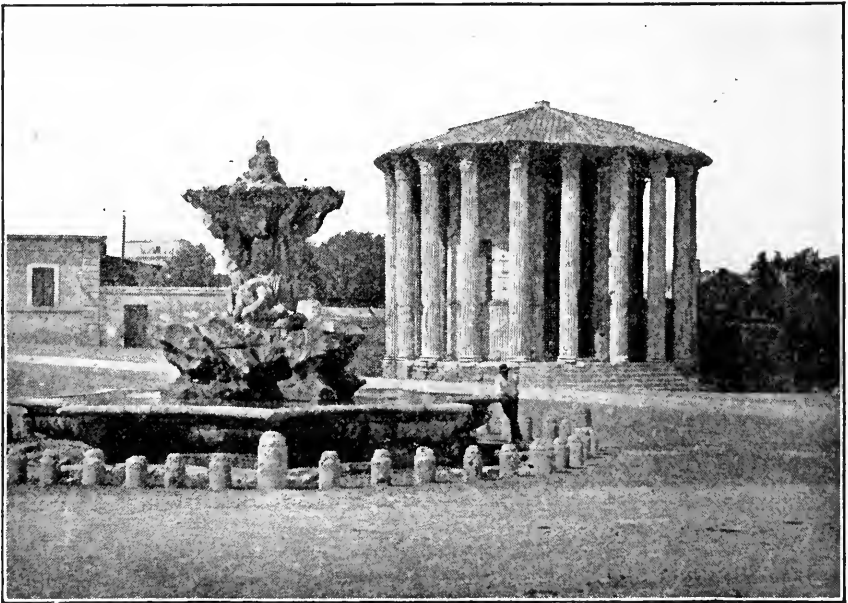
emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, *buy*

dē, prep., w. abl., *about, concerning, of*; see 218

ut, conj., *that, in order that*

EXERCISES

413. 1. Pugnant ut vincant. 2. Frūmentum importābō, ut cōpiam habeātis. 3. Magnā cum celeritāte nāvigāmus, ut ad portum perveniāmus. 4. Imperātor pontem facit, ut exercitum trādūcat. 5. Militēs castra mūniunt, ut sē dēfendant. 6. Haec¹ dīcimus, ut tē laudēmus. 7. Nūntiōs mittēmus, quī haec dīcant. 8. Dux trēs legiōnēs mittit, quae oppidum oppugnet. 9. Virī Rōmam vērunt,² ut novum



TEMPLE IN THE FORUM BOARIUM

templum videant. 10. Prīcipēs mittuntur, quī dīcant cīvitatē Caesarī obsidēs datūram esse. 11. Britannī magnās nāvēs comparant. 12. Cīvēs frūmentum ement. 13. Mercātōrēs omne frūmentum nōn coēmērunt. 14. Mār-cus dux dēligētur; cūr nōn dēlectus est Quīntus? 15. Ex-

¹ See 319.

² Present perfect, see 411 a.

plōrātōrēs locum castrīs¹ idōneum dēligunt. 16. Multa² dē profectiōne Helvētiōrum audiēmus.

414. 1. Galba sends his slave to buy food. 2. The men are assembling to hear the orator. 3. The boy will write a letter to persuade his brother.³ 4. We have sent ambassadors to make peace. 5. These are the friends of (dē) whom I have spoken. 6. He says that the farmers have carts and beasts of burden. 7. In what country did Orgetorix live? 8. They are coming to praise the victor. 9. He will come to advise the lieutenant. 10. He does not say this, in order that he may persuade you.

THE PLAN OF THE HELVETIANS

415. Helvētīi omnēs⁴ rēs ad⁵ profectiōnem comparāre cōstituunt, iūmentōrum et carrōrum magnum numerum coēmere, magnās sēmentēs frūmentī facere, ut in itinere cōpiam habeant, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiā cōfirmāre. Profectiōnem in⁶ tertium annum lēge cōfirmant et Orgetorīgem ducem⁷ dēligunt.

LESSON LIII

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE. NEGATIVE PURPOSE

416. TENSE ENDINGS OF THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

	CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV
<i>Active</i>	-em	-eam	-am, -iam	-iam
<i>Passive</i>	-er	-ear	-ar, -iar	-iar

¹ See 246.

² See 319.

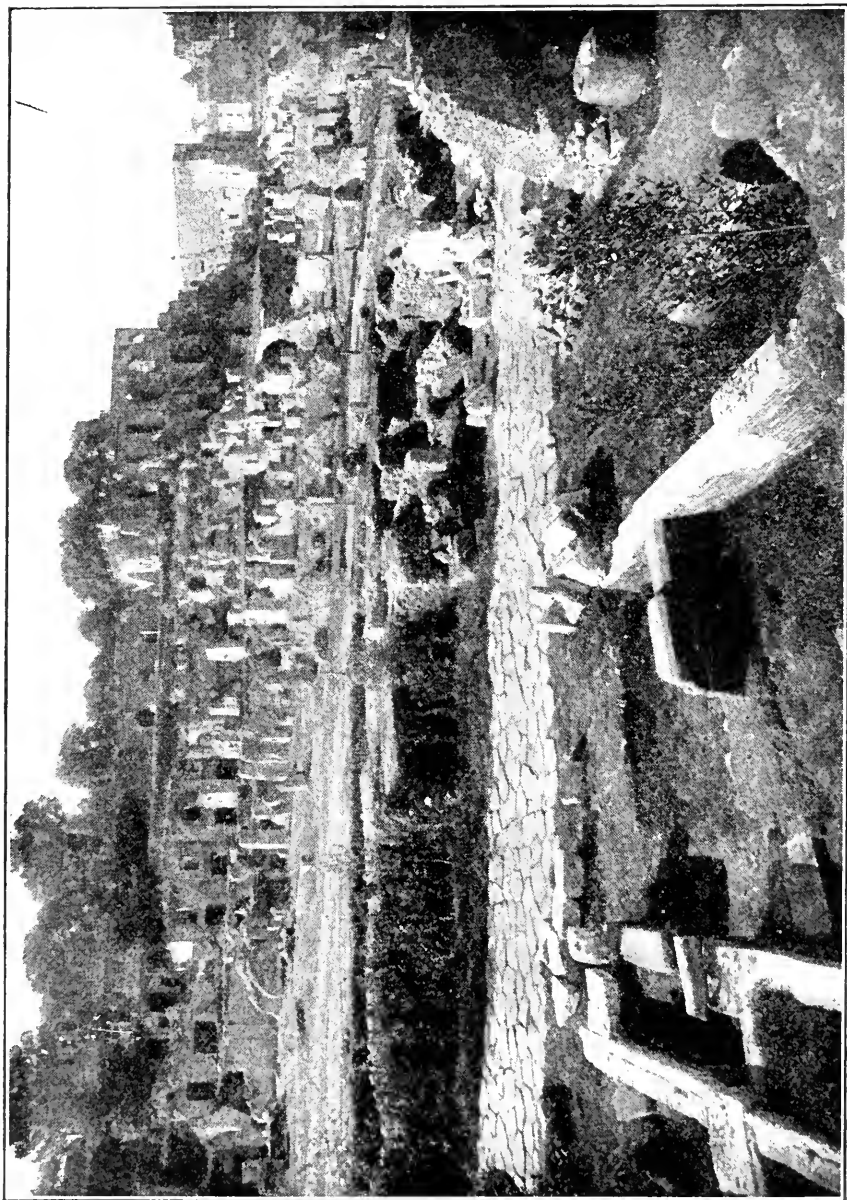
³ What case in Latin?

⁴ Accusative.

⁵ *For.*

⁶ *For.*

⁷ See 191.



KUINS OF PALACE OF THE CAESARS, PALATINE HILL, ROME
In foreground is the road called the Sacred Way

417. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

*I may be loved, etc.*¹ *I may be warned, etc.*¹

amer	monear
amēris	moneāris
amētur	moneātur
amēmur	moneāmur
amēmini	moneāmini
amentur	moneantur

a. Conjugate also **regar**, *I may be ruled*; **capiar**, *I may be taken*; **audiar**, *I may be heard*; **cōner**, *I may try*; **verear**, *I may fear*; **ūtar**, *I may use*.

418. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SUM

sim, <i>I may be</i> ¹	sīmus, <i>we may be</i>
sīs, <i>you may be</i>	sītis, <i>you may be</i>
sit, (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>may be</i>	sint, (<i>they</i>) <i>may be</i>

419. **Negative Purpose.** In the sentence "They are fortifying the town, that it may not be captured," the dependent clause expresses purpose *negatively*. The connective for negative purpose in Latin is **nē**, *that . . . not, lest*: **Oppidum mūniunt, nē expugnētur.**

420. **RULE.** The Subjunctive in Clauses of Purpose. *The subjunctive is used with ut, nē, or a relative, in clauses expressing the purpose of an action.*

421. VOCABULARY

fidēs, fideī, F., <i>faith, pledge</i>	(co + agō, <i>drive together</i>),
nihil, N. (indecl.), <i>nothing</i>	<i>collect, compel</i>
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum,	loquor, loquī, locūtus sum,
(<i>drive</i>), <i>do, act</i>	<i>speak, talk</i>
cōgō, cōgere, cōēgī, cōāctum,	

¹ This is only one of the subjunctive meanings, as explained in 410.

EXERCISES

422. 1. Hostēs fugiunt, nē capiantur. 2. Militēs fortiter pugnānt, nē vincantur. 3. Liberōs dēfendēmus, nē in periculō sint. 4. Hoc facimus, nē ab eīs videāmur. 5. Pater filiās suās vocat, ut eās hortētur. 6. Cōsul ipse exercitum dūcet, ut urbe potiātur. 7. Prīnceps coniūrātiōnem facit, ut sit rēx Helvētiōrum. 8. Coniūrātiōnem facit, ut appellētur rēx. 9. Magistrātūs exercitum cōgent, nē hic vir sit rēx. 10. In Ītaliā, ut cum cōsule loquar, contendam.¹ 11. Herī multa ēgī; hodiē hoc agō; crās nihil agam. 12. Dicit sē nihil crās ācturum esse. 13. Sēquanī obsidēs rēgī Germānōrum dedērunt. 14. Rēx Sēquanōs obsidēs dare coēgit.² 15. Hī ducēs Galliae inter sē³ fidem dant.

423. 1. I shall send a slave to give you the book. 2. The soldiers are using good shields, that they may not be wounded. 3. My friend desires to speak⁴ with you. 4. I have sent him to speak⁵ with you. 5. The slaves are remaining in the forest, that they may not be seen. 6. Who will compel them to⁶ remain?

Memorize:

Quī nōn prōficit, dēficit.

He who does not advance falls behind.

Nīl dēspērāndum.

Never despair. Nothing should be despaired of.

LESSON LIV

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. PRIMARY AND SECONDARY TENSES

424. **Formation of the Imperfect Subjunctive.** The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the active infinitive. The tense sign, therefore, is **-re-**.

¹ The words of an independent clause may be separated, the dependent clause standing between them.

² *Compelled.*

³ *To one another* (between themselves).

⁴ See 109.

⁵ See 420.

⁶ See 343.

425. THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

FIRST CONJUGATION

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>I might love, etc.</i> ¹	<i>I might be loved, etc.</i> ¹
amā'rem	amā'rer
amā'rēs	amārē'ris
amā'ret	amārē'tur
amārē'mus	amārē'mur
amārē'tis	amārē'minī
amā'rent	amāren'tur

SECOND CONJUGATION

<i>I might warn, etc.</i> ²	<i>I might be warned, etc.</i> ¹
monē'rem	monē'rer
monē'rēs	monērē'ris
monē'ret	monērē'tur
monērē'mus	monērē'mur
monērē'tis	monērē'minī
monē'rent	monēren'tur

a. Conjugate **regerem, regerer; caperem, caperer; audirem, audirer**, as given on pages 282 and 285.

b. Form the imperfect subjunctive of **dō, videō, dūcō, veniō; cōnor, vereor, ūtor, patior, potior**.

426. IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SUM

essem, <i>I might be</i> ¹	essēmus, <i>we might be</i>
essēs, <i>you might be</i>	essētis, <i>you might be</i>
esset, <i>(he, etc.) might be</i>	essent, <i>(they) might be</i>

427. **Meaning of the Imperfect Subjunctive.** In most subordinate clauses the imperfect subjunctive is to be translated like the imperfect indicative, as will be explained later.

¹ See 427.

In purpose clauses, *might* or *should* is used to form the English equivalent, as in the following:

1. **Vēnērunt, ut vidērent**, *they came that they might see, or they came to see.*
2. **Virōs mīsīt, quī vidērent**, *he sent men who should see, or he sent men to see.*
3. **Vēnērunt, nē vidērentur**, *they came that they might not be seen.*

428. As was shown in 411 *a*, we say, "He comes (he has come, he will come, he will have come), that he may see," **venit (vēnit, veniet, vēnerit), ut videat**. So we say, "He was coming (he came, he had come), that he might see," **veniēbat (vēnit, vēnerat), ut vidēret**.

A *present* subjunctive, then, is used in a purpose clause when it depends on a main verb of present¹ or future action; an *imperfect* subjunctive is used when it depends on a main verb of past action.

429. **Primary and Secondary Tenses.** The tenses of present and future action are called *primary* tenses. They include the present, present perfect, future, and future perfect indicative, the present and perfect subjunctive.

The tenses of past action are called *secondary* tenses. They include the imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect indicative, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive.

430. **RULE. The Sequence² (or Harmony) of Tenses.** *In complex sentences primary tenses are used in clauses depending upon primary tenses, secondary tenses in clauses depending upon secondary tenses.*

a. This general rule will be more fully illustrated in following lessons.

431. **The Historical Present.** The present indicative is often used to state or describe a *past* event more vividly,

¹ Including the present perfect.

² From **sequor**.

and is then called the *historical present*: *Orgetorix dux deligitur, Orgetorix is (was) chosen leader.*

432.

VOCABULARY

iugum, -ī, N., *yoke*lēgātīō, -ōnis, F., *mission, embassy*equitātus, -ūs, M. (*eques*), *cavalry*prīncipātus, -ūs, M. (*prīnceps*), *leadership*Diviciācus, -ī, M., *Diviciacus* (div-i-shi-ā'kus)Dumnorix, Dumnorīgis, M., *Dumnorix*Haeduus, -ī, M., *a Haeduan; pl., Haeduans, the Haedui.*¹Haeduus, -a, -um, *Haeduan sub,*² *prep., w. acc., under, up to; w. abl., under, at the foot of*pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place, put, pitch (a camp)*suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptum, (*sub + capiō*), *undertake*

EXERCISES

433. 1. Puerum vocāvī, ut cum eō loquerer. 2. Puer vēnit, ut audiret. 3. Cūr Gallī oppidum incendērunt? 4. Oppidum incendērunt, nē ab hostibus expugnārētur. 5. Caesar equitātum mīserat, quī hostēs ā castrīs³ prohibēret. 6. Pontem faciēbat, ut trāns flūmen exercitum trādūceret. 7. Servī pugnāvērunt, ut essent liberī. 8. Īdem⁴ coniurātiōnem fēcit, ut esset rēx. 9. Militēs castra pōnunt. 10. Idōneum locum dēligunt, ut castra pōnant. 11. Helvētīū exercitum Rōmānum sub iugum⁵ mīserunt. 12. Sub monte erat vīcus parvus. 13. Quis erit lēgātus⁶ ad cīvitatēs?

¹ A Gallic tribe west of the Helvetii.

² *Sub*, like *in*, takes the accusative to denote *motion*, the ablative to denote *rest*.

³ See 221.

⁴ *The same man.*

⁵ The yoke, under which a conquered army was made to pass, was either an ox-yoke, or a spear resting across two other spears fixed upright in the ground.

⁶ *Ambassador.*



ROMANS PASSING UNDER YOKE OF HELVETIANS

Charles Gleyre

14. Orgetorix lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs proximās suscipiet.
 15. Haeduī erant proximī Helvētiīs. 16. Dīviciācus erat
 pīnceps Haeduōrum. 17. Pīncipātum cīvitātis suae obti-
 nēbat. 18. Dumnorix erat frāter Dīviciācī.

434. 1. He says they are pitching the camp. 2. He said they would pitch the camp. 3. He thinks they have pitched the camp. 4. He knew the camp had been pitched. 5. These legions had been sent to pitch the camp. 6. The sailor was using this trumpet,¹ that he might give the signal. 7. This is the trumpet that he used. 8. We fled that we might not be in danger.

¹ See 403.

LESSON LV

THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS. NOUN CLAUSES WITH
UT OR *NĒ*

435.

VOCABULARY

classis, classis, F., *fleet*
 imperium, impe'rī (96), N.,
command, control
 mātirimōnium, -ī (96), N.,
marriage
 tēlum, -ī, N., *missile, weapon*
 verbum, -ī, N., *word*
 anteā, adv., *before, formerly*
 item, adv., *likewise*
 imperō, -āre, -āvī, ātum,
command

indulgeō, indulgēre, indulsī,
 indultum, *favor, indulge*
 noceō, nocēre, nocuī, noci-
 tum, *harm, injure*
 pāreō, pārēre, pārūī, —,
obey, submit to
 studeō, studēre, studuī, —,
be eager for
 permittō, (per + mittō), *per-*
mit, allow
 resistō, resistere, restiti,
 —, *resist*

436. **The Dative with Special Verbs.** Such verbs as *command, persuade, resist* require a direct object in English, but an indirect object in Latin: **Militibus imperāvit**, *he commanded (gave orders to) the soldiers*; **suīs amicīs persuāsit**, *he persuaded (made something agreeable to) his friends*; **hostibus resistent**, *they will resist (stand against) the enemy*.

437. **RULE.** *The dative of the indirect object is used with verbs meaning favor, help, please, trust and their opposites; believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist; envy, threaten, pardon, spare.*

a. These verbs include **crēdō, imperō, noceō, pāreō, persuādeō, placeō (please), resistō, studeō**; but **iubeō** and **iuvō** govern the accusative.

438. **Noun Clauses with Ut or Nē.** Clauses introduced by **ut** or **nē** are often used as nouns, depending on principal

verbs meaning *advise, command, persuade, urge*, and the like. The mood of the subordinate verb is the subjunctive, and the tense is the present or imperfect, as explained in 428:

1. **Eī persuāsī, ut venīret, I persuaded him to come.**
2. **Eum monēbō, nē hoc faciat, I shall advise him not to do this.**

a. Notice in these illustrations that the English subordinate verb is in the infinitive; *to come, to do*.

b. Such noun clauses are sometimes called *volitive* clauses, or clauses of *volition*, denoting something that is wanted.

439. RULE. *Noun clauses with ut or nē are used as objects of verbs meaning advise, command, demand, induce, permit, persuade, urge.*

a. These verbs include **hortor, imperō, moneō, permittō, persuādeō, petō** (*request*), **postulō** (*demand*); but **iubeō** and **patior** take an infinitive with subject accusative (343).

Memorize:

Stultus, ab oblīquō quī cum dēscendere possit,
Pugnat in adversās ire natātor aquās. — OVID.

*He is a foolish swimmer who swims against the stream,
when he might take the current sideways.*

EXERCISES

440. 1. Hīs puerīs persuādēre cōnābor. 2. Sagittae cōpi-
ārum oppidānīs nōn nocuērunt. 3. Militēs imperātōrī pārere
dēbent. 4. Caesar decimae legiōnī indulsit. 5. Nōnne
crēdis huic servō, quī Rōmā vēnit? 6. Prīncipēs eius cīvi-
tātis novīs rēbus¹ studēbant. 7. Bonus imperātor suōs²
semper hortātur, ut fortēs sint. 8. Lēgātus eīs imperābit,
ut castra mūniant. 9. Hī virī nōbīs persuāsērunt, nē in
vīcō remanērēmus. 10. Monuistīne fīnitimōs, ut tuō cōnsiliō

¹ *A change of government; literally, new things.*

² See 319.

ūterentur? 11. Helvētīi imperiō¹ tōtīus Galliae potīri cōnāti sunt. 12. Caesar classem convenīre iussit. 13. Orgetorix filiam suam in mātirimōnium Dumnorīgī, prīncipī Haeduōrum, dedit. 14. Dīcit sē cīvibus esse persuāsūrum, ut lēgātōs mittant. 15. Rēx equitātūi suō permiserat, ut agrōs Gallōrum vāstāret.

441. 1. You have persuaded me by these words. 2. He says he will command the sailors. 3. These tribes will resist the Roman army. 4. We obeyed the chief, and sailed out-of the harbor with² the whole fleet. 5. They will urge these boys³ to come. 6. They were urging them to come. 7. The lieutenant ordered⁴ the fleet to sail. 8. The magistrate will warn the traders not to set out from the city to-day. 9. The general used these weapons to conquer⁵ the forces of the enemy. 10. These men, who love their country, are not eager for a revolution (new things). 11. Did you hear all the words of the consul?

THREE GALLIC CHIEFS

442. Orgetorix lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscipit. Persuādet Casticō Sēquanō,⁶ cūius pater rēgnum multōs annōs⁷ obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in civitate suā occupāret,⁸ quod pater antea habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in civitate obtinēbat, ut idem cōnārētur⁸ persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat. Itaque hī trēs prīncipēs inter sē⁹ fidem dant, et tōtīus Galliae imperiō sēsē¹⁰ potītūrōs esse spērant.

¹ See 403.

² Denoting accompaniment (136).

³ Accusative.

⁴ Use *iubeō*.

⁵ Expressing purpose.

⁶ In apposition with *Casticō*.

⁷ See 291.

⁸ The imperfect is used because *persuādet* here has the force of a past tense (431).

⁹ *Inter sē*, to one another.

¹⁰ Emphatic form of *sē*.

LESSON LVI

THE VERB *POSSUM*. CLAUSES OF RESULT

443. The verb *possum*, *I am able, I can*, is composed of the adjective *potis*, *able*, and the verb *sum*. The principal parts are *possum*, *posse* (*to be able*), *potuī* (*I have been able*).

a. Learn the conjugation of *possum* in the indicative, the subjunctive (present and imperfect), and the infinitive, as given on pages 290 and 291. The participle *potēns*, *powerful*, is used as an adjective, as already learned (242).

444. *Possum* is usually found with a complementary infinitive (110):

1. *Hoc facere possumus*, *we can* (are able to) *do this*.
2. *Hoc facere poterāmus*, *we could* (were able to) *do this*.

445.

VOCABULARY

<i>auxilium</i> , <i>auxi'li</i> , N., <i>aid</i> , <i>help</i>	<i>terreō</i> , <i>-ēre</i> , <i>-uī</i> , <i>-itum</i> , <i>frighten, terrify</i>
<i>sapiēns</i> , <i>sapientis</i> , <i>wise</i>	<i>accidō</i> , <i>accidere</i> , <i>accidī</i> , —, (<i>ad + cadō</i> , <i>fall to</i>), <i>happen</i>
<i>tālis</i> , <i>tāle</i> , <i>such</i>	<i>ascendō</i> , <i>ascendere</i> , <i>ascendī</i> , <i>ascēsum</i> , <i>climb, ascend</i>
<i>tantus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> , <i>so great, so</i> <i>much</i>	<i>efficiō</i> , <i>efficere</i> , <i>effēcī</i> , <i>effec-</i> <i>tum</i> (<i>ex + faciō</i> , <i>work out</i>), <i>bring about, effect</i>
<i>tot</i> , indecl. adj., <i>so many</i>	<i>legō</i> , <i>legere</i> , <i>lēgī</i> , <i>lēctum</i> <i>(gather), read</i>
<i>ita</i> , adv., <i>so</i>	
<i>sic</i> , adv., <i>so, in such a manner</i>	
<i>tam</i> , adv., <i>so, used w. adjectives</i> <i>and adverbs</i>	

446. **Result Clauses.** In the sentence "The soldiers fought bravely, that they might conquer," the subordinate clause, as we know, expresses *purpose*, the will of the soldiers; but if we say, "They fought so bravely that they con-

quired," the clause expresses a fact resulting from the main action and is called a clause of *result*.

The verb in a result clause is indicative in English, but subjunctive in Latin. The connective is **ut**, as in purpose clauses; but in negative result clauses **ut nōn** is used, not **nē**.

1. **Ita fortiter pugnāvērunt, ut vincerent**, *they fought so bravely that they conquered.*
2. **Sīc oppidum mūniēbātur, ut nōn expugnārētur**, *the town was so fortified that it was not captured.*
3. **Tam altus est mōns, ut nōn ascendere possīmus**, *the mountain is so high that we cannot climb (it).*

a. The main clause upon which a clause of result depends often contains an adverb meaning *so* (**ita**, **sīc**, **tam**) or an adjective meaning *such, so great* (**tālis**, **tantus**). The presence of such a word helps to distinguish a clause of result from one of purpose.

b. The tense in result clauses follows the rule stated in 430.

447. RULE. *The subjunctive is used with ut or ut nōn in clauses expressing result.*

448. Noun Clauses of Result. The clauses illustrated in 446 are adverbial. Other clauses of result are used as nouns, being the subject of verbs meaning *happen* and the subject or object of verbs meaning *accomplish, cause, bring about*.

1. **Accidit ut cōsul esset in castrīs**, *it happened that the consul was in the camp.*
2. **Cōsul effēcit ut esset cōpia frūmentī**, *the consul brought it about that there was a supply of grain.*

449. Summary of Ut Clauses. We have seen that **ut** may introduce the following:

- a. Purpose clauses (420). The negative is **nē**.
- b. Result clauses (447). The negative is **ut nōn**.
- c. Noun clauses depending on verbs meaning *advise, command, persuade, urge*, and the like (439). The negative is **nē**.

d. Noun clauses depending on verbs meaning *happen, cause, accomplish* (448). The negative is **ut nōn**.

EXERCISES

450. 1. Quis illum montem ascendere potest? 2. Lēgātus hōc oppidō potirī poterit. 3. Equitēs hostibus resistere poterant. 4. Multa facere nōn potueram. 5. Galba dicit sē tēlum iacere posse. 6. Dicit sē audire nōn potuisse. 7. Potesne sīgna vidēre? 8. Nōnne eīs persuādēre potestis?

451. 1. We can. 2. You could. 3. They will not be able. 4. They have not been able. 5. He had been able. 6. I shall have been able. 7. He says that you can. 8. He said that you could.

452. 1. Ita hostēs territī sunt, ut in silvās fugerent. 2. Militēs sē tam celeriter recēpērunt,¹ ut paucī caperentur. 3. Tantum erat perīculum puerōrum, ut auxilium mitterēmus. 4. Haec puella tot librōs habet, ut omnēs legere nōn possit. 5. Ōrātor tam longē aberat, ut eum audire nōn possemus. 6. Tālem cōsulem habētis, ut timēre nōn dēbeātis. 7. Accidit ut flūmen sit altum. 8. Tanta est altitūdō flūminis, ut agmen sine nāvibus trānsīre² non possit. 9. Dumnorix perfēcit ut civitātēs inter sē³ obsidēs darent. 10. Quis est tam sapiēns, ut omnia sciat? 11. Verbum sapientī sat⁴ est. 12. Quōs librōs lēgistī?

453. 1. He is so brave that he fears nothing. 2. He was so brave that he feared nothing. 3. So great is their valor that they always conquer. 4. The Romans fortified the city in-such-a-way that the enemy were not able to take (capture) it. 5. It happened that the journey was not long. 6. Caesar ordered the scouts to climb the mountain. 7. The king will send the cavalry to frighten the enemy's troops. 8. I have read the letter that you wrote at Geneva. 9. Can you throw the javelin across the field?

¹ See 387.

² To cross.

³ Inter sē, to each other.

⁴ Enough, sufficient.

LESSON LVII

COMPOUNDS OF *SUM*. THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS. THE DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR

454. **Compounds of *Sum*.** Verbs formed by combining *sum* with prepositions are conjugated like the simple verb *sum*. Among these are:

absum , <i>be away, be absent</i>	praesum , <i>be at the head of, be in charge (command) of</i>
adsum , <i>be near, be present</i>	supersum , <i>be over, remain, survive</i>
dēsum , <i>be lacking, fail</i>	
intersum , <i>be between</i>	

455.

VOCABULARY

iūdicium , -ī, N., <i>judgment, trial</i>	praestō , praestāre , praestiti ,
iūs , iūris , N., <i>right</i>	praestitum , <i>stand before, excel</i>
mors , mortis , F., <i>death</i>	currō , currere , cucurri , cursum , <i>run</i>
mūnitiō , -ōnis, F., (mūniō), <i>fortification</i>	occurrō , occurrere , occurri ,
vinculum , -ī, N., <i>bond, fetter</i>	occursum , (ob + currō , <i>run against</i>), <i>meet</i>
tamen , <i>adv., however, nevertheless</i>	praeficiō , - ficere , - fēcī , - fectum (prae + faciō , <i>put before</i>), <i>put in command</i>
morior , morī , mortuus sum , <i>die</i>	
stō , stāre , stetī , statum , <i>stand</i>	

456.

THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS

1. **Mārcus legiōnī praeest**, *Marcus is-in-command-of the legion.*
2. **Imperātor legiōnī Mārcum praefēcit**, *the general put Marcus in-command-of the legion.*
3. **Mārcus omnibus virtūte praestat**, *Marcus excels all in valor.*

a. The datives in these sentences depend upon verbs compounded with *prae* and are regarded as indirect objects.

457. RULE. *Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super take a dative of the indirect object.*

- a. Among the verbs so used are *adsum, dēsum, praesum; occurrō, praeficiō, praestō.*
- b. The dative of indirect object, as now learned, is used with:
 1. Transitive verbs (59).
 2. Verbs of special meaning (437).
 3. Verbs compounded with certain prepositions (457).

458. The Dative of the Possessor. We may express the sentence "The trader has a horse" in two ways in Latin: *Mercātor equum habet*, or *Equus mercātōrī est*. In the latter sentence, which literally means *A horse is (belongs) to the trader*, the possessor is expressed by the dative, and that which is owned by the nominative.

459. RULE. *The dative is used with the verb sum to denote the possessor.*

EXERCISES

460. 1. *Multī hodiē adsunt; paucī absunt.* 2. *Herī āfuit Quīntus; crās eum adfutūrum spērō.* 3. *Magna pars aestātis superest.* 4. *Quod pars aestātis supererat, Caesar cum cōpiīs suīs in Britanniam nāvīgāre cōstituit.* 5. *Ex eō proeliō multī militēs superfuērunt.* 6. *Equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deerant.*¹ 7. *Nostrī hostibus occurrērunt, et eōs celeriter superāvērunt.* 8. *Imperātor nūntium ad Labiēnum, lēgātum Rōmānum quī decimae legiōnī praeerat, mīsīt.* 9. *Caesar eī mūnitiōnī, quam fēcerat, Labiēnum praefēcit.* 10. *Orgetorīx dixit Helvētiōs reliquīs Gallīs praestāre.* 11. *Huic militī sunt scūtum et quattuor pīla.* 12. *Helvētiīs erant duodecim oppida et multī vicī.* 13. *Postquam explōrātor hās rēs vīdit, ad castra cucurrit et lēgātōs monuit.* 14. *Decima legiō in sinistrā parte aciēi proxima nōnae stetit.* 15. *Ubi Caesar flūmen nōn longē abesse vīdit, exercitum trādūxit.*

¹ See 7 a.

461. 1. The Romans did not have a large fleet.¹ 2. Labienus had-been-in-command-of the army. 3. Brutus was-put-in-command-of the fleet. 4. Many men urged Caesar to² put Brutus in-command-of the fleet. 5. Can you see the fortification that our (men) have constructed (made)? 6. After the death of the chief, the tribe was conquered. 7. Did the conqueror send the army under the yoke? 8. Who is absent today?

THE DEATH OF ORGETORIX

462. Ea coniūrātiō prīncipum est Helvētiīs nūntiāta. Orgetorigem ex³ vinculis causam dīcere⁴ cōegērunt. Ad iūdicium omnēs suōs clientēs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, condūxit. Per eōs sē ēripuit.⁵ Cum⁶ cīvitās armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur,⁷ Orgetorix mortuus est. Post ēius mortem tamen Helvētīi id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, et ē fīnibus suīs exīre⁸ parant.

LESSON LVIII

REVIEW OF LESSONS LI-LVII

463.

VOCABULARY

auxilium	iūmentum	tēlum	īta
celeritās	iūs	verbum	item
classis	lēgātiō	vinculum	sīc
equitātus	mors	sapiēns	tam
fidēs	mūnītiō	tālis	tamen
imperium	nihil	tantus	sub
iūdicium	prīncipātus	tot	ut
iugum	profectiō	anteā	comparō

¹ Write in two ways (458).

² What mood and tense (438)?

³ *In* (literally, *out of*).

⁴ *Causam dīcere*, to plead his case.

⁵ *Sē ēripuit*, escaped (literally, rescued himself).

⁶ *When*.

⁷ Translate as if indicative.

⁸ *To go out*.

stō	imperō	cōnor	hortor
praestō	agō	dēligō	resistō
indulgeō	cōgō	loquor	sequor
noceō	ascendō	morior	suscipiō
pāreō	currō	patior	ūtōr
polliceor	occurrō	potior	adsum
studeō	efficiō	permittō	dēsum
terreō	emō	pōnō	possum
vereor	coëmō	praeficiō	praesum
accidō	legō	proficīscor	supersum

REVIEW QUESTIONS

464. 1. What is a deponent verb? 2. Give the indicative synopsis and the infinitives of **loquor**. 3. What are the signs of the present subjunctive in the different conjugations? Of the imperfect subjunctive? 4. Conjugate the present subjunctive of **pōnō**. 5. Conjugate the imperfect subjunctive of **permittō**. 6. Give the indicative synopsis and the infinitives of **possum**. 7. With what deponent verbs is the ablative used? 8. With what verbs is the dative of the indirect object used? 9. How may purpose be expressed in Latin? 10. How may result clauses be distinguished from purpose clauses? 11. How are noun clauses used? 12. Distinguish primary and secondary tenses. 13. State the rule for the sequence of tenses. 14. What is meant by the "historical" present? 15. Give an illustration of the dative of the possessor.

Memorize:

Dā spatium tenuemque moram; male cūncta ministrat impetus. — STATIUS.

Give time and permit a short delay; impetuosity ruins everything.

THE HELVETIANS CONTINUE THEIR PREPARATIONS

465. Ubi sē ad eam rem¹ parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, vicōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt. Frūmentum omne, praeter (id) quod sēcum portātūrī² erant, combūrunt, ut domum³ reditiōnis spem tollerent. Persuādēt finitimīs, ut eōdem cōsiliō ūtantur et cum eīs proficīscantur.

LESSON LIX

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

466. **Comparison.** Adjectives in Latin, as in English, have three degrees: positive, comparative, and superlative. The comparative is formed by adding to the base of the positive **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, **-ius** for the neuter: **alt-ior, alt-ius, higher**. The superlative is formed by adding **-issimus (-a, -um)** to the base of the positive: **alt-issimus, -a, -um, highest**.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus, <i>high</i>	altior, <i>higher</i>	altissimus, <i>highest</i>
fortis, <i>brave</i>	fortior, <i>braver</i>	fortissimus, <i>bravest</i>
audāx, <i>bold</i>	audācior, <i>bolder</i>	audācissimus, <i>boldest</i>
sapiēns, <i>wise</i>	sapientior, <i>wiser</i>	sapientissimus, <i>wisest</i>

a. Compare dēnsus, lātus, longus; brevis, gravis, nōbilis; potēns.

467. Adjectives in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the nominative of the positive:

ācer, <i>sharp</i>	ācrior, <i>sharper</i>	ācerrimus, <i>sharpest</i>
liber, <i>free</i>	liberior, <i>freer</i>	liberrimus, <i>freest</i>

a. Compare miser, pulcher.

¹ Rem, *movement*, i. e., the migration.

² Portātūrī, *about to carry* (See 373).

³ Domum, denoting place to which, modifying reditiōnis (282).

468. The following adjectives in **-lis** form the superlative by adding **-limus** to the base of the positive: **facilis**, *easy*; **difficilis**, *difficult*; **similis**, *like*; **dissimilis**, *unlike*; **humilis**, *low*:

facilis, *easy* **facilior**, *easier* **facillimus**, *easiest*

a. Compare **difficilis**, **similis**.

469. **Declension of Comparatives.** Adjectives of the comparative degree belong to the third declension. Learn the declension of the model **altior**, page 272.

a. Decline **facilior** and the phrases **manus longior**, **oppidum longius**.

b. Adjectives of the superlative degree are declined like **bonus**.

470.

VOCABULARY

pēs, **pedis**, M., *foot*

turris, **turris**, F., *tower*

vadum, **-ī**, N., *ford*

fluō, **fluere**, **fluxī**, **fluxum**,
flow

celer, **celeris**, **celere**, *swift*

ferāx, **ferācis**, *fertile*

ūtilis, **-e**, (**ūtor**), *useful*

propinquus, **-a**, **-um**, *near*

quam, conj., *than*

471. THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON. THE MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Gladius brevior fuit quam pīlum, | } <i>the sword was
shorter than the
javelin.</i> |
| 2. Gladius brevior fuit pīlō, | |
| 3. Gladius brevior fuit quam pīlum quattuor pedibus,
<i>the sword was four feet shorter (shorter by four feet)
than the javelin.</i> | |

a. In the first sentence comparison is expressed with the conjunction **quam**, *than*, **gladius** and **pīlum** being in the same case; in the second sentence without **quam**, **pīlō** being in the ablative case, the *ablative of comparison*.

b. In the third sentence the ablative phrase **quattuor pedibus** denotes the measure or degree of difference, answering the question *By how much?*

472. RULE. *A comparative without **quam** is followed by the ablative; but when **quam** is used, the words denoting the things compared are in the same case.*

473. RULE. *The ablative is used with comparatives to express the measure of difference.*



VIEW OF THE RHINE RIVER

EXERCISES

474. 1. Agrī lātiōres. 2. Flūmina lātiōra. 3. Mūrīs altiōribus. 4. Per silvās dēnsiōrēs. 5. In oppida pulchriōra. 6. Lacūs longiōris. 7. Lacuum longiōrum. 8. Militī fortiōrī. 9. Militī fortissimō. 10. Cum militibus fortissimīs. 11. Celerrimae nāvēs. 12. Difficillimum iter.

475. 1. Omnium Gallōrum fortissimī erant Belgae. 2. Apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx. 3. Caesar

Rhēnum esse lātissimum atque altissimum putāvit. 4. Scīmus agrōs hūius cīvitātis esse ferācissimōs. 5. Trēs potentissimae nātiōnēs tōtius Galliae potiri¹ cōnāti sunt. 6. Terram pulchriorem quam nostram nōn vīdimus. 7. Hoc iter multō² facilius est quam illud. 8. Iter per Alpēs erit difficile mercātoribus, quī Rōmā³ veniunt. 9. Cōsul epistulam portārī ā nūntiō celeriōre iussit. 10. Centuriōnēs imperātorem aliī legiōnī Galbam praefectūrum esse putāvērunt. 11. Apud Rōmānōs quis fuit clārior quam Caesar? 12. Nōnne sapientēs⁴ putant librōs esse ūtiliōrēs pilīs?

476. 1. Who was the most famous orator of the Romans? 2. Was he much⁵ more famous than his brother Quintus? 3. We know that in winter the days are shorter than the nights. 4. You have never seen braver soldiers. 5. They will resist⁶ the most powerful enemy. 6. The Gauls were conquered by a more powerful nation. 7. The tower was ten feet higher than the wall. 8. The king will use his swiftest ships, that he may reach⁷ the province in a few days. 9. The shortest road is not always the easiest.

Memorize:

Silent lēgēs inter arma.

The laws are silent in time of war.

TWO ROADS FROM HELVETIA

477. Erant itinera duo quibus domō exīre⁸ possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum (mōns tam propinquus erat, ut facile⁹ paucī prohibēre¹⁰ possent); alterum per prōvinciam, multō facilius, propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum¹¹ Rhodanus fluit isque vadō trānsitur.¹²

¹ See 403 a.

² See 473.

³ See 223.

⁴ See 319.

⁵ By much.

⁶ See 437.

⁷ Pervenīō ad.

⁸ Domō exīre, to emigrate.

⁹ Adv., easily.

¹⁰ To prevent (a passage).

¹¹ The Allobroges (a-lob' rō-jēz).

¹² Is crossed.

LESSON LX

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

478. The following adjectives are compared irregularly:

bonus , <i>good</i>	melior , <i>better</i>	optimus , <i>best</i>
malus , <i>bad</i>	pēior , <i>worse</i>	pessimus , <i>worst</i>
magnus , <i>great</i>	māior , <i>greater</i>	maximus , <i>greatest</i>
parvus , <i>small</i>	minor , <i>smaller</i>	minimus , <i>smallest</i>
multus , <i>much</i> , pl. <i>many</i>	plūs , <i>more</i>	plūrimus , <i>most</i>

a. Decline the comparatives: **melior**, **melius**; **māior**, **māius** (gen. **māiōris**); **pēior**, **pēius** (gen. **pēiōris**); **minor**, **minus** (gen. **minōris**).

b. Learn the declension of **plūs**, as given on page 273. In the singular this word is used only as a noun.

479. The positive forms of the following are rarely used:

exterus , <i>outside</i>	exterior , <i>outer</i>	extrēmus (extimus), <i>outermost</i>
inferus , <i>below</i>	inferior , <i>lower</i>	īnifimus (īmus), <i>lowest</i>
posterus , <i>following</i>	posterior , <i>later</i>	postrēmus (postumus), <i>last</i>
superus , <i>above</i>	superior , <i>higher</i>	suprēmus (summus), <i>highest</i>

480. Some adjectives are compared by using the adverbs **magis**, *more*, and **maximē**, *most*, with the positive; especially adjectives in **-us** preceded by **e** or **i**: **idōneus**, **dubius**:

dubius **magis dubius** **maximē dubius**

481. **Special Meanings.** The comparative is sometimes to be translated by *too* or *rather*: **longior**, *too long*, or *rather long*; the superlative by *very*: **longissimus**, *very long*.

482.

VOCABULARY

collis, collis, M., <i>hill</i>	amicus, -a, -um, <i>friendly, devoted</i>
laus, laudis, F., <i>praise</i>	
servitūs, -tūtis (servus), F., <i>slavery</i>	inimicus, -a, -um, <i>unfriendly, hostile</i>
nūper, adv., <i>recently</i>	mereor, merēri, <i>meritus</i>
exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>think, believe</i>	sum, <i>deserve, merit</i>

EXERCISES

483. 1. Cōnsilium melius. 2. Cīvēs optimī. 3. Īnsula minor. 4. Domus minima. 5. Māius cornū. 6. Māiōra cornua. 7. Māior spēs. 8. Maximus numerus. 9. Plūrēs cīvitatēs. 10. Plūrimae nāves. 11. Extrēmī finēs. 12. Inferior pars. 13. Posterō diē. 14. Magnā cum laude. 15. Summā cum laude. 16. Altissimus mōns. 17. Summus¹ mōns. 18. Ē plūribus ūnum.

484. 1. Hominēs nihil pēius esse servitūte putant. 2. Hic puer māiōrem laudem quam ille merētur. 3. Sciō tē maximam laudem meritūrum esse. 4. Exīstimāsne militēs minōrem laudem quam imperātōrem meritōs esse? 5. Belgae sunt proximī Germānīs. 6. Ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī pertinent. 7. Haec cīvitas populō Rōmānō inimīca erat. 8. Nāvēs Gallicae multō humiliōres erant quam Rōmānae. 9. In summō¹ colle cōpiae hostium vīsae erant. 10. Explōrātōrēs mittentur, ut locum magis idōneum castrīs dēligant.

485. 1. Peace is better than war. 2. We think this plan is better than that. 3. Italy is much larger than Helvetia. 4. I heard that the danger would be very great. 5. The tenth legion was very-friendly to Caesar. 6. He hears that those slaves are most suitable for the work. 7. It often happens² that a smaller nation excels in valor. 8. This man has many horses and carts.³

¹ Summus here means *the highest part of, the top of*.

² See 448.

³ Express in two ways (459).

THE WAY THROUGH THE PROVINCE

486. Allobrogēs, cīvitās prōvinciae, ā populō Rōmānō nūper pācātī erant et ob eam rem nōn erant amīcī.¹ Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus est Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Helvētiī sē Allobrogibus persuāsūrōs exīstimābant, ut per suōs finēs eōs iter facere paterentur. Diem dīcunt² quā diē³ ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat ante diem quīntum (i. e., quīntus diēs ante) Kalendās Aprīlēs. Tum Lūcius Pīsō et Aulus Gabīnius erant cōsulēs Rōmānī.

LESSON LXI

ADVERBS: THEIR FORMATION AND COMPARISON

487. **Formation of Adverbs.** Adverbs are derived chiefly from adjectives.

a. Some adverbs are formed from adjectives of the first and second declension by adding **-ē** to the base: **lātus**, *wide*, **lātē**, *widely*.

b. Some adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension by adding **-ter** (**-iter**) to the base: **audāx**, *bold*, **audācter**, *boldly*; **fortis**, *brave*, **fortiter**, *bravely*.

c. Some adverbs are case forms of adjectives or nouns, as the neuter accusative: **facile**, *easily*, **multum**, *much*; the ablative: **primō**, *at first*, **ūnā**, *together*.

488. **Comparison of Adverbs.** Adverbs are regularly compared thus: The comparative is the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjective; the superlative is the superlative of the adjective with final **-us** changed to **-ē**.

¹ Adjective.

² *They appoint.*

³ A repeated antecedent.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē , <i>widely</i>	lātius , <i>more widely</i>	lātissimē , <i>most widely</i>
liberē , <i>freely</i>	liberius , <i>more freely</i>	liberrimē , <i>most freely</i>
ācritē , <i>sharply</i>	ācrius , <i>more sharply</i>	ācerrimē , <i>most sharply</i>
sapienter , <i>wisely</i>	sapientius , <i>more wisely</i>	sapientissimē , <i>most wisely</i>
facile , <i>easily</i>	facilius , <i>more easily</i>	facillimē , <i>most easily</i>

a. Form adverbs from the following adjectives and compare them: **audāx**, **brevis**, **celer**, **clārus**, **miser**.

489. Irregular Comparison. The following adverbs are irregular in comparison:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene , <i>well</i>	melius , <i>better</i>	optimē , <i>best</i>
male , <i>badly, ill</i>	pēius , <i>worse</i>	pessimē , <i>worst</i>
magnopere , <i>greatly</i>	magis , <i>more</i>	maximē , <i>most</i>
multum , <i>much</i>	plūs , <i>more</i>	plūrimum , <i>most</i>
parum , <i>little</i>	minus , <i>less</i>	minimē , <i>least</i>
diū , <i>long (in time)</i>	diūtius , <i>longer</i>	diūtissimē , <i>longest</i>
prope , <i>near</i>	propius , <i>nearer</i>	proximē , <i>nearest, next</i>

490. In the expressions **fortiter pugnāt**, **magis idōneus**, **minus facile**, notice that the adverbs modify the verb **pugnāt**, the adjective **idōneus**, and the adverb **facile**.

a. An adverb normally stands before the word it modifies.

491. RULE. *Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs.*

492. A superlative adjective or adverb may be used with the adverb **quam** to denote the highest possible degree: **quam maximus**, *as large as possible, the largest possible*; **quam fortissimē**, *as bravely as possible*.

493.

VOCABULARY

nēmō , dat. nēmīni , acc. nēmī- nem , ¹ M. and F., <i>no one</i>	mātūrō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>hasten</i>
omnīnō (omnis), adv., <i>in all</i> , <i>altogether, only</i>	rescindō , rescindere , rescidī , rescissum , <i>break down, de-</i> <i>stroy</i>
quam , adv., w. superlatives, <i>as</i> — <i>as possible</i> (492)	

EXERCISES

494. 1. Legionēs diū atque ācriter pugnāvērunt. 2. Caesar prīncipēs cīvītātis graviter² accūsāvit. 3. Servus tam celeriter cucurrit, ut nōn caperētur. 4. Uter nūntius celerius pervēnit? 5. Nēmō sapientius quam Sextus dīxit. 6. Pater meus puerīs facilius persuadēbit. 7. Domus amīcī meī ab urbe longissimē abest. 8. Ubi captīvī lēgātum vidērunt, liberrimē dīxērunt. 9. Helvētīi quam maximum numerum carrōrum coēmērunt. 10. Haec parva nātiō quam fortissimē restitit. 11. Hoc facillimē faciēmus, illud minimē facile. 12. Haec puella omnia maximā cum cūrā facit.

495. 1. This boy reads better than he writes. 2. These farmers have more fields than their neighbors. 3. We ought to attack the camp more boldly. 4. The legion fought less fiercely,³ because many had been wounded. 5. The sailors could not remain home longer. 6. The town was captured very easily. 7. The messenger came as quickly as possible. 8. Caesar was most friendly to the Haedui.

CAESAR GOES TO GENEVA

496. Caesarī ubi id nūntiātum est eōs per prōvinciam iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat Rōmā proficīscī et quam maximīs itineribus in Galliam contendit⁴ et Genavam pervenit. Prō-

¹ The genitive and ablative are not used.

² *Severely.*

³ *Ācriter.*

⁴ *Presses on.*

vinciae tōtī quam maximum mīlitum numerum imperat;¹ erat omnīnō in Galliā legiō ūna. Pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindī.

LESSON LXII

THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

497. **Formation of the Perfect Subjunctive.** The perfect subjunctive is formed in the active voice by adding the tense sign **-erī-** and the personal endings to the perfect stem; in the passive by combining the perfect participle with **sim**.

498. THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. FIRST CONJUGATION

amā'verim	amātus (-a) sim
amā'verīs	amātus (-a) sīs
amā'verit	amātus (-a, -um) sit
amā'verī'mus	amātī (-ae) sīmus
amā'verī'tis	amātī (-ae) sītis
amā'verint	amātī (-ae, -a) sint

a. In the same way conjugate **monuerim, monitus sim; rēxerim, rēctus sim; cēperim, captus sim; audīverim, audītus sim**. The perfect subjunctive forms of **sum** and **possum** are **fuerim** and **potuerim**.

499. **Meaning of the Perfect Subjunctive.** The perfect subjunctive usually has the same meaning as the perfect indicative: **amāverim, I have loved, I loved; amātus sim, I have been loved, I was loved**. Special meanings and the uses of the tense are to be explained later.

¹ *Prōvinciae imperat, he levies upon the province.*

500.

VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, M. (<i>a coming to</i>), arrival, approach	cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum, learn, find out
Īdūs, -uum, F. , the Ides (i.e., the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, the thirteenth of other months)	rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask
animus, -ī, M. , mind, spirit	revertor, revertī, revertī, ¹
	reversum, turn back, return

501. Indirect Questions. If a question is dependent on a verb such as *ask, say, see, tell, wonder*, it is an indirect question. The verb of an indirect question in Latin is in the subjunctive: **Rogō quid faciat, I ask what he is doing.**

a. In former lessons direct questions have been introduced by **quis, uter, cūr, ubi, -ne, nōnne, or num.** In indirect questions the same words are used, except **nōnne**, but **-ne** and **num** mean *whether*, without distinction.

b. The tense in indirect questions depends on the rule for sequence (430):

1. **Rogō (rogābō, rogāverō) quid faciat, I ask (shall ask, shall have asked) what he is doing.**
2. **Rogō (rogābō, rogāverō) quid fēcerit, I ask (shall ask, shall have asked) what he has done (what he did).**
3. **Rogābam (rogāvī, rogāveram) quid faceret, I was asking (asked, had asked) what he was doing.**

502. RULE. *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.*

EXERCISES

503. 1. Quis fuit cōsul Rōmānus? 2. Rogat quis fuerit cōsul. 3. Potesne in portū nāvēs vidēre? 4. Rogant num nāvēs vidēre possīs. 5. Utra puella laudāta est? 6. Scīsne utra puella laudāta sit? 7. Ubi mīlitēs castra pōnēbant?

¹ In the present, imperfect and future of **revertor**, passive forms are used with active meanings. Other tenses are active in form.

8. Nōn vīdimus ubi castra pōnerent. 9. Cūr Helvētīi omnia oppīda sua incendērunt? 10. Discēmus cūr oppīda incenderit. 11. Nōnne Rōmānī pulchram urbem habuērunt? 12. Legimus urbem fuisse pulcherrimam. 13. Adventus Caesaris nōn cognitus erat. 14. Hostēs dē ēius adventū cognōscere nōn potuerant. 15. Hostēs in animō iter per agrōs fīnitimōrum facere habēbant.

504. 1. Which road is the easier? 2. Do you know which road is the easier? 3. What does the leader intend (have in mind) to do? 4. We asked the leader what he intended to do. 5. Did you learn who wrote the letter? 6. The scouts will be sent to find out the depth of the river. 7. I think the river is not very deep. 8. The lake is many feet deeper than the river.

THE HELVETII SEND AMBASSADORS TO CAESAR

505. Ubi dē adventū Caesaris Helvētīi cognōvērunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, quī dīcerent¹ sē in animō habēre sine ūllā iniūriā iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; sē rogāre² ut id sibi facere licēret.³ Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat exercitum Rōmānum temporibus antīquīs ab Helvētīis victum et sub iugum missum, eīs nihil pollicitus est. Tamen lēgātōs ad⁴ Īdūs Aprilēs ad sē revertī iussit.

LESSON LXIII

THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. REVIEW OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH *CUM*

506. **Formation of the Pluperfect Subjunctive.** The pluperfect subjunctive is formed in the active voice by adding

¹ See 420.

² *Sē rogāre* depends on *dīcerent*.

³ *Sibi licēret*, *they might be permitted* (lit., it might be permitted to them).

⁴ *Ad Īdūs Aprilēs*, *on the Ides of April*.

the tense sign **-issē-** and the personal endings to the perfect stem; in the passive by combining the perfect participle with **essem**.

507. THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
amāvis'sem	amātus (-a) essem
amāvis'sēs	amātus (-a) essēs
amāvis'set	amātus (-a, -um) esset
amāvissē'mus	amātī (-ae) essēmus
amāvissē'tis	amātī (-ae) essētis
amāvis'sent	amātī (-ae, -a) essent

a. In the same way conjugate **monuissem, monitus essem; rēxissem, rēctus essem; cēpissē, captus essem; audīvissem, audītus essem**. The pluperfect forms of **sum** and **possum** are **fuissem** and **potuissem**.

508. **Meaning of the Pluperfect Subjunctive.** The pluperfect subjunctive may have the meaning of the pluperfect indicative: **amāvissē, I had loved; amātus essem, I had been loved**; or it may be translated with *should (would) have*: *I should (you would) have loved, I should (you would) have been loved*.

509. SUBJUNCTIVE ENDINGS

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Present</i>	-em, -am	-er, -ar
<i>Imperfect</i>	-rem	-rer
<i>Perfect</i>	-erim	-us sim
<i>Pluperfect</i>	-issem	-us essem

a. What stems of the verb are used with these endings?

510. SYNOPSIS OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF *AMŌ* AND *SUM*

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	IRREGULAR
<i>Present</i>	amem	amer	sim
<i>Imperfect</i>	amārem	amārer	essem
<i>Perfect</i>	amāverim	amātus sim	fuero
<i>Pluperfect</i>	amāvissem	amātus essem	fuissem

a. Review section 308. Give synopses of the other model verbs in the indicative and subjunctive, third person singular; and of *possum* in the third person plural.

511.

VOCABULARY

castellum, -ī, N., <i>fort</i>	quō, conj., <i>that, in order that</i>
impetus, -ūs, M., <i>attack</i>	cum, conj., <i>when</i>
praesidium, -ī, N., <i>guard, garrison</i>	dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, (dis + pōnō), (<i>put here and there</i>), <i>station</i>
tum, adv., <i>then</i>	petō, petere, petivī (petiī),
ibi, adv., <i>there</i>	petitum, <i>seek, beg, ask</i>
interea, (inter + ea), adv., <i>meanwhile</i>	

a. Quō is used to introduce a clause of purpose containing a comparative adjective or adverb.

512. **Temporal Clauses with Cum.** The subordinate conjunction *cum*, *when*, is followed by the indicative or the subjunctive:

1. Illō diē, cum mīlitēs convēnērunt, Rōmae fui, *on that day when the soldiers came together, I was in Rome.*
2. Cum imperātor Rōmānus ad oppidum vēnisset et castra pōneret, oppidānī pācem petiērunt, *when the Roman general had come to the town and was pitching the camp, the people of the town sought peace.*

a. When a clause with *cum* simply *defines* or *fixes* the time of the main action, its verb is in the indicative. Thus the *cum* clause in sentence 1 tells only what day I was in Rome.

b. When a clause with **cum** not only states the time, but *describes* the circumstances under which a past main action occurred, the subordinate verb is in the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, as **pōneret** and **vēnisset** in sentence 2.

513. RULE. Cum Temporal. **Cum** meaning when is used with the indicative to define the time of an action; and with the subjunctive to describe the circumstances under which the action occurred.

Memorize:

Vincit qui patitur.

He conquers who endures.

Vincit qui sē vincit.

He conquers who overcomes himself.

EXERCISES

514. 1. Cum lēgātus haec audīvisset, ad Caesarem nūntium mīsit. 2. Cum amīcī nostrī in Italiā essent, liberōs rēgis vidērunt. 3. Cum imperātor mīlitēs cohortātus esset, sīgnum proelī dedit. 4. Cum cōpiae multās hōrās fortissimē pugnāvissent, castrīs hostium potītī sunt. 5. Cum Helvētīi oppida sua incendissent, ex fīnibus profectī sunt. 6. Cum Rōmānī castra mūnīrent, hostēs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. 7. Fuistīne in Britannīā? Hic vir dīcit sē ibi quattuor annōs habitāvisse. 8. Lēgātus dīcit sē in castellīs praesidia dispositūrum esse. 9. Explōrātor collem ascendit, quō¹ facilius mūnītiōnēs hostium vidēret. 10. Tum rēx partem cōpiārum, quae castellum oppugnāret, mīsit. 11. Hī cīvēs, quī magnō in perīculō sunt, auxilium petent. 12. Scīsne cūr auxilium petant? 13. Scīsne cūr auxilium petierint?

515. 1. When my friend was living in Italy, he wrote many letters to me. 2. When I had read these letters, I desired to see the country. 3. On that day when the consul spoke² in the senate, very many were present. 4. The men who live there are very

¹ See 511 a.

² Use the indicative, according to 512 a.



RUINS OF A ROMAN AQUEDUCT

friendly to us. 5. They say they will defend us. 6. They will send troops, that we may be defended. 7. Who commanded the garrison?

CAESAR FORTIFIES HIS POSITION

516. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mūrū fossamque perducit.¹ Ibi praesidia dispōnit et castella mūnit, quō² facilius itinere³ Helvētiōs prohibēre possit.

LESSON LXIV

CARDINAL NUMERAL ADJECTIVES. THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

517. **Classes of Numerals.** There are three classes of numeral adjectives: *cardinal*, denoting how many, as **ūnus**, *one*; *ordinal*, denoting which one of a series, as **prīmus**, *first*; *distributive*, denoting how many at a time, as **singulī**, *one at a time*.

518.

CARDINAL NUMERALS

1, ūnus, -a, -um	9, novem	17, septendecim
2, duo, duae, duo	10, decem	18, duodēvigintī
3, trēs, tria	11, ūndecim	19, ūndēvigintī
4, quattuor	12, duodecim	20, vīgintī
5, quīnque	13, tredecim	30, trīgintā
6, sex	14, quattuordecim	100, centum
7, septem	15, quīndecim	200, ducentī, -ae, -a
8, octō	16, sēdecim	1000, mille; pl. milia

a. Other cardinals are given on page 275.

¹ *Constructs.*

² See 511 a.

³ Ablative of separation.

519. **Declension.** The only cardinals declined are **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, the hundreds above **centum**, and the plural of **mille**. **Trēs** is declined like the plural of **fortis**; **ducenti**, like the plural of **bonus**.

a. Learn the declension of **duo** and **mille**, page 273.

520. **Mille** in the singular is usually an adjective and is not declined: **cum mille virīs**, *with a thousand men*. The plural **mīlia** is a neuter noun followed by a limiting genitive: **cum quattuor mīlibus virōrum**, *with four thousand men* (lit., thousands of men).

521.

VOCABULARY

longitūdō, -tūdinis, F. (longus), *length*
passus,¹ -ūs, M., *pace* (about five feet)
mille passūs, *a mile* (a thousand paces)
mīlia passuum, *miles* (thousands of paces)

quot, indecl. adj., *how many?*
circiter, adv., *about*
quam, interrog. adv., *how?*
pateō, **patēre**, **patuī**, —, *extend, lie open*

522.

THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

1. **Collis multōs pedēs altus est**, *the hill is many feet high*.
2. **Oppidum Belgārum aberat mīlia passuum octō**, *a town of the Belgae was eight miles away*.

The accusatives **pedēs** and **mīlia**, which are used in answering *How high is the hill? How far is the town?* are called *accusatives of extent of space*. An accusative of extent is similar to an accusative of duration (290).

523. **RULE.** *The accusative is used to denote extent of space.*

¹ By **passus** the Romans meant the distance between two successive positions of the *same* foot. It is therefore longer than the English pace.

EXERCISES

524. 1. Fuērunt in exercitū Caesaris sex legiōnēs. Labiēnus ūnī legiōnī praefuit. 2. Rōmānī milia passuum tria ab castrīs hostium castra posuērunt. 3. Fīnēs Helvētiōrum in longitūdinem milia passuum CCXL (ducenta quadrāgintā) patēbant. 4. Orgetorix milia hominum decem cōēgit. 5. Circiter milia hominum CXXX (centum trīgintā) superfuērunt. 6. Hanc puellam rogāvimus quot librōs lēgisset. 7. Scīsne quot amīcōs habeās? 8. Hī puerī multōs passūs current. 9. Sciō eōs ducentōs passūs cucurrisse. 10. Mārcus centum passibus longius quam Quīntus currere potest.

525. 1. The army marched (for) five days.¹ 2. The army marched three miles. 3. The lake extends a mile in (into) breadth and two miles in length. 4. The length of the camp will not be much² greater than the breadth. 5. When they had built (made) as many ships as possible,³ they were ready to sail. 6. Cornelia was the mother of two famous sons. 7. Lucius will come home with three other boys. 8. The brave leader was holding the fort with three hundred men. 9. When the trader was in Gaul, he bought eight horses and four carts. 10. There were twenty-five ships in the fleet.

526. *Answer in Latin the following questions:* 1. Quam longus est mūrus? 2. Quam lātum est flūmen? 3. Quam longa est via? 4. Quot puerī hodiē adsunt? 5. Quot puerī absunt?

THE HELVETIANS ARE UNABLE TO CROSS THE ROMAN PROVINCE

527. Ubi ea diēs, quam Caesar cum lēgātīs cōstituerat, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, dīcit sē nōn posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare. Tum Helvētiī Rhodanum nāvibus et vadīs, quā⁴ minima altitūdō flūminis erat, trānsīre⁵ cōnātī sunt, sed mūnitiōne et militum tēlis repulsī sunt.

¹ See 290.

⁴ *Where.*

² See 473.

⁵ *To cross.*

³ See 492.

LESSON LXV

ORDINAL ADJECTIVES. THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE.
THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

528. Ordinal adjectives end in **-us** (**-a**, **-um**): **prīmus**, *first*, **secundus**, *second*; distributives in **-ī** (**-ae**, **-a**): **singulī**, *one at a time*, **bīnī**, *two at a time*. These adjectives are declined like **bonus**, the distributives in the plural only.

a. Learn from page 275 the first ten ordinals and notice the formation of the others.

529. THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE

1. **Pars terrae**, *part of the land*.
2. **Quis eōrum**, *who of them?*
3. **Multī puerōrum**, *many of the boys*.
4. **Minus timōris**, *less (of) fear*.
5. **Fortissimī mīlitum**, *the bravest of the soldiers*.

In these expressions the genitive denotes the *whole*, modifying a word denoting a *part*. A genitive so used is called a *genitive of the whole*.

a. The word denoting a part may be a noun, a pronoun (interrogative or indefinite), an adjective, or an adverb (of quantity, degree, or place).

b. The ablative with **dē** or **ex** is sometimes used instead of the genitive, especially after cardinal numbers: **ūnus ex puerīs**, *one of the boys*.

530. RULE. *The genitive may denote the whole, depending on a word denoting a part.*

531. THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

1. **Vir magnae virtūtis**,
2. **Vir magnā virtūte**,
3. **Belgae erant magnā virtūte**, *the Belgae were (men) of great courage.*
4. **Fossa trium pedum**, *a ditch of three feet.*

Notice in the illustrations that **vir**, **Belgae**, and **fossa** are *described* by genitive or ablative phrases and that there is an adjective in each phrase. Genitives and ablatives so used are called *genitives of description* (or descriptive genitives) and *ablatives of description* (or descriptive ablatives).

a. Measure, size, and weight are expressed by the genitive; physical characteristics by the ablative. Other descriptive phrases may be in either case.

532. RULE. *The genitive or the ablative, with an adjective in agreement, may be used to describe a noun.*

533.**VOCABULARY**

hīberna , -ōrum, N., <i>winter quarters</i>	cōnscrībō , (con + scrībō, <i>write together</i>), <i>enroll, enlist</i>
Santonēs , -um, M., <i>the Santones</i> (san'tō-nez)	hiemō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (<i>hiems</i>), <i>pass the winter</i>
satis , indecl. noun and adv., <i>enough, sufficiently</i>	instruō , <i>instruere, instrūxī, instrūctum</i> , <i>arrange, marshal</i>
circum , prep., w. acc., <i>around</i>	

EXERCISES

534. 1. Ūnō annō duodecim mēnsēs sunt. Secundus mēnsis brevior est quam tertius. 2. Quārtā hōrā classis Rōmāna ad Britanniam pervēnit. 3. Acīēs legiōnum quattuor instrūcta est. 4. Legiō octāva in Ītaliā cōnscrīpta erat. 5. Labiēnus mīlitibus decimae legiōnis imperāvit, ut hīberna mūnīrent. 6. Mercātor dicit satis frūmentī esse in oppidō. 7. Nūntiātum est multītūdinem Germānōrum agrōs Galliae vāstāvisse. 8. Helvētīi erant inimicō animō in¹ populum Rōmānum. 9. Cōnsul cīvēs futūrōs esse meliōre animō spērat. 10. Meō amicō persuādere cōnābor ut mēcum Rōmae hiemet.

¹ *Toward.*

535. 1. The soldiers are ready to-pass-the-winter. 2. Three legions are in winter quarters. 3. The new winter quarters are large enough (sufficiently large). 4. They are fortified by a wall of ten feet. 5. The wall is ten feet¹ high. 6. The commander is a man of great influence. 7. Three of his sons² are soldiers. 8. Many thought the Germans were (men) of greater bravery than the Helvetians.

536. *Answer in Latin the following questions:* 1. Quem domī vīdisti? 2. Quōcum locūtus es? 3. Cūius virtūs laudābitur? 4. Cui legiōnī Caesar indulsit? 5. Quis erat lēgātus hūius legiōnis?

CAESAR REINFORCES HIS ARMY

537. Caesari nūntiātur Helvētiōs in animō habēre per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in finēs Santonum facere. Haec civitās nōn longē ā prōvinciā abest. Ob eam causam sciēbat prōvinciam magnō in periculō futūram. Itaque eī mūnitiōnī,³ quam fēcerat, Labiēnum lēgātum prae-fēcit. Ipse in Ītaliā magnīs itineribus contendit, duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit; trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam⁴ hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit. Cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus per Alpēs in Galliam ire⁵ contendit, et trāns Rhodanum exercitum dūcit.

LESSON LXVI

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. REVIEW OF PRONOUNS. REVIEW OF PREPOSITIONS

538. **Indefinite Pronouns.** The indefinite pronouns refer to some person or some thing without indicating the particular one. They include **quis**, *any*, *any one*, *any thing*, and

¹ What case? (See 523.)

² What case? (See 529 b.)

³ Why is the dative used?

⁴ A town situated at the head of the Adriatic.

⁵ *To go.*

its compounds. The compounds used most frequently are **aliquis**, *some, some one, some thing*; **quisquam**, *any at all*; **quisque**, *each, every, each one, each thing*; **quīdam**, *a certain, a certain one, a certain thing*.

a. Like other pronouns, the indefinites may be used as adjectives: **quīdam miles**, *a certain soldier*.

b. **Quis** is used chiefly after certain conjunctions (**sī, nisi, nē, num**). **Quisquam** is used chiefly in negative sentences. As an adjective **quisquam** is not used, **ūllus** taking its place.

539. Declension of Indefinite Pronouns. The nominative singular is as follows:

PRONOUNS			ADJECTIVES		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
quis	—	quid	quī	qua (quae)	quod
aliquis	—	aliquid	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod
quisquam	—	quidquam (quicquam)	—	—	—
quisque	—	quidque	quisque	quaeque	quodque
quīdam	quaedam	quiddam	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam

a. The full declension of these words is given on page 278.

b. **Quisquam** has no plural. The plural of the other words is complete and is the same for pronouns and adjectives.

540. Review of Pronouns. The indefinites form the seventh and last class of pronouns. Review the declension of the six classes given in section 393.

541. Review of Prepositions. There are about thirty Latin prepositions used with the accusative and twelve with the ablative. The following have been given in the preceding lessons:

a. With the accusative: **ad, ante, apud, circum, contrā, in, inter, ob, per, post, praeter, propter, sub, trāns**.

b. With the ablative: **ā (ab), cum, dē, ē (ex), in, prō, sine, sub**.

542.

VOCABULARY

angustiae, -ārum, F. (angustiam, adv., *already, by this time*
 tus), *pass, defile* paene, adv., *almost*
 cōspectus, -ūs, M., *sight*

EXERCISES

543. 1. Quis erit dux? 2. Putō quendam ex hīs puerīs¹ ducem futūrum. 3. Quaedam nātiōnēs, quae Alpēs incolēbant, itinere² exercitum prohibēre cōnātī sunt. 4. Hoc cōnsilium cuiquam nōn nūntiābimus. 5. Dīcit sē sine cōnsensū omnium nōn factūrum esse quicquam. 6. Quisque domum revertī parātus erat. 7. Ubi mercātōrēs ā Britannīā revertērunt, Caesar quemque rogāvit quid vīdisset. 8. In cōspectū imperātōris quisque mīles fortius pugnāvit. 9. Hae nāvēs nōn sunt eadem quās herī vīdistī. 10. Hic collis multō altior est quam ille. 11. Mārcō ipsī persuādēbimus, ut ad urbem veniat. 12. Quot nova verba hodiē didicimus?

544. 1. Some friends have come to see³ you. 2. I have not seen any one to-day, but I shall try to see many friends to-morrow. 3. Do you know the name of each girl? 4. We shall send certain men (as) guides. 5. There were two consuls at Rome each year. 6. The king had his son with him. 7. Those ships are almost in sight of land. 8. There was no one in the field except the slaves. 9. On account of the scarcity of water the camp will be moved. 10. There is a beautiful village at the foot of the hill.

A PARLEY

545. Helvētīi iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs vāstābant. Haeduī cum⁴ sē ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent. lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, quī auxilium rogārent.

¹ See 529 b.² Ablative of separation (220).³ What mood and tense?⁴ *Since*, expressing cause.

Hī dīcunt sē ita ¹ dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut agrī paene in cōspectū exercitūs Rōmānī vāstārī, puerī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore sociī Haeduōrum nūntiant sē nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Propter hās iniūriās Caesar cum Helvētiis bellum gerere cōstituit.

LESSON LXVII

REVIEW OF LESSONS LIX-LXVI. CERTAIN NOUN SUFFIXES

546.

VOCABULARY

adventus	passus	mille	intereā	rogō
angustiae	pēs	propinquus	nūper	mereor
animus	praesidium	quot	omnīnō	pateō
castellum	satis	ūtilis	paene	cognōscō
collis	servitūs	aliquis	quam	cōnscribō
cōspectus	turris	quīdam	tum	dispōnō
hīberna	vadum	quis	circum	fluō
Īdūs	celer	quisquam	cum (conj.)	īnstruō
impetus	difficilis	quisque	quō (conj.)	petō
laus	duo	circiter	exīstimō	rescindō
longitūdō	ferāx	iam	hiemō	revertor
nēmō	inimīcus	ibi	mātūrō	

Memorize:

Scīlicet ut fulvum spectētur in īgnibus aurum,
Tempore sic dūrō est īspicienda fidēs. — OVID.

*As the yellow gold is tried in the fire, so is sincerity
tested in adversity.*

REVIEW QUESTIONS

547. 1. How are adjectives regularly compared? 2. Compare **longus**, **potēns**, **pulcher**. 3. Compare **brevis**, **similis**.

¹ See 446 a.

4. Compare **bonus, magnus, multus**. 5. Compare **exterus, superus**. 6. Decline **liberior**. 7. Decline **plūs**. 8. How are adverbs formed? 9. Compare the adverbs formed from **ācer, bonus, facilis, lātus**. 10. Decline **ūnus, duo, trēs**. 11. Decline **ducentī, mīlle**. 12. Decline **aliquis** as a pronoun; as an adjective. 13. How is the perfect subjunctive formed? The pluperfect? 14. Write a synopsis of **dūcō** in the active indicative and subjunctive, third person singular. 15. Write a synopsis of **hortor** in the third person plural. 16. Illustrate by a Latin sentence the ablative of comparison; the measure of difference. 17. Illustrate the accusative of extent; the genitive of the whole; the ablative of description. 18. What is an indirect question? 19. When does **cum**, *when*, introduce a subjunctive clause?

548. Noun Suffixes. Many nouns, as we have seen, are formed by adding to stems a common suffix, such as **-tor, -tās, -men**. These suffixes have definite meanings, as the English *-er* in *writer, one who writes*. The following are important noun suffixes:

a. **-tor**, denoting the agent or doer of an action: **imperātor**, *one who commands*; **explōrātor, mercātor, ōrātor, victor**.

b. **-iō (-siō, -tiō), -tus (-sus), -ium**, denoting action: **leg-iō**, *lit. a collecting*; **ōrā-tiō**, *a speaking*; **adven-tus**, *a coming to*; **imper-ium**, *a commanding*; **coniūrātiō, mūnitiō; auxiliū, indicium, praesidium, studium**.

c. **-men, -mentum**, denoting action, the means or the result of action: **flū-men**, *a flowing*; **ag-men**, *that which is led*; **frū-mentum**, *that which is enjoyed*; **nōmen, iūmentum**.

d. **-ia (-tia), -tās, -tūs, -tūdō**, forming abstract nouns denoting quality or condition: **audāc-ia**, *boldness*, **amīcī-tia**, *friendship*; **boni-tās**, *goodness*; **vir-tūs**, *manliness*; **magni-tūdō**, *greatness*; **iniūria, memoria, victōria, vigilia; cīvītās, cupiditās, libertās; servitūs; altitūdō, fortitūdō, longitūdō, multitūdō**.

LESSON LXVIII

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD. THE VOCATIVE CASE

549. The imperative in Latin, as in English, expresses a command. The present tense has only the second person.

550. THE PRESENT IMPERATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
amā , <i>love</i>	amāte	amāre , <i>be loved</i>	amāminī
monē , <i>warn</i>	monēte	monēre , <i>be warned</i>	monēminī
rege , <i>rule</i>	regite	regere , <i>be ruled</i>	regiminī
cape , <i>take</i>	capite	capere , <i>be taken</i>	capiminī
audī , <i>hear</i>	audīte	audīre , <i>be heard</i>	audīminī
es , <i>be</i>	este	cōnāre , <i>try</i>	cōnāminī

a. Note that in the active singular the present imperative is the same as the present stem; and that in the passive singular the forms are the same as the present active infinitive. What are the plural endings?

b. **Dīcō**, **dūcō**, and **faciō** drop final **-e** in the active singular: **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**.

c. Conjugate the present imperative of **laudō**, **dēfendō**, **mūniō**, **sequor**.

551. **The Vocative Case.** The vocative is the case of address; that is, the case used in speaking to a person. In form it is the same as the nominative, except that **-us** nouns and adjectives of the second declension have the singular in **-e**: **Quid facis, amīce bone?** *What are you doing, good friend?*

a. **Fīlius** and proper names in **-ius** have the vocative singular in **-ī**: **fīlī**, **Lūcī**.

b. The vocative usually stands after one or more words of the sentence, and is set off by commas.

552.

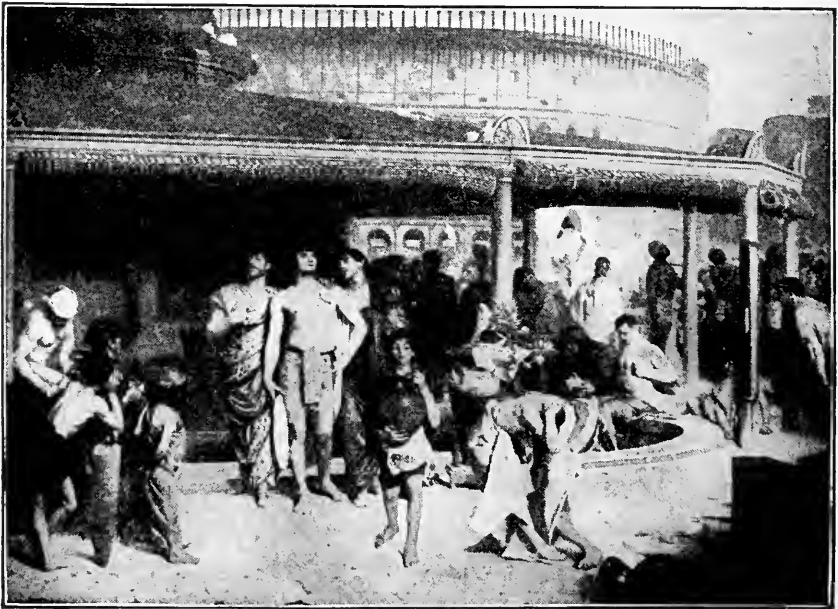
VOCABULARY

ratis, ratis, F., *raft*
 citrā, prep., w. acc., *this side of*
 nam, conj., *for*
 nōndum, adv., *not yet*
 abdō, abdere, abdidī, abdi-
 tum (ab + dō, *put away*),
hide, conceal

concīdō, concīdere, concīdī,
 concīsum (con + caedō, *cut*
to pieces), *kill*
 iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnc-
 tum, *join*

EXERCISES

553. 1. Fortissimē urbem dēfendite. 2. Nūntium ad cōn-
 sulem celeriter mitte. 3. Hortāre cīvēs, ut in Forum conve-



THE META SUDANS

A fountain near the Colosseum

niant. 4. Ēdūc, lēgāte, omnēs cōpiās tuās. 5. Lēgātum
 monuī, ut omnēs cōpiās ēdūceret. 6. Dīcite nōbīs, amīcī,
 cūr nōn vēnerītis.¹ 7. Persuādē frātrī tuō, ut nōbīscum

¹ Why subjunctive?

maneat. 8. Prīncipēs Helvētiōrum multās ratēs iungī iussērunt. 9. Puerī parvam ratem in¹ flūmine habēbunt. 10. Ascendite montem, ut videātis quam in partem² agmen iter faciat.

554. 1. Boys, be brave. 2. Praise the farmer's sons. 3. Come to the harbor, sailor. 4. Throw the javelins, soldiers. 5. Use longer arrows, Marcus. 6. Fight so bravely that you will³ conquer. 7. Tell me, Cornelia, what books you have read. 8. Learn all these words with great care.

CAESAR DEFEATS PART OF THE HELVETIAN FORCES

555. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit. Id Helvētīi ratibus, quās iūxerant, trānsībant.⁴ Trēs partēs cōpiārum iam trāductae erant; quārta pars citrā flūmen reliqua erat. Ea pars cīvītātis appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvītās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est.

Caesar dē⁵ tertiā vigiliā cum tribus legiōnibus ē castrīs profectus⁶ ad eam partem, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat,⁷ pervēnit, et magnum numerum concīdit. Reliquī fūgērunt atque sē in proximās silvās abdidērunt.

LESSON LXIX

PARTICIPLES: THE PRESENT AND THE PERFECT

556. **Tense Endings of Participles.** Participles, as defined in section 259, are verbal adjectives. There are four:

1. The present active in **-ns**.
2. The perfect passive in **-us** (260).

¹ *On.*

² *Direction.*

³ What tense in a result clause? (See 430.)

⁴ *Were crossing.*

⁵ *In the course of.*

⁶ *Having set out.*

⁷ *Had crossed.*

3. The future active in **-ūrus** (373).
4. The future passive in **-ndus**.

a. The endings of the present active and of the future passive are added to the present stem: **amā-ns**, **ama-ndus**.

557. TABLE OF THE PARTICIPLES

PRES. ACT.	PERF. PASS.	FUT. ACT.	FUT. PASS.
1. amāns <i>loving</i>	amātus <i>loved, having been loved</i>	amātūrus <i>about to love</i>	amandus <i>to be loved</i>
2. monēns	monitus	monitūrus	monendus
3. regēns capiēns	rēctus captus	rēctūrus captūrus	regendus capiendus
4. audiēns	audītus	auditūrus	audiendus

a. Deponent verbs have four participles: **ūtēns**, *using*; **ūsus**, *having used*; **ūsūrus**, *about to use*; **ūtendus**, *to be used*.

b. Defective verbs lack one or more participles. **Sum** has only **futūrus**, *about to be*; **possum** only **potēns**, *powerful*, used as an adjective.

c. Form the participles, giving the English meaning, of **dō**, **videō**, **mittō**, **potior**.

558. Declension of Participles. The present participle is declined like **potēns**. In the ablative singular the ending is **-e**, but when the participle is used simply as an adjective, it is **-ī**. The other participles are declined like **bonus**.

559. Meanings of the Present and the Perfect. The present participle represents action as *going on* at the time denoted by the main verb; the perfect participle represents action as *completed* at the time denoted by the main verb:

1. **Puerum venientem videō** (**vidēbō**, **vīdī**), *I see (I shall see, I saw) the boy coming.*
2. **Puer vocātus venit** (**veniet**, **vēnit**), *the boy having been called is coming (will come, came).*

a. A present or perfect participle is often best translated by a relative clause, or by an adverbial clause with *when*, *after*, *since*, *although*, *if*:

1. **Pontem ā Rōmānīs factum vidī**, *I saw the bridge (that was) built by the Romans.*
2. **Exercitus victus sub iugum mittētur**, *(if) the army (is) defeated, (it) will be sent under the yoke.*
3. **Miles vulnerātus fortiter pugnāvit**, *the soldier fought bravely (though he was) wounded.*

560.

VOCABULARY

calamitās, -tātis, F. , <i>disaster</i>	repentīnus, -a, -um , <i>sudden</i>
Dīvicō, -ōnis, M. , <i>Divico</i>	commoveō (con + moveō,
vesper, vesperī, M. , <i>evening</i>	<i>move thoroughly</i>), <i>alarm</i>
sī, conj. , <i>if</i>	cōnsequor (con + sequor),
sīn, conj. , <i>but if</i>	<i>follow up, overtake</i>

EXERCISES

561. 1. Nōne audīvistī cōnsulem militēs laudantem? 2. Mārcus multōs librōs ā Rōmānīs scriptōs lēgit. 3. Servus territus ex urbe fūgit. 4. Mercātōrēs domō primā hōrā profectī¹ Genavam sub² vesperum pervēnērunt. 5. Celtae hostēs oppidum mūnientēs terruērunt. 6. Imperātor suōs cohortātus¹ sīgnū proelī dedit. 7. Orgetorīx, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, coniūrātiōnem fēcīt. 8. Fīnitimī Helvētiōrum, eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppida sua vicōsque incendērunt. 9. Castra in locō nātūrā mūnītō pōnunt. 10. Magnus numerus vulnerātōrum in castrīs erat. 11. Magnum numerum animālium currentium trāns agrōs vidēre poteris. 12. Fīlia principis, ab hostibus capta, ad rēgīnam dūcēbātur.

562. 1. The boys (having been) sent by their father were aiding the sailors. 2. Did you see the boys aiding the sailors? 3. (While I was) living in Italy, I learned many things about³ the Romans. 4. The lieutenant has a beautiful sword, given by his friends. 5. Divico was a man of great authority among the Helvetians. 6. He had been a leader of the army for many years.

¹ See 557 a.² Towards.³ Dē.

THE HELVETIANS SEND DIVICO AS ENVOY TO CAESAR

563. Post hoc proelium Caesar, ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī facit atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētīū repentinō ēius adventū commōtī, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quōrum Dīvicō prīnceps fuit.

Dīvicō, quī bellō superiōre dux fuerat, dīxit: “ Sī populus Rōmānus nōbīscum pācem faciet, ibi¹ manēbimus ubi nōs manēre iubēs; sīn nōbīscum bellum gerere vīs,² memoriā tenē Helvētiōs ā patribus suīs fortitudinem didicisse, et omnēs inimicōs superāre posse. Sī in proeliō contendēs, locus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī nōmen capiet.”

LESSON LXX

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

564. Observe the following sentences:

1. **Galbā imperante, legiō vīcit**, *with Galba commanding (or, Galba commanding; when Galba commanded; since Galba commanded; if Galba commanded), the legion conquered.*
2. **Civitatē victā, legiō in Alpibus hiemāvit**, *the tribe having been conquered (or, after the tribe had been conquered; since the tribe had been conquered; having conquered the tribe), the legion wintered in the Alps.*
3. **Galbā duce, legiō proficiscētur**, *with Galba as leader (or, Galba being leader; under the leadership of Galba), the legion will set out.*

The ablative phrases in these sentences illustrate the *ablative absolute*; that is, an ablative loosely connected with the rest of the sentence, like the English nominative abso-

¹ *In that place.*

² *You wish.*

lute. The ablative absolute may be defined as a phrase consisting of a noun or pronoun in the ablative, and a noun, an adjective, or a participle in agreement.

a. The absolute phrase may be rendered best by a clause expressing time (*when, while, after*), cause (*since, because*), concession (*though, although*), condition (*if*), as shown in the model sentences. The ablative absolute, in other words, is often a substitute for a subordinate clause.

565. RULE. *A noun or pronoun in the ablative, with a noun, an adjective, or a participle in agreement, may be used to express time, cause, condition, or other relation.*

566. Observe also the following:

1. *Having said these things, the chief went away, hīs rēbus dictīs, prīnceps discessit.*
2. *Having spoken thus, the chief went away, ita locūtus, prīnceps discessit.*

a. The tense of the participle in an ablative absolute is either present or perfect. Since the Latin verb lacks the perfect *active* participle, an active phrase, such as *having said these things*, must be changed in translation to the passive form, *these things having been said*.

b. The perfect participle of deponent verbs, as *locūtus* in sentence 2, being active in meaning, is an exception to this rule, and takes the same construction as the participle in the English sentence.

3. *The town having been fortified, the troops resisted the enemy, oppidō mūnītō, cōpiae hostibus restitērunt.*
4. *The town having been fortified was easily defended, oppidum mūnītum facile dēfēnsū est.*

c. Compare sentences 3 and 4, and notice that the noun and participle (*oppidum mūnītum*) are *not* in the absolute construction in the last sentence, because the noun is also the subject of the main verb (*dēfēnsū est*).

567.

VOCABULARY

Pisō, Pisōnis, M., *Piso*
respōnsum, -ī, N., *reply*
invītus, -a, -um, *unwilling*
recēns, recentis, *new, fresh,*
recent
temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
try, attempt

respondeō, respondēre, re-
spondī, respōnsum, *reply*
dēpōnō (dē + pōnō), *put*
down, put away
satisfaciō (satis + faciō), *make*
amends, satisfy
etiam, adv., *even, also*

a. Decline **hoc respōnsum**; compare **recēns**; give a synopsis of **temptō** in the active, third person singular, and of **dēpōnō** in the passive, third plural.

Memorize:

Carpe diem.

Enjoy the present day. Seize the opportunity.

Cavē quid dīcis, quandō, et cui.

Be cautious as to what you say, when, and to whom.

EXERCISES

(Translate each ablative absolute literally; then form a better English equivalent phrase or clause.)

568. 1. Nāvibus vīsīs, domum revertēmur. 2. Vīcīs incēnsīs, Helvētīi cum omnibus cōpiīs profectī sunt. 3. Helvētīi, cum vīcōs suōs incendissent, proficīscī erant parātī. 4. Urbe captā, cīvēs fūgērunt. 5. Hoc oppidum, paucīs dēfendentibus,¹ expugnāre nōn potuimus. 6. Potītī² oppidō, id mūnīre coepimus. 7. Sīgnō datō, legiō decima impetum fēcit. 8. Pīlīs iactīs, mīlitēs gladiūs ūsī sunt. 9. Hīs rēbus inductus, rēx captīvōs liberāvit. 10. Nūntius, ā cōnsule missus, quam³ celerrimē cucurrit. 11. Caesare cōnsule, cīvītās superāta est. 12. Orgetorīx, Messālā et Pisōne cōsulibus, coniūrātiōnem fēcit.

¹ Translate with *though* (564 a).

² See 566 b, and 403.

³ See 492.

569. 1. (With) Marcus (as) commander, we shall easily conquer.
 2. The centurions having been called together, the lieutenant advised them. 3. Having written the letter, I called the messenger.
 4. The letter having been written was given to the messenger.
 5. After reading the letter (i.e., the letter having been read) I persuaded the messenger¹ to remain.² 6. I saw the consul's daughter reading a new book.

CAESAR'S REPLY TO DIVICO

570. Huic lēgātō Caesar ita respondit: "Eās rēs, dē quibus locūtus es, memoriā teneō. Etiam recentium iniūriarum memoriā dēpōnere nōn possum; mē invitō, Helvētīi iter per prōvinciam temptāvērunt, agrōs sociōrum populī Rōmānī vāstāvērunt. Sīn obsidēs mihi dabunt, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs satisfacient, quās eīs sociīsque eōrum intulērunt,³ cum cīvitāte Helvētiā pācem faciam."

Dīvicō respondit: "Helvētīi obsidēs accipere, nōn dare solent."⁴ Hōc respōnsō datō, discessit.

LESSON LXXI

THE FUTURE PARTICIPLES. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT

571. **Active Periphrastic.** The future *active* participle is used with forms of **sum**, to express action about to occur, or intended: **Laudātūrus sum**, *I am about to praise, I am going to praise, I intend to praise.*

a. The combination of the future active participle and **sum** (in the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive) is called the *active periphrastic*⁵ conjugation.

¹ What case?

² What mood (439)?

³ *Have inflicted upon.*

⁴ *Are accustomed.*

⁵ A "periphrastic" form is a form consisting of more than one word. The compound tenses of the passive voice (261) are therefore periphrastic, but the word is limited to the above use.

572. Passive Periphrastic. The future *passive* participle is used with forms of **sum** to express action as necessary or proper: **Laudandus est**, *he is to be praised, he has to be praised, he must be praised.*

a. The combination of **sum** with the future passive participle is called the *passive periphrastic* conjugation.

573. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT

1. **Mihi nauta monendus est**, *the sailor is to be (must be) warned by me, I must warn the sailor.*
2. **Mihi nauta monendus erat**, *the sailor was to be (had to be) warned by me, I had to warn the sailor.*
3. **Mihi nauta monendus erit**, *the sailor will have to be warned by me, I shall have to warn the sailor.*

With a passive periphrastic form the agent or doer of the action is expressed by the dative instead of the ablative.

574. RULE. *The dative of the agent is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation.*

575. VOCABULARY

inīquus , -a, -um (<i>uneven</i>), <i>unfavorable</i>	insequor (<i>in + sequor</i>), (<i>follow on</i>), <i>pursue</i>
quīngentī , -ae, -a, <i>five hundred</i>	pellō , pellere , pepulī , pulsum , <i>drive, put to flight</i>
cadō , cadere , cecidī , cāsum , <i>fall</i>	praemittō (<i>prae + mittō</i>), <i>send in advance</i>

EXERCISES

576. 1. Signum datūrī sunt. 2. Signum tubā dandum est. 3. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda. 4. Nōne epistulam scrīptūrus es? 5. Epistula tibi scribenda erit. 6. Agricolae frūmentum comportātūrī erant. 7. Nātiōnēs hūius terrae pācem cōnfīrmātūrae sunt. 8. Nōne putās pācem hīs nātiōnibus cōnfīrmandam esse? 9. Legiō decima,

cui¹ Labiēnus praecet, castra dē quārtā vigiliā mōtūra fuit.
 10. Sextus dicit sē ōrātorem in Forō audītūrum esse. 11. Dīc
 mihi, Sexte, quid āctūrus sīs. 12. Dīc mihi quid agendum sit.

577. 1. The boys are going-to-choose a leader. 2. The boys
 must choose a leader to-day.² 3. The lieutenant was about-to-
 advise the traders. 4. The traders had to be advised by the lieu-
 tenant. 5. Caesar himself is going-to-command the legions.³
 6. He said that Caesar himself was going-to-command the legions.

A CAVALRY SKIRMISH

578. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit
 Caesar, et equitātum omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium
 praemittit, quī videant⁴ quam in partem⁵ hostes iter faciant.
 Quī cupidius⁶ agmen īnsecūtī inīquō locō cum equitātū
 Helvētiōrum contendunt, et paucī dē equitibus Rōmānīs
 cadunt.

Hāc victōriā sublātī⁷ Helvetiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus
 tantam multītūdinem pepulerant, audācius resistere coepē-
 runt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat. Ita diēs quīndecim
 iter fēcērunt, ut hostium agmen ā Rōmānō quīnque aut sex
 mīlia passuum abesset.

LESSON LXXII

THE GERUNDIVE. THE GERUND

579. **The Gerundive.** The future passive participle (557),
 when used as an attributive adjective, is called a *gerundive*.
 The gerundive is used chiefly in the genitive, accusative, and
 ablative cases, singular and plural; rarely in the dative.

¹ See 457.

² Change this sentence to the passive form before translating.

³ What case?

⁴ See 420.

⁵ *Direction.*

⁶ *Too eagerly.*

⁷ *Elated.*

1. **Cupidī urbis videndae sumus**, *we are desirous of seeing the city* (lit., of the city to be seen).
2. **Dē urbe videndā locūtus est**, *he spoke about seeing the city* (lit., about the city to be seen).

a. Purpose is expressed by **causā**, *for the sake, for the purpose*, with the genitive of the gerundive, or by **ad** with the accusative. **Causā** always follows the genitive phrase.

3. **Urbis videndae causā vēnimus**, *we have come for the purpose of seeing the city*.
4. **Parātī ad urbem videndam sumus**, *we are ready to see the city* (lit., for the city to be seen).

580. **The Gerund.** The neuter singular of the gerundive is used as a verbal noun, called the *gerund*. The gerund is active in meaning and is equivalent to the English verbal in *-ing*. The nominative is supplied by the present infinitive.

<i>Nom.</i>	(amāre, to love)
<i>Gen.</i>	amandī, of loving
<i>Dat.</i>	amandō, for loving
<i>Acc.</i>	amandum, loving
<i>Abl.</i>	amandō, by (etc.) loving

a. Decline **monendī, regendī, capiendī, audiendī**.

b. Deponent verbs have gerunds, as well as gerundives (557 a): **conandī, of trying; verendī, of fearing; ūtendī, of using.**

581. **Uses of the Gerund.** The genitive of the gerund is used like other genitives: **difficultās audiendī, the difficulty of hearing**. Followed by **causā** the genitive expresses purpose: **Audiendī causā vēnimus, we have come for the purpose of hearing**. The dative is rare. The accusative is used with **ad** to express purpose: **Ad audiendum vēnimus, we came to hear**. The ablative is used like other ablatives: **Audiendō discimus, we learn by hearing**.

a. Remember that the gerund is a noun, the gerundive a participle; that the gerund is active, the gerundive passive; that the gerund is singular and neuter only, the gerundive singular or plural, and of all genders.

582.

VOCABULARY

statim, adv., *at once*

cōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum

(con + faciō), *accomplish*

cōsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -ses-

sum, *settle, take position*

ostendō, ostendere, ostendī,

ostentum, *show, explain*renūntiō (re + nūntiō), *report**Memorize:*

Verbum sat sapienti.

A word to the wise is sufficient.

EXERCISES

583. 1. Cīvēs audiendī cōsulis causā convēnērunt. 2. Ad portum nāvium videndārum causā venient. 3. Cum nūllam spem vincendī habērent, fūgērunt. 4. Quis ad hās rēs cōficiendās dēligētur? 5. Hae civitatēs ad obsidēs dandōs parātae sunt. 6. Legātus dicit legiōnem esse parātam ad bellum gerendum. 7. Dux putāvit hunc locum esse idōneum ad aciem instruendam. 8. Nēmō fortem virum loquentem dē fugiendō audīvit. 9. Nōnne is, quī aliōs docet, ipse docendō discit? 10. Hortāre¹ frātre tuum, Quīnte; persuādē eī ut hoc faciat.

584. 1. We learn to do² by doing. 2. They will aid the king by sending grain. 3. The boys are ready to³ climb the mountain. 4. Is the trader ready to sail? 5. The envoys had been sent to make⁴ peace. 6. This place is most⁵ suitable for pitching a camp. 7. Having sent ahead the cavalry, Caesar followed with the legions.

¹ See 550.² Agere.³ With parātus, either an infinitive or gerund (gerundive) may be used.⁴ Express to make in different ways.⁵ See 480.

CAESAR PREPARES FOR BATTLE

585. Explōrātōrēs Caesarī nūntiant hostēs sub¹ monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō. Caesar statim hominēs mīsīt, quī cognōscerent quae esset nātūra montis. Renūntiātum est ascēsum esse facilem. Tertiā vigiliā Labiēnum lēgātum, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus² quī iter cognōverant, montem ascendere iubet; quid sibi³ sit⁴ in animō ostendit. Ipse quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant,⁵ ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit.

LESSON LXXIII

THE SUPINE. REVIEW OF EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE

THE THREE STEM SYSTEMS

586. **The Supine.** Three forms of the verb are used as nouns: the infinitive (109), the gerund (580), and the supine. The supine has two case forms, the accusative in **-um** and the ablative in **-ū**. The accusative supine has been given as the fourth of the principal parts: **amātum, monitum, rēctum, captum, audītum**.

a. Deponent verbs have supines, which may be formed from the perfect participle: **cōnātum, veritum, ūsum**.

587. **Uses of the Supine.** The supine in **-um** is used with **īrī** to form the future passive infinitive (374). It is more commonly used with verbs of motion to express purpose: **Victōriam nūntiātum vēnimus**, *we have come to report the victory*.

a. The supine in **-ū** is used chiefly as an ablative of specification (378), with adjectives meaning *easy, good, strange*, or the opposite: **Difficile factū est**, *it is hard to do* (lit., with respect to the doing).

¹ *At the foot of.*

² *As guides.*

³ See 458.

⁴ See 502.

⁵ *Had gone.*

588. Expressions of Purpose. We have seen that four different forms of the verb may express purpose:

1. The subjunctive with **ut, nē, quī, or quō** (420): **Mittimur ut (or quī) videāmus.**

2. The gerundive with **ad** or **causā** (579 a): **Mittimur urbis videndae causā.**

3. The gerund with **ad** or **causā** (581): **Mittimur videndī causā.**

4. The supine (587): **Mittimur vīsum.**

589. Three Stem Systems. The various forms of the verb may be grouped into three systems, according to the stem from which they are derived. Thus for **amō** we may arrange:

THE PRESENT SYSTEM

ACTIVE

	<i>Ind.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Part.</i>	<i>Gerund</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	amō	amem	amā	amāre	amāns	amandī
<i>Impf.</i>	amābam	amārem				
<i>Fut.</i>	amābō					

PASSIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amor	amer	amāre	amārī		
<i>Impf.</i>	amābar	amārer				
<i>Fut.</i>	amābor				amandus	

THE PERFECT SYSTEM

	<i>Ind.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amāvī	amāverim	amāvisse
<i>Plup.</i>	amāveram	amāvissem	
<i>Fut. P.</i>	amāverō		

THE SUPINE SYSTEM

	<i>Ind.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amātus sum	amātus sim	amātus esse	amātus
<i>Plup.</i>	amātus eram	amātus essem		
<i>Fut. P.</i>	amātus erō		<i>Fut.</i> { amātūrus esse amātum irī	amātūrus
<i>Supine</i>	amātum			

590.

VOCABULARY

impedimentum, -ī, N. (impe- diō), hindrance; pl., bag- gage (military)	frumentor, -ārī, -ātus sum, (frumentum), procure grain, forage
mulier, muli'eris, F., woman	grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, con- gratulate
salūs, salūtis, F., safety	
tempestās, -tātis, F., storm, weather	impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, (pēs), hinder, encumber
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, think, consider	

EXERCISES

591. 1. Quid, Galba, est optimum factū? 2. Vōs moni-
tum vēnimus. 3. Lēgātī pācem petītum missī sunt. 4. Prīn-
ceps Haeduōrum Rōmam¹ auxilium rogātum fūgerat.
5. Castella fēcērunt, quō² minōre numerō mīlitum locum
dēfenderent. 6. Multī amīcī ad cōsulem grātulātum vēnē-
runt. 7. Ūna legiō frūmentātum missa erat. 8. Magna pars
equitātūs frūmentandī causā missa est. 9. Ad haec cognōs-
cenda Mārcum esse idōneum arbitrāmur. 10. Rogāsne quis
hoc praemium mereātur? 11. Difficile est dictū. 12. Hīs
rēbus cōfectīs, domum revertar. 13. Hostēs nōn facile
impedimentis potentur. 14. Caesar dicit sex milia Helvē-
tiōrum salūtem fugā petīvisse. 15. Puerī mulierēsque ā
Rōmānīs pācem petiērunt. 16. Arbitrābāmur propter
tempestātem difficultātem nāvīgandī futūram esse sum-

¹ See 282.² See 511 a.

mam.¹ 17. Tempestās nōn est idōnea ad nāvigandum.
18. Iter agminis dēnsissimīs silvīs impeditum est.

592. 1. It is easy to see. 2. I shall send men to do this. 3. He will come to the city to see his brother. 4. The soldiers are about-to-forage in the neighboring fields. 5. We must learn these things² before evening. 6. I think you will see these things within a few days. 7. Tell the women and children that there is safety in the town. 8. The baggage of the whole army could be seen by the scouts.

LESSON LXXIV

REVIEW OF LESSONS LXVIII-LXXIII. ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES

593.

VOCABULARY

calamitās	inīquus	nam	cōnficiō	iungō
impedīmentum	invītus	sī	cōnsequor	ostendō
mulier	quīngentī	sīn	cōnsīdō	pellō
ratis	recēns	abdō	dēpōnō	praemittō
respōnsum	repentīnus	arbitror	frūmentor	renūntiō
salūs	nōndum	cadō	grātulor	respondeō
tempestās	statim	commoveō	impediō	satisfaciō
vesper	citrā	concidō	īnsequor	temptō

REVIEW QUESTIONS

594. 1. Give the imperatives of **laudō** and **dēfendō**, active and passive. 2. How is the vocative case used? 3. Give four participles of **videō**, with their meanings. 4. Give four participles of **sequor**, with their meanings. 5. Decline **amāns**. 6. Explain the ablative absolute. 7. Give the formation and meanings of the periphrastic conjugations. 8. Define gerund and gerundive. 9. What are the uses of the supine? 10. Arrange the forms of **videō** in three stem systems.

¹ See 479 and 481. ² These things must be learned by us (573).

595. **Adjective Suffixes.** Among the suffixes used to form adjectives are the following:

a. **-āx, -idus**, forming adjectives with an active meaning: **audāx**, *daring* (*audeō, dare*); **cupidus**, *desiring, desirous* (*cupiō*).

b. **-ilis, -bilis, -tīvus**, forming adjectives with a passive meaning: **facilis**, *that may be done, easy* (*faciō*); **crēdibilis**, *that may be believed* (*crēdō*); **captīvus**, *captured* (*capīō*).

c. **-cus, -ius, -nus, -lis, -ris, -tīvus, -ter**, forming adjectives meaning *belonging to, pertaining to, derived from*: **bellicus**, *pertaining to war* (*bellum*); **patrius**, *pertaining to a father* (*pater*); **frāternus**, *pertaining to a brother* (*frāter*); **nāvālis**, *pertaining to a ship* (*nāvis*); **militāris**, *pertaining to a soldier* (*mīles*); **maritimus**, *pertaining to the sea* (*mare*); **equester**, *pertaining to a horseman* (*eques*).

596. *Answer in Latin the following:* 1. Arbitrārisne Rōmānōs saepe pulsōs esse? 2. Ubi hostēs sē abdidērunt? 3. Cūr equitēs praemissī sunt? 4. Nōnne recentem calamitātem audīvistī? 5. Quis hās rēs cōficere temptābit?

Memorize:

Quid magis est dūrum saxō? Quid mollius undā?

Dūra tamen mollī saxa cavantur aquā. — OVID.

What is harder than stone? What more soft than water?

Nevertheless, hard though the rock be, it is hollowed by the wave.

LESSON LXXV

THE IRREGULAR VERB *FĪŌ*. IDIOMS

597. **The Passive of *Faciō*.** The passive of *faciō* in the present system is formed from the irregular verb *fīō*. The supine system is regular. Learn from page 292 the conjugation of *fīō*, **fieri**, **factus sum**, *be made, be done, happen, result*. Notice that **-i-** is long, except in **fit** and before **-er-**.

a. Prepositional compounds of **faciō**, as **cōficiō**, **perficiō**, are usually conjugated regularly in the passive: **cōficior**, **cōfici**, **cōfectus sum**.

b. Write in review a synopsis of the *active* forms of **faciō**, including the three moods, the infinitives, the participles, and the gerund.

598. Certior, the comparative of **certus**, *certain, sure*, is used as a predicate adjective in the phrases **certiōrem faciō**, *I inform* (lit., make more sure), and **certior fiō**, *I am informed* (lit., I am made more sure):

1. **Eum certiōrem fēcī**, *I informed him*; **eōs certiōrēs fēcī**, *I informed them*.

2. **Certior fiō (certiōrēs fimus) equitēs venīre**, *I am informed (we are informed) that the horsemen are coming*.

a. Notice that **certior** agrees with the person informed, and that the information in sentence 2 is expressed by an infinitive with subject accusative, just as after a verb of *saying*.

599. Idioms. Every language has constructions or expressions peculiar to itself, called *idioms*. Thus in English we say *How do you do?* in French, *Comment vous portez-vous?* (How do you carry yourself?)

Latin has many idioms, such as **equus est mīlitī** (*a horse is to the soldier*) for *the soldier has a horse*; **iter faciunt** (*they make a march*) for *they march*; **Messālā cōnsule** (*Messala consul*) for *in the consulship of Messala*; **certior fiō** (*I am made more sure*) for *I am informed*; **in spem veniō** (*I come into hope*) for *I have hope, I entertain hope*.

600.

VOCABULARY

beneficium, -ī , N., <i>kindness, favor</i>	dīligēns, dīligentis , <i>careful, diligent</i>
maleficium, -ī , N., <i>evil deed, harm, damage</i>	dīligerter , adv., <i>diligently, faithfully</i>
dīligentia, -ae , F., <i>carefulness, diligence</i>	certus, -a, -um , <i>certain, sure</i>
	contrā , prep., w. acc., <i>against</i>

accurrō, accurrere, accurrī,
 accursum (ad + currō), *run*
to, hasten to

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 (con + iūrō, *swear together*),
conspire

fiō, fierī, factus sum, *be made,*
be done, happen, become

interficiō, interficere, inter-
 fēcī, interfectum (inter +
 faciō), *kill*

sustineō, sustinēre, sustinūī,
 sustentum (sub + teneō),
endure, sustain

EXERCISES

601. 1. Caesar pontem in flūmine Rhēnō fierī iussit.
 2. Helvētii dē eius adventū certiōrēs factī sunt. 3. Caesar



Andrea Mantegna

PANEL FROM THE PAINTING "THE TRIUMPH OF CAESAR"

Showing captives and war elephants

certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum con-
iūrāre. 4. Factum est multīs dē causīs ut hostēs impetum
sustinēre nōn possent. 5. Duae legiōnēs reliquum exercitum
exspectābant, ut ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret.
6. Nauta mē certiōrem fēcit flūmen esse altissimum. 7. Sum-
mam in spem victōriæ vēnimus. 8. Fidē inter sē datā,
rēgēs cōpiās suās iūnxērunt. 9. Hīs rēbus cōfectīs, dē
tertiā vigiliā proficiēscēmur. 10. Haec facta sunt Mārcō
Messālā et Mārcō Pisōne cōsulibus. 11. Nūntiātum est
multōs interfectōs esse. 12. Quis legiōnī decimæ praefectus
est? 13. Helvētīi dicunt sē sine ūllō maleficiō per prōvinciam
iter factūrōs esse. 14. Tuum beneficium semper memoriā



Andrea Mantegna

PANEL FROM THE PAINTING "THE TRIUMPH OF CAESAR"

Showing captives and spoils of war

tenēbō. 15. Omnia magnā cum dīlīgentiā nōbīs faciēda sunt.

602. 1. Peace has been made. 2. He said that peace had been made. 3. Having made peace, the leaders returned to their (own) countries. 4. Who will inform the leader (make the leader more certain) that the road is narrow. 5. The leader will be informed by the scout. 6. I think the scout will inform the leader. 7. The scout is coming to inform the leader. 8. No one will do that with greater diligence than this boy. 9. The children must be protected most faithfully.

THE BLUNDER OF CONSIDIUS

603. Prīmā lūce,¹ cum summus² mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, et Caesar ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mille et quīngentīs passibus abesset, Cōnsidius equō admissō³ ad Caesarem accurrit; dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit,⁴ ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsīgnibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat.

Multō diē⁵ Caesar certior factus est montem ā suis tenērī, et Cōnsidīum, timōre perterritum,⁶ quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō⁷ nūntiāvisse.

LESSON LXXVI

THE VERB *EŌ*. TEMPORAL CLAUSES

604. Learn the conjugation of the irregular verb *eō*, *ire*, *ī* (or *īvī*), *itum*, *go*, page 292. Stems: present, *ī-*, perfect, *i-* (*īv-*), supine, *it-*. Note the contracted forms.

¹ Prīmā lūce, at daybreak.

² The top of.

³ Equō admissō, at full speed (lit., his horse having been let go).

⁴ He wished.

⁵ Multō diē, late in the day.

⁶ Timōre perterritum, thoroughly frightened.

⁷ Prō vīsō, as if seen.

a. Certain compounds of eō, as *ad-eō*, *go to, visit*, *trāns-eō*, *go across, cross*, may be transitive and therefore may be conjugated in the passive: *adeor, adiris, aditur, adimur, adimīni, adeuntur*, etc.

605. Temporal Clauses. Clauses expressing time are introduced chiefly by the conjunctions *cum*, *when*, *ubi*, *when*, *postquam*, *after*, *priusquam*, *before*, *dum*, *as long as*, *while*, *until*. Review 513, and 310 a.

a. *Dum*, *as long as*, takes the indicative: *Dum anima est, spēs est*, *as long as there is life, there is hope*.

b. *Dum*, *while*, takes the indicative historical *present*, instead of a past tense: *Dum loquitur, vēnērunt*, *while he was speaking, they came*.

c. *Dum*, *until*, and *priusquam*, *before*, take the indicative of an *actual* event, but the subjunctive of an *expected* event: *Mānsit domī dum vēnī*, *he stayed at home until I came*; *expectāvit dum venīrem*, *he waited for me to come* (until I should come).

606.

VOCABULARY

<i>vōx, vōcis</i> , F., <i>voice</i>	<i>eō, ire, iī (īvī), itum</i> , <i>go</i>
<i>citerior, citerius</i> , comp. adj., <i>nearer, hither</i>	<i>exeō (ex + eō)</i> , <i>go-out</i>
<i>ulterior, ulterius</i> , comp. adj., <i>farther</i>	<i>redeō (red + eō)</i> , <i>go back, re- turn</i>
<i>dum</i> , conj., <i>as long as, while, until</i>	<i>trānseō (trāns + eō)</i> , <i>go across, cross</i>
<i>antequam</i> , conj., <i>before</i>	<i>moror, -ārī, -ātus sum</i> , <i>delay</i>

Memorize:

Nam genus et proavōs et quae nōn fēcimus ipsī,
Vix ea nostra vocō. — OVID.

*Pedigree and ancestry and what we ourselves have not
achieved,*

I scarcely recognize as our own.

EXERCISES

607. 1. Puerī domum ībant. 2. Pater nōbīscum ībit. 3. Pater dīcit sē nōbīscum itūrum esse. 4. Rōmā vēnērunt et Genavam ībunt. 5. Ierāmus ut hortum vīdērēmus. 6. Persuādē eīs ut tēcum eant. 7. Īte cum eīs, amīcī. 8. Īre nōn possunt. 9. Galba itūrus est. 10. Cūr iērunt? 11. Nōn cognōvī cūr ierint. 12. Putō eum īsse. 13. Eōs euntēs vīdī. 14. Hoc flūmen vadō trānsītur. 15. Ex oppidō exeunt. 16. Ante vesperum redībō.

608. 1. Prōvincia Rōmāna Alpibus in duās partēs dīvīsa erat. 2. Hae partēs Gallia citerior et Gallia ulterior appellātae sunt. 3. Cum Caesar esset in Galliā citeriōre, Belgae conīūrābant. 4. Cum veniēs, nostra cōnsilia cognōscēs. 5. Hostēs, ubi impedīmenta exercitūs vīdērunt, celeriter impetum fēcērunt. 6. Postquam id audīvit, Caesar in proximum collem cōpias suās dūxit. 7. Dum paucōs diēs frūmentī causā morātur, dē incolīs certior factus est. 8. Nōn exspectāre statuit, dum in prōvinciam Helvētiī pervenīrent. 9. Imperātor Genavae manēbit, dum militēs conveniant. 10. Vōce imperātōris audītā, militēs fortius pugnant.

609. 1. We shall go; they have gone. 2. He has gone out; he had gone out. 3. We were crossing the bridge; we had crossed. 4. The messenger is now going to the camp. 5. The king said he would go with a larger army. 6. When they had gone three miles, they decided to return. 7. Remain in the village until we come. 8. The traders are about to go into farther Gaul.

CAESAR GOES TO BIBRACTE FOR SUPPLIES

610. Posterō diē Caesar frūmentī causā iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit¹ et Bibracte² ire contendit, quod erat maximum oppidum Haeduōrum. Ea rēs per fugitivōs hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, quod Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs discēdere¹ ā sē exīstimābant, mūtātō¹ cōnsiliō et itinere conversō¹ nostrōs sequī coepērunt.

¹ See general vocabulary.

² Accusative.

LESSON LXXVII

THE VERB FERŌ. CAUSAL CLAUSES

611. Learn from page 293 the conjugation of the irregular verb *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, bring*; passive, *feror, ferri, lātus sum, be borne, be brought*. Stems: *fer-, tul-, lāt-*.

612. **Causal Clauses.** Clauses expressing cause or reason are introduced chiefly by the conjunctions *quod, because*, and *cum, since, as*. *Cum*, when so used, is called *cum-causal*, in distinction from *cum-temporal*.

a. *Quod* takes the indicative to state the reason of the speaker or writer; the subjunctive to state the reason of another: *Vicērunt quod fortēs erant, they conquered because (as I know) they were brave*; *Eōs accūsāvit, quod fortēs nōn essent, he accused them because (as he said) they were not brave*.

b. *Cum-causal* takes the subjunctive: *Facile erat oppidum expugnāre, cum nōn dēfenderētur, it was easy to capture the town, since it was not defended*.

613.

VOCABULARY

<i>onus, oneris, N., load, burden</i>	<i>differō, differre, distulī, dilātum (dis + ferō), bear apart, differ, postpone</i>
<i>subsidiū, -ī, N., aid, assistance</i>	<i>efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum (ex + ferō), bear out, take along</i>
<i>medius, -a, -um, middle, the middle of</i>	<i>īnferō, īnferre, intulī, īnlātum (in + ferō), bring upon, make upon</i>
<i>veterānus, -a, -um, veteran</i>	<i>referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, bring back; pedem referre, withdraw</i>
<i>cum, conj., since, as</i>	
<i>ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, bring</i>	
<i>cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātum (con + ferō), bring together; sē cōnferre, betake one's self</i>	

EXERCISES

614. 1. Fers; ferēs; ut ferās. 2. Fert; ferunt. 3. Tulērunt; tulerant; tulerint. 4. Ferēbat; ferēbātur. 5. Tullisse; ferrī. 6. Lātus; lātūrus. 7. Sīgnum fertur. 8. Sīgna relāta sunt. 9. Ferte sīgna, mīlītēs. 10. Subsīdium nōbīs ferēbant. 11. Qui eōrum arma ferre possunt?

615. 1. Agricolaē frūmentum cōnferunt. 2. Nautae sē in portum cōnferunt. 3. Prīnceps eōs hortātus est, ut sē in silvās cōnferrent. 4. Omnia impedīmenta in ūnum locum conlāta sunt. 5. Germānī bellum Gallīs intulērunt. 6. Cīvītātēs Gallīae linguā inter sē distulērunt. 7. Propter onera, quae ferimus, celerius ire nōn poterimus. 8. Dux quemque frūmentum sibi domō efferre iussit. 9. Perfacile erat tōtius Gallīae potīrī, cum Helvētīi virtūte omnibus praestārent. 10. Genavam ībimus, quod sumus cupidī videndae terrae Helvētīōrum.

616. 1. Bearing; we are bearing. 2. To have borne; to have been borne. 3. You have borne; you were bearing. 4. Bear the standard bravely. 5. The consul will bring aid to you. 6. The inhabitants of that city did not make war on the Romans. 7. When the farmers had brought together the grain, they sent it to the city. 8. Since we are not able to go, we will send a message. 9. Caesar built (made) a bridge, because he had no ships.

CAESAR PREPARES FOR BATTLE

617. Postquam Caesar id vīdit, cōpiās suās in proximum collem dūxit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsīt. Ipse interim in colle mediō¹ aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs novās, quās in Galliā citeriōre cōnscrīpserat, conlocāvīt. Tōtum montem hominibus complērī et sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferri et eum ab eīs, quī in superiōre aciē erant, mūnīrī iussit.

¹ *The middle of, half way up.*

LESSON LXXVIII

THE VERBS VOLŌ AND NŌLŌ. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

618. Learn from page 295 the conjugation of the irregular verbs **volō, velle, voluī, wish, be willing,** and **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling.**

a. Notice that the irregular forms are the present indicative, the present infinitive, and the present and imperfect subjunctive.

b. These verbs may take a complementary infinitive, or an infinitive with subject-accusative: **Venire voluit, he wished to come; eōs venire voluit, he wished them to come.**

619. The irregular verbs, as given in the preceding lessons, are: **sum, eō, fiō, ferō, volō,** and their compounds including **possum** and **nōlō.**

620. **Conditional Sentences.** A conditional sentence is a complex sentence one clause of which expresses a condition, the other a conclusion: *If he tries, he will succeed. If he tries is the condition, he will succeed, the conclusion.* The Latin conjunctions used in such sentences are **sī, if; sīn, but if; nisi, if not, unless.**

621. Conditions may be of the following kinds:

a. Present condition:

1. Stated as a fact; present indicative:

Sī vincit, bene est, if he is conquering, it is well.

2. Contrary to fact; imperfect subjunctive:

Sī vinceret, bene esset, if he were conquering, it would be well.

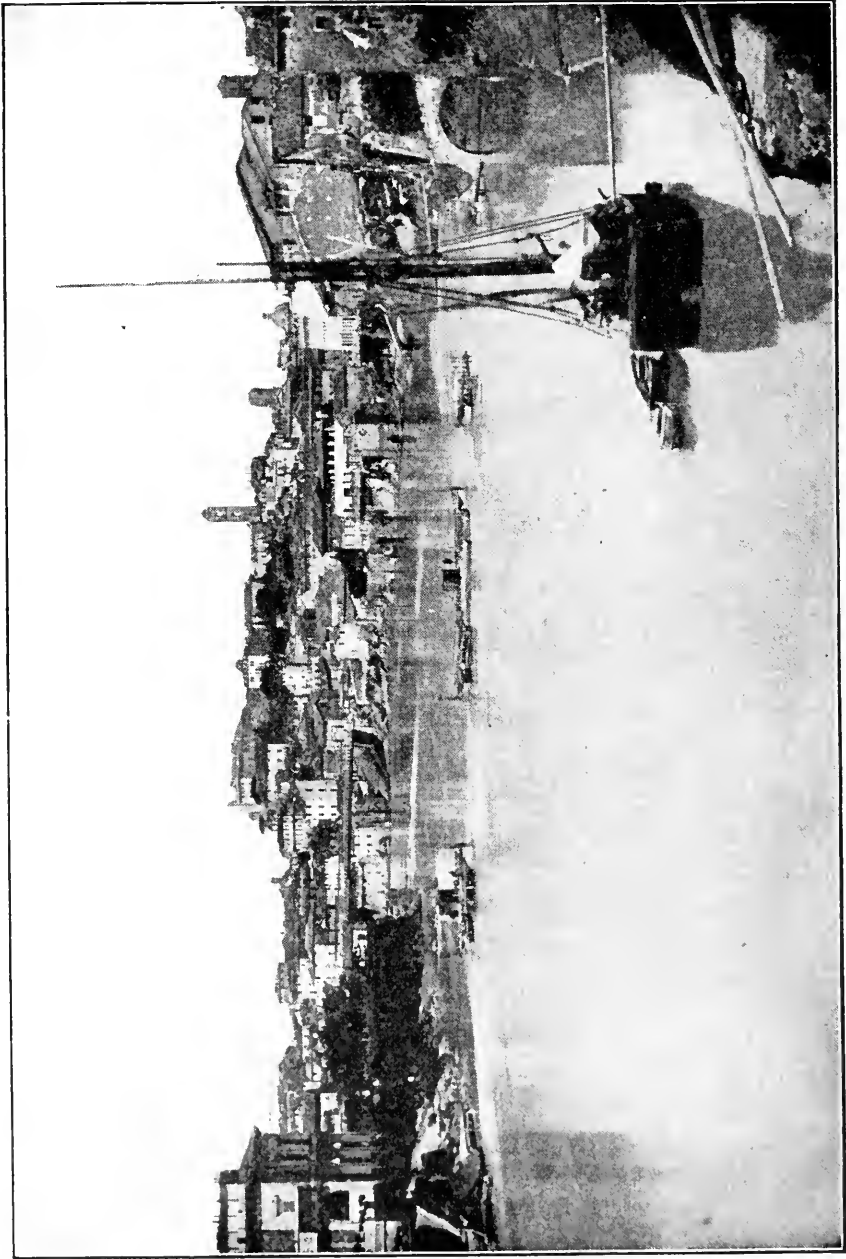
b. Past condition:

1. Stated as a fact; a past indicative:

Sī vīcit, bene fuit, if he conquered, it was well.

2. Contrary to fact; pluperfect subjunctive:

Sī vīcisset, bene fuisset, if he had conquered, it would have been well.



VIEW OF ROME AS IT LOOKS TO-DAY
Ruins of Sublician Bridge in foreground

c. Future condition:

1. More probable (*shall, will*); future or future perfect:

Sī vincet, bene erit, *if he conquers* (shall conquer),
it will be well.

2. Less probable (*should, would*); present or perfect subjunctive:

Sī vincat, bene sit, *if he should conquer, it would be well.*

EXERCISES

622. 1. Quis hoc facere vult? 2. Dicit sē velle. 3. Dixit tē nolle. 4. Putat eōs voluisse. 5. Manere nōlunt. 6. Amīcus meus domum redire volēbat. 7. Cum mercātōre loquī voluimus. 8. Puerōs esse in periculō nōlēbāmus. 9. Sī velit.¹ 11. Sī vellet.² 12. Sī voluisset.³

623. 1. Sī eris dux, sequar. 2. Sī amīcōs tuōs laudāveris, ab eīs laudāberis. 3. Sī sunt amīcī rēgis, erunt fortēs. 4. Sī patriam amātis, este fortēs. 5. Sī fuit Rōmae, domum Mārci vīdit. 6. Sī vīs, tē certiōrem dē itinere meō faciam. 7. Sī trānsire cōnābuntur, Caesar eōs prohibēbit. 8. Sī obsidēs ab Helvētiīs dentur,¹ Caesar cum eīs pācem faciat. 9. Sī proeliō contendere voluissent,³ vīcissent. 10. Sī urbs capta esset,³ multī cīvēs interfectī essent.

624. 1. We shall be willing to go to-morrow. 2. To-day we are unwilling to go. 3. I wished to see the consul's sons. 4. You are always willing to send aid. 5. If the soldiers are brave, they are praised. 6. If the soldiers are (will be) brave, they will be praised. 7. If the soldiers should¹ be brave, they would be praised. 8. If the soldiers had been³ brave, they would have been praised.

THE BATTLE OF BIBRACTE

625. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā⁴ aciē, reiectō

¹ See 621, c 2.

² See 621, a 2.

³ See 621, b 2.

⁴ See 626 for new words.

nostrō equitātū, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt. Caesar, equīs omnium ex cōspectū remōtīs, ut spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit.¹

Militēs, ē locō superiōre pilīs missīs,² facile hostium aciem reppulērunt.³ Eā perturbātā, gladiīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Tandem vulneribus cōfectī,⁴ Gallī pedem referre et sē recipere coepērunt ad montem, quī circiter mīlle passūs aberat.

Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, sociī Helvētiōrum nostrōs circumvenīre cōnātī sunt. Id cōspicātī Helvētīi, quī in montem sē recēperant, nostrīs restitērunt⁵ et proelium renovārunt.⁶

626.

VOCABULARY

vulnus, vulneris, N., *wound*
cōnfertus, -a, -um, *crowded,*
in close order

tandem, adv., *at last, finally*
cōspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum,
observe, catch sight of
perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
throw into confusion

reiciō, reicere, reiēcī, reiec-

tum (re + iaciō), *throw back,*
drive back

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *re-*
new

succēdō, succēdere, successī,
successum (sub + cēdō),
advance

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublā-
tum, *take away, remove*

LESSON LXXIX

IMPERSONAL VERBS. REVIEW OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

627. Impersonal Verbs. An impersonal verb is one that has no personal subject, and hence is used in the third person singular only. In English such verbs are often introduced by the expletive *it*: *it rains, it happens.*

¹ *Began* (committō).

² *Hurled.*

³ From repellō.

⁴ *Exhausted.*

⁵ From resistō.

⁶ A contraction of renovāvērunt.

In Latin impersonal verbs include chiefly:

1. Intransitive verbs in the passive voice: **pugnātur**, *there is fighting* (lit., it is fought).

2. Verbs taking a phrase or a clause as their subject, as **accidit**, *it happens*; **dīcitur**, *it is said*; **fit**, *it comes to pass*; **licet**, *it is permitted*; **oportet**, *it is necessary*:

Hoc facere licet, *it is permitted to do this*.

Accidit ut flūmen sit altum, *it happens that the river is deep*.

a. Impersonal verbs are found in the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive.

628. Review of Subordinate Clauses. We have learned the following kinds of clauses:

a. Clauses used as nouns:

1. With a subject accusative + an infinitive (341).

2. With **ut** or **nē** + a subjunctive (438).

3. With an interrogative word + a subjunctive (501).

b. Clauses used as adverbs, expressing purpose (411), result (446), time (605), cause (612), condition (620).

c. Clauses used as adjectives, usually beginning with relative pronoun.

629.

VOCABULARY

aurum, -ī, N., *gold*

oculus, -ī, M., *eye*

poena, -ae, F., *punishment*

scelus, **sceleris**, N., *crime*

accidit, **accidere**, **accidit**, *it happens*

fit, **fieri**, **factum est**, *it comes to pass*

licet, **licēre**, **licuit**, *it is permitted*

oportet, **oportēre**, **oportuit**, *it is necessary*

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *judge, determine*

trādō, **trādere**, **trādidī**, **trāditum** (**trāns** + **dō**), *give over, surrender*

EXERCISE

630. 1. Ācritēr eō diē pugnātum est. 2. Dictum est nihil esse potentius aurō. 3. Oportet poenam sequī scelus. 4. Helvētiīs iter per prōvinciam facere nōn licuit. 5. Accidit ut imperātor dē periculō certior fieret. 6. Dīcitur Caesarem fuisse (virum) magnā diligentīā. 7. Oculīs iūdicārī nōn potest in utram partem Arar fluat. 8. Factum est ut Helvētiī ad finēs suōs reverterentur. 9. Victōrēs pācem nōn facient, nisi arma trādita erunt. 10. Cum arma trādita essent, victōrēs pācem cum cīvitate fēcērunt. 11. Armīs trāditīs, cīvēs sē dēfendere nōn poterant. 12. Sī hostēs fortiōrēs fuissent, pācem nōn petissent. 13. Lēgātus missus est, ut novam legiōnem cōscriberet. 14. Nautae in portum salūtis petendae causā contendērunt. 15. Putāsne poenam fuisse graviōrem?

DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII

631. Diū atque ācritēr pugnātum est. Diutiūs cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī¹ sē, ut² coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī³ ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Ad multam noctem⁴ ad impedimenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrīs utēbantur et dē eīs in nostrōs tēla coniciēbant.⁵ Diū cum pugnātum esset, castrīs nostrī potītī sunt.

Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā inductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mīsērunt. Obsidēs et arma poposcit.⁶ Helvētiōs et sociōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī,⁷ revertī, et oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

¹ *One division* (the Helvetii).

² *Ut* sometimes means *as* when followed by an indicative.

³ *The other division* (the allies of the Helvetii).

⁴ *Far into the night.*

⁵ *Con + iaciō.*

⁶ From *poscō.*

⁷ From *proficiscor.*

LESSON LXXX

REVIEW OF CONJUNCTIONS. REVIEW OF THE NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE

632. Conjunctions Classified. Conjunctions are either *coördinate*, connecting similar constructions, or *subordinate*, connecting subordinate clauses with principal clauses.

a. Coördinate conjunctions:

1. **et, atque (ac), -que, and; neque (nec), and not.**
2. **aut . . . aut, either . . . or; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor; et . . . et, both . . . and.**
3. **autem, but, moreover; sed, but; enim, nam, for; tamen, nevertheless.**

b. Subordinate conjunctions:

1. Temporal, **cum, ubi, dum, postquam, priusquam.**
2. Causal, **quod, cum.**
3. Conditional, **sī, sīn, nisi.**
4. Final, denoting purpose, **ut, nē, quō.**
5. Consecutive, denoting result, **ut.**

633. Uses of the Nominative Reviewed. The nominative is used chiefly as follows:

- a.* Subject nominative (26).
- b.* Predicate nominative (99).

634. Uses of the Genitive Reviewed. The genitive is used chiefly as follows:

a. With nouns. **GENERAL RULE:** *A noun limiting another noun, not meaning the same person or thing, is in the genitive.*

1. Genitive of possession (51).
2. Genitive of description (532).
3. Genitive of the whole (530).
4. Objective genitive (353).

b. With adjectives (353).

635.

VOCABULARY

corpus, corporis , N., <i>body</i>	iuuenis, iuuenis , <i>young</i> ; as noun, <i>youth</i>
deus, deī , M., <i>god</i>	senex, senis , <i>old</i> ; as noun, <i>old man</i>
facultās, facultātis , F., <i>opportunity, means</i>	militāris, -e , <i>military</i>
mōs, mōris , M., <i>custom, manner</i>	perītus, -a, -um , <i>experienced (in), skillful</i>
ingēns, ingentis , <i>vast, huge</i>	

EXERCISES

636. 1. Genava erat oppidum ulteriōris prōvinciae. 2. Tulingī dīcuntur fuisse sociī Helvētiōrum. 3. Multitūdō iuuenum convēnērunt, ut patriam dēfenderent. 4. Rōmānī haec cōsiliō deōrum facta esse crēdidērunt. 5. Lēgātus erat perītus rei¹ militāris. 6. Accidit ut multī cīvēs essent cupidī rērum novārum. 7. Tanta opera Gallī neque vīderant neque audierant.² 8. Helvētiī aut suīs fīnibus Germānōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. 9. Facultās rēgnī obtinendī filiō rēgis data est. 10. Caesar multa dē mōribus Britannōrum cognōvit. 11. Germānī dicēbantur esse ingentī magnitūdine corporum. 12. Senēs dē multīs rēbus iuvenēs monēre³ possunt. 13. Facultās incendendae urbis hostibus nōn danda est.

637. 1. The hill was not of great height. 2. Who was the most famous of the Helvetians? 3. The daughter of Orgetorix is said to have been captured. 4. The consul will either go himself or send his son. 5. Neither the boys nor the girls had been informed about the customs of Gauls. 6. Did not the Romans believe there were many gods? 7. I hear that this man is very skillful. 8. Tell me who of these boys is most skillful.

¹ *In science.* Perītus governs the genitive (353).

² *Heard of.*

³ *Advise.*

LESSON LXXXI

REVIEW OF THE DATIVE AND THE ACCUSATIVE

638. Uses of the Dative Case. The following uses have been given for the dative:

1. Dative of the indirect object, with transitive verbs (60).
2. Dative of the indirect object, with special verbs (437).
3. Dative of the indirect object, with compound verbs (457).
4. Dative of the possessor, with **sum** (459).
5. Dative of the agent, with passive periphrastic forms (574).
6. Dative with certain adjectives (245).

639. Uses of the Accusative Case. The following uses have been given for the accusative:

1. Accusative of the direct object (42).
2. Accusative with prepositions (541).
3. Accusative of place to which (133).
4. Subject of an infinitive (342).
5. Predicate accusative (190).
6. Accusative of duration of time (291).
7. Accusative of extent of space (523).

640.

VOCABULARY

arbor, arboris, F., <i>tree</i>	intellegō, intellegere, intel-
dominus, -ī, M., <i>master</i>	lēxī, intellēctum (inter +
dōnum, -ī, N. (dō), <i>gift</i>	legō), understand
pūblicus, -a, -um, <i>of the people,</i>	prōgredior, prōgredī, prō-
<i>public</i>	gressus sum (prō + gra-
rēs pūblica, reī pūblicaē, F.,	dior, step), go forward,
<i>state, republic</i>	<i>advance</i>
dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum	
(dē + dō), give up, surrender	

EXERCISES

641. 1. Prīnceps Haeduōrum fuit amīcissimus populō Rōmānō. 2. Cui legiōnī Caesar indulsit? 3. Tibi, lēgāte, locus castrīs dēligendus est. 4. Rēx dīcit sibi nūllam cum eīs amīcitiam esse posse. 5. Dumnorīx equitatuī Rōmānō prae-fuit. 6. Duās hōrās nāvīgāvimus. 7. Duo mīlia passuum trāns lacum nāvīgāvimus. 8. Perīculum esse maximum intellegit. 9. Sē suaque omnia imperātōrī Rōmānō dēdidērunt. 10. Mīlitēs multās arborēs ex silvā portābant, quibus pontem facerent. 11. Dīcitur dominum habuisse multōs servōs. 12. Prō rē pūblicā, mīlitēs, pugnātis. 13. Prōgre-dīēmur, lēgātī, ad locum magis idōneum.

642. 1. The slaves call these men masters. 2. The farmer has a hundred trees in the field. 3. They will remain in the city a few hours and return home to-morrow. 4. The Belgians were next to the Celts. 5. Caesar understood that this man was wishing to make war on the Romans. 6. Will you surrender yourselves and your property to this nation?

LESSON LXXXII

REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE

643. Uses of the Ablative Case. The following uses have been given for the ablative case:

1. Ablative with prepositions (541).
2. Ablative of means (66).
3. Ablative of agent (149).
4. Ablative of separation (220).
5. Ablative of place from which (222).
6. Ablative of place in which (67).
7. Ablative of time when (292).
8. Ablative of accompaniment (136).
9. Ablative of manner (137).

10. Ablative of cause (362).
11. Ablative of specification (378).
12. Ablative of description (532).
13. Ablative of comparison (472).
14. Ablative of measure of difference (473).
15. Ablative with certain deponent verbs (403).
16. Ablative absolute (565).

644.

VOCABULARY

fūmus, -ī, M., *smoke*

īgnis, īgnis, M., *fire*

lātitūdō, -tūdinis, F. (lātus),
breadth, width

lūna, -ae, F., *moon*

Crassus, -ī, M., *Crassus*

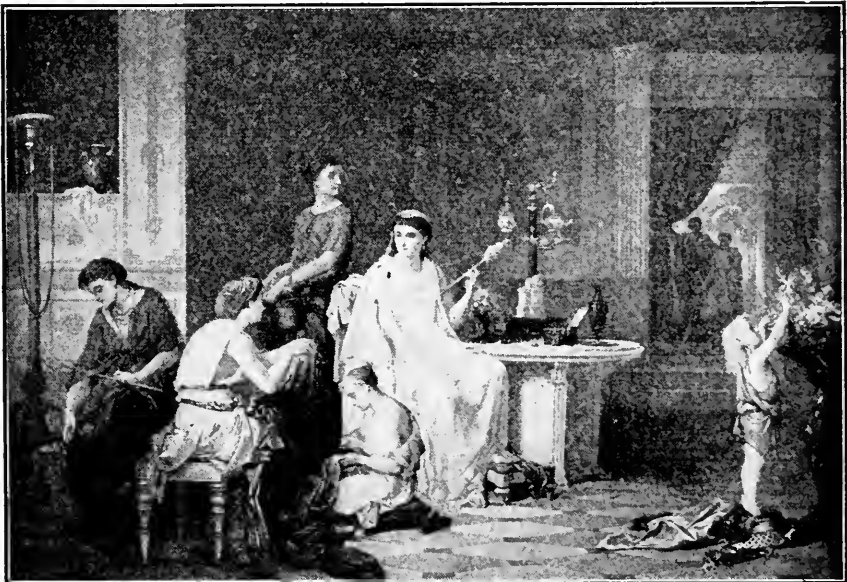
Pompēius, Pompēi (dat. Pom-
pēiō), *Pompey*

cārus, -a, -um, *dear*

ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus
sum (ē + gradior), *go out,*
march out

sīgnificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
show, indicate

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum, *live*



J. Coomans

A ROMAN WOMAN AND HER MAIDS

EXERCISES

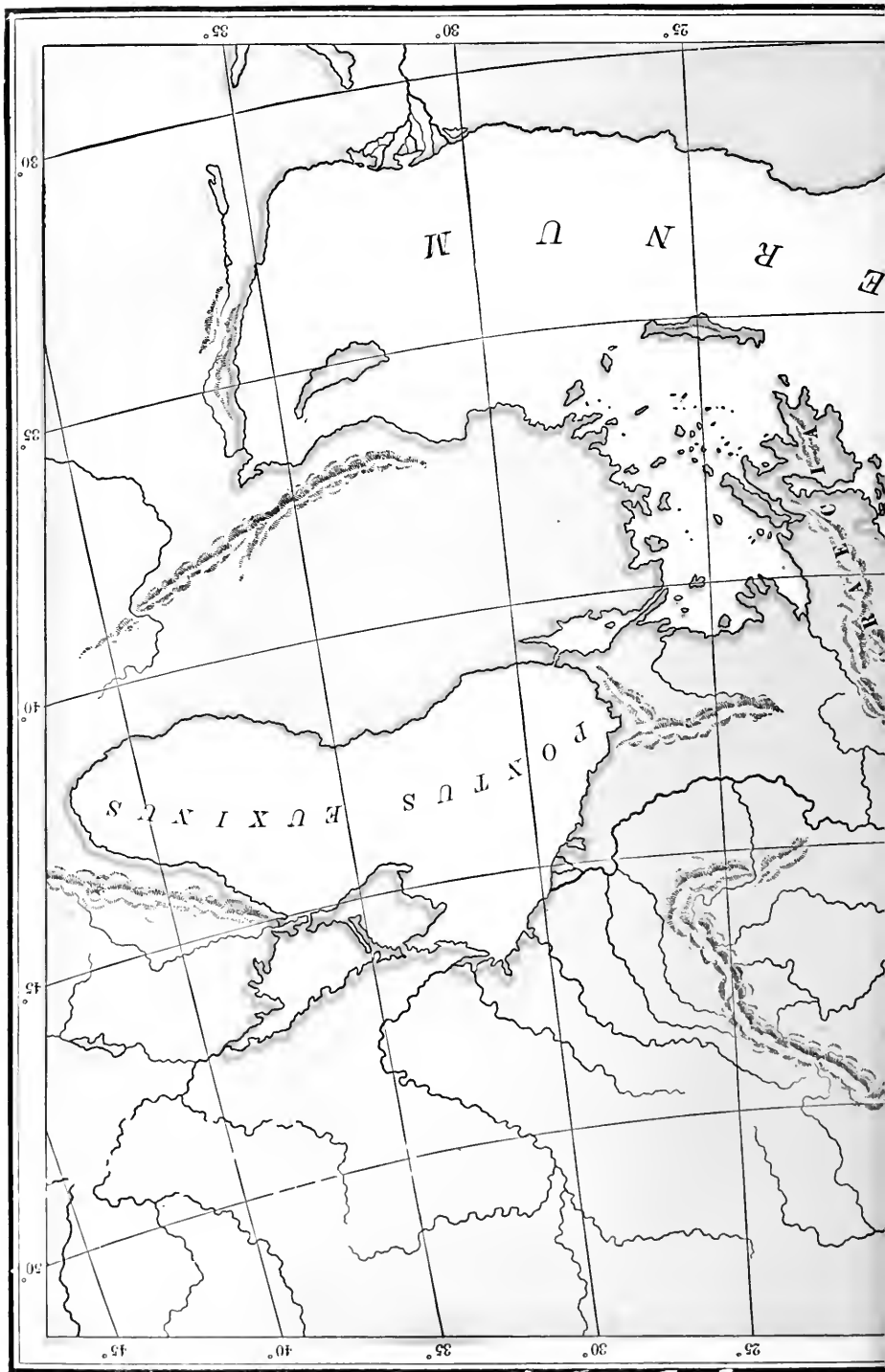
645. 1. Lātitudō castrōrum fūmō et īgnibus sīgnificāta est. 2. Ab eīs, quī iter cognōverant, ductī sumus. 3. Vicus nōn longius quīngentīs passibus abest. 4. Exercitus ex castris dē tertiā vigiliā, Labiēnō duce, ēgressus est. 5. Quis erat Labiēnus? 6. Sex annīs erit cōsul. 7. Pompēiō et Crassō cōsulibus, Germānī Rhēnum trānsiērunt. 8. Pompēius erat magnā auctōritāte.¹ 9. Hostēs et equitibus et peditibus ūtentur. 10. Nihil est hominibus cārius libēritāte. 11. Potes ita vīvere ut omnibus cārissimus sis. 12. Dīc mihi quis esset Pompēius. 13. Dīc mihi ubi Pompēius vīxerit. 14. Domus parva sub arboribus altissimīs stetit. 15. Tū nōn capiendus es. 16. Sī ante vesperum ad illud oppidum pervēneris, nōn capiēris.

646. 1. We know that the moon is smaller than the sun. 2. Go with me to the Forum at the fourth hour. 3. You will not be able to cross on-account-of² the width of the river. 4. Caesar wrote many things about the tribes of Gaul. 5. In a few months we shall read these things. 6. I am going-to-speak with the general in-behalf-of those whom he has conquered. 7. They went to the city for-the-purpose of (getting) supplies. 8. The lake is three feet deeper than the river. 9. Where was the standard of the tenth legion?

¹ Predicate ablative of description (531, 3).

² Propter.

THE
CITY OF
NEW YORK





THE
LIBRARY OF THE
MUSEUM OF MODERN ART
1900
1901
1902
1903
1904
1905
1906
1907
1908
1909
1910
1911
1912
1913
1914
1915
1916
1917
1918
1919
1920
1921
1922
1923
1924
1925
1926
1927
1928
1929
1930
1931
1932
1933
1934
1935
1936
1937
1938
1939
1940
1941
1942
1943
1944
1945
1946
1947
1948
1949
1950
1951
1952
1953
1954
1955
1956
1957
1958
1959
1960
1961
1962
1963
1964
1965
1966
1967
1968
1969
1970
1971
1972
1973
1974
1975
1976
1977
1978
1979
1980
1981
1982
1983
1984
1985
1986
1987
1988
1989
1990
1991
1992
1993
1994
1995
1996
1997
1998
1999
2000
2001
2002
2003
2004
2005
2006
2007
2008
2009
2010
2011
2012
2013
2014
2015
2016
2017
2018
2019
2020
2021
2022
2023
2024
2025

THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII

Gaius Julius Caesar, the Roman statesman, general, and writer, was born about 100 B.C. After an education in Rome and Greece and a short career in the army, he held the important political offices of the Roman republic, the last of which was the consulship for 59 B.C. At the close of this year he became governor of Gaul, a large territory now including France, Belgium, Switzerland, and northern Italy. During the following eight years (58-51) he subdued the tribes of western Gaul, and also invaded Germany and Britain. The history of his conquest was written by Caesar himself in his "Commentaries on the Gallic Wars."

The first war was fought with the Helvetii, or ancient Swiss, who in the early part of 58 B.C., with men, women, and children, had left their country to conquer the rest of Gaul. The Latin text following is Caesar's account simplified, and repeats in a connected way the paragraphs for reading as given in the preceding lessons.

THE NATIONS OF GAUL

I. Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam Celtae, quī linguā nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā lēgibusque inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī 5 sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Eādem dē causā¹ Helvētīī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs con- 10 tendunt, cum aut suīs finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

¹ *For the same reason.*

THE PLAN OF ORGETORIX, THE HELVETIAN

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx. Rēgnī cupiditatē inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent. Dixit perfacile esse tōtius Galliae imperiō potīri, cum
5 virtūte omnibus praestārent.

Facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētīi continentur: ūnā ex¹ parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et
10 Helvētiōs; tertiā² lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Prō³ multitudīne hominum et prō glōriā⁴ fortitūdinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL,⁵ in lātitudinem CLXXX⁶ patēbant.

¹ Ūnā ex parte, *on one side.*

² Tertiā (ex parte).

³ *Considering.*

⁴ *Renown (for).*

⁵ *Ducenta quadrāgintā.*

⁶ *Centum octōgintā.*

THE HELVETII PREPARE TO LEAVE THEIR COUNTRY

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritatē Orgetorīgis permōtī cōstituērunt omnēs rēs ad profectiōnem comparāre, atque cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiā cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is lēgātiōnem
5 ad cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, ducī Sēquanōrum, ut rēgnum in cīvitātē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō ut idem cōnārētur persuādet.

Illis probat id esse perfacile factū,¹ quod ipse suae civi-
10 tātis imperium obtentūrus esset. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem dant, et rēgnō occupāto sēsē tōtius Galliae potīri posse spērant.

¹ See 587, a.

THE TRIAL AND DEATH OF ORGETORIX

4. Ea rēs¹ Helvētiīs est ēnūntiāta. Mōribus² suis Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dīcere³ coēgērunt; damnātum⁴ poenam sequī oportēbat ut ignī cremārētur. Diē cōstitūtā causae dictiōnis⁵ Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat 5 condūxit; per eōs sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est. Helvētiī arbi-trantur ipsum sibi mortem cōnscīvisse.

¹ The conspiracy of Orgetorix, Dumnorix, and Casticus.

² According to their customs.

³ To plead his case (stand trial).

⁴ If condemned.

⁵ For the pleading.

THE HELVETII CONTINUE THEIR PREPARATIONS

5. Post ēius mortem tamen Helvētiī id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia numerō ad¹ duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt. Trium mēnsium frūmentum sibi quem- 5 que² domō efferre iubent. Persuādent finitimīs ut oppidīs suis vicīsque incēnsīs ūnā³ cum eīs proficīcantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant, sociōs⁴ recipiunt.

¹ Adv., about.

² Each man.

³ Together (in company).

⁴ As allies.

TWO ROUTES FROM HELVETIA

6. Erant itinera duo quibus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius, propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllīs 5 locīs vadō trānsitur.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus est Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sē persuāsūrōs esse exīstimābant, ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur, quod nōndum bonō animō¹ in² populum Rōmānum vidērentur.³ Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt⁴ quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.⁵

¹ *Well-disposed (of kindly feeling).*

² *Toward.*

³ *Seemed.*

⁴ *Appoint.*

⁵ *See 420.*

CAESAR GOES TO GENEVA

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, ab urbe¹ proficīscitur et quam² maximīs itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad³ Genavam pervenit. In prōvinciā quam² maximum militum 5 numerum cōnscribit (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna). Pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, quī dīcerent sē velle sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā 10 quod aliud iter habērent nūllum. Rogāvērunt ut id sibi facere licēret. Caesar hominēs inimicō animō,⁴ itinere per prōvinciam datō, temperātūrōs esse ā maleficiō nōn exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum⁵ militēs quōs imperāverat⁶ convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem⁷ sē 15 ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum. Diem cōstituit, quā reverterentur, sī quid vellent.

¹ *I.e., from Rome.*

² *See 492.*

³ *In (to) the vicinity of.*

⁴ *See 532.*

⁵ *Until.*

⁶ *Had levied.*

⁷ *Time.*

CAESAR CONSTRUCTS FORTIFICATIONS

8. Intereā, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dividit, mūrum fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō prae-

sidia dispōnit, castella mūnit, ut hostēs prohibēre posset, sī trānsire cōnārentur.

Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, dīcit sē nōn posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. 5 Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī,¹ nāvibus ratibusque atque vaōīs Rhodanum trānsire cōnātī sunt. Mūnitiōne et militum tēlis repulsi hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

¹ *Disappointed in (lit., cast down from).*

THE ROUTE THROUGH THE LAND OF THE SEQUANI

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā¹ Sēquanīs invītīs² propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum ipsī persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt. Dumnorīx apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat,³ et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorigis filiam 5 in mātirimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditate rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus⁴ studēbat, et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō conciliāre volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur.

¹ *By which.*

² See 565.

⁴ *Novīs rēbus, for a change of government (lit., for new things).*

³ **Plūrimum poterat**, *was very powerful (lit., was able very much).*

CAESAR REINFORCES HIS ARMY

10. Caesarī nūntiātur Helvētiōs habēre in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter facere in eam partem Galliae, quae nōn longē ā prōvinciā absit. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat prōvinciam hominēs bellicōsōs finitimōs¹ habitūram esse. Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat La- 5 biēnum lēgātum praeficit. Ipse in Ītaliā magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum

¹ *(As) neighbors, in apposition with hominēs.*

Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit, et, quā¹ proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit. In Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit, quī sunt primī extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum.

¹ *Where.*

THE HAEDUI AND OTHERS ASK FOR AID

II. Helvētiū iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs vāstābant. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium. Dīcunt paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrōs suōs vāstārī, liberōs in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbere.

Eōdem tempore sociī Haeduōrum Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. ¹⁰ Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Hīs rēbus adductus Caesar Helvētiīs bellum īferre cōstituit.

THE ROMANS DEFEAT PART OF THE HELVETII

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īfluit. Id Helvētiū ratibus ac lintribus iūctīs trānsibant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs partēs ¹ cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen ² ⁵ trādūxisse, quārtam partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs adgressus magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās ab-

¹ Primary obj. of trādūxisse.

² Secondary obj. of trādūxisse, depending on trā-.

didērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est.

CAESAR HAVING CROSSED THE ARAR IS DEFIED BY
THE ENEMY

13. Hōc proeliō factō,¹ ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōnsequī posset, Caesar pontem in Ararī facit atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōtī, cum² id, quod ipsī diēbus xx cōfēcerant,³ illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius 5 lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō cum Cassiō⁴ dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Is ita cum Caesare locūtus est: “ Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem Galliae ībunt atque ibi erunt ubi volueris; sīn eīs⁵ bellum īferēs, tenē¹⁰ memoriā vetus incommodum Rōmānōrum et prīstinam virtūtem Helvētiōrum. Ūnum pāgum adortus es cum eī, quī flūmen trānsierant, suīs auxiliū ferre nōn possent. Ob eam rem nōlī⁶ exīstimāre Rōmānōs Helvētiīs⁵ virtūte praestāre. Nōs magis virtūte quam īnsidiīs contendimus.¹⁵ Is locus ubi cōnstiterimus⁷ ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī nōmen capiet.”

¹ *Having been fought.*

² *Since.*

³ This refers to the crossing of the river.

⁴ The Roman army under command of the consul Cassius was

defeated by the Helvetians, 107 B.C.

⁵ See 457.

⁶ *Do not* (be unwilling), imperative of *nōlō*.

⁷ From *cōnsistō*, *take a stand* (in battle).

CAESAR'S REPLY

14. Hīs verbīs Caesar ita respondit: “ Eās rēs memoriā teneō, atque Helvētiōs sine causā iniūriam illō tempore populō Rōmānō intulisse intellegō. Recentium iniūriarum memoriā dēpōnere nōn possum, quod mē invītō iter per

prōvinciam temptāvistis, quod agrōs sociōrum nostrōrum vāstāvistis. Cum ¹ ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbīs dabuntur, ut ea quae polliceāminī vōs factūrōs esse intellegam, vōbīscum pācem faciam.”

5 Dīvicō respondit: “ Helvētiī obsidēs accipere nōn dare cōnsuērunt.”² Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

¹ *Although.*

² A contraction of *cōnsuēvērunt*, from *cōnsuēscō*.

A CAVALRY SKIRMISH

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coēgerat, praemittit, quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter 5 faciant. Quī cupidius¹ agmen īsecūtī aliēnō² locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.

Quō proeliō sublātī³ Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, fortius resistere 10 et nostrōs adorīrī coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, ut hostium agmen ā nostrō quīnque aut sex mīlia passuum abesset.

¹ *Too eagerly.*

² *Unfavorable.*

³ *Elated* (from *tollō*).

CAESAR'S PREPARATIONS FOR BATTLE

21.¹ Tandem ab explorātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsiūs castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis quī cognōscerent mīsīt.² Renūntiātum est ascēsum esse facilem. Tertiā vigiliā Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus summum iugum montis ascendere

¹ Chapters 16–20, giving an account of the treachery of Dumnorix, are omitted.

² Supply *virōs* as the antecedent of *quī* and object of *mīsīt*.

iubet. Ipse quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris perītissimus¹ habēbātur² et in exercitū Sullae et posteā in Crassi³ fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

5

¹ *Experienced in* (353). ² *Was regarded.* ³ *Supply exercitū.*

THE ERROR OF CONSIDIUS

22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur,¹ ipse² ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mille et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque ipsīus adventus nec Labiēnī cognitus esset,³ Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dicit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; 5 id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse.

Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem dūcit,¹ aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut⁴ erat eī praeceptum⁵ ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undīque ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, 10 monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō⁶ sibi renūntiāsse.⁷ Eō diē hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab 15 eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

¹ Supply a connective (*and*).

² I. e., Caesar.

³ The three subjunctive verbs are introduced by **cum**.

⁴ *As*.

⁵ *He had been ordered* (lit., orders had been given to him).

⁶ **Prō vīsō**, *as if seen*.

⁷ The object is the implied antecedent of **quod**.

CAESAR MARCHES TOWARD BIBRACTE FOR SUPPLIES

23. Posterō diē, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercitūi frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō, nōn amplius milibus pas-

suum XVIII aberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum ¹ existimavit; itaque iter ab Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte ² ire contendit. Ea res hostibus nuntiatur. Helveti, quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimabant, communitate consilio atque itinere converso nostris a ³ novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

¹ Supply *sibi esse, he ought to provide for.*

² Accusative (282).

³ *On.*

FURTHER PREPARATIONS FOR BATTLE

24. Postquam id vidit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem duxit equitatumque qui sustineret hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle medio ¹ triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum; sed in summo ² iugum duas legionem, quas in Gallia citeriore nuper conscripserat, et omnia auxilia conlocari, ³ ac totum montem hominibus compleri, et interea sarcinas in unum locum conferrari, et eum ⁴ ab his, qui in superiore acie erant, muniri iussit.

Helveti cum omnibus suis carris secuti, impedimenta in ¹⁰ unum locum contulerunt; ipsi confertissimam aciem, reiecto nostro equitatu, phalange facta, sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

¹ *The middle of.*

² *The top of.*

³ Notice that four infinitives depend on *iussit*.

⁴ Refers to *locum*.

THE BATTLE NEAR BIBRACTE, 58 B.C.

25. Caesar primum equis omnium ex conspectu remotis, ut spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos proelium commisit. Milites in loco superiore pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfrangerunt. Ea disiecta, gladiis in eos impetum fecerunt.

Cōnfertissimā aciē scūta Gallis magnō impedimentō ¹ erant, quod sinistrā impedītā commodē pugnāre nōn poterant. Multī etiam praeoptāvērunt scūtum manū ² ēmittere et nūdō ³ corpore pugnāre.

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī ad montem, quī aberat circiter 5 mille passūs, sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, soci Helvētiōrum nostrōs ab latere apertō ⁴ adgressī circumvenire cōnātī sunt; et id cōspicātī Helvētī, quī in montem sē recēperant, rūsus resistere et proelium renovāre coepērunt. 10

¹ *Were a hindrance* (lit., for a hindrance).

² Denoting separation.

³ *Unprotected.*

⁴ **Ab latere apertō**, on the exposed flank.

DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII

26. Ita diū atque ācritē pugnātum est.¹ Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī ² sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ³ ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ⁴ ab hōrā septimā ⁵ ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum ⁶ hostem 5 vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō ⁷ superiōre tēla coniciēbant. Tandem impedimentīs castrisque nostrī potītī sunt, et ibi Orgetorigis filiam atque ūnum ē filiīs cēpērunt. 10

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuērunt. Hī fūgērunt et in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum propter vulnera milītum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit. 15

¹ *They fought, or the battle raged* (see 627).

² *One division*, i.e., the Helvetii.

³ *The other*, i.e., the allies.

⁴ *Although.*

⁵ I.e., about one o'clock.

⁶ *Turned in flight.*

⁷ *Position.*

SURRENDER OF THE HELVETII

27. Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditōne ad eum mīserunt. Quī¹ cum eum in itinere convēnissent² sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent pācemque petissent, eōs suum adventum expectāre iussit. Eō³ postquam Caesar 5 pervēnit, obsidēs et arma poposcit. Dum ea cōferuntur,⁴ nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia VI aut timōre perterritī aut spē salutis inductī, prīmā⁵ nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contēderunt. Hōs reductōs in hostium numerō habuit;⁶ reliquōs 10 obsidibus armīsque trāditīs in dēditōnem accēpit.

¹ Quī cum = et cum eī, and when they.

² Had met.

³ Adv., there.

⁴ See 605 b.

⁵ Early in the night (lit., in the first part of the night).

⁶ Held (or treated) as enemies, a mild way of saying that he put them to death.

THE CONQUERED PEOPLE RETURN TO THEIR LAND

28. Helvētiōs sociōsque in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et, quod domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppīda vicōsque quōs incenderant restituere iussit. Id 5 maximē¹ fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētīi discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī prōvinciāe essent.

¹ Especially.

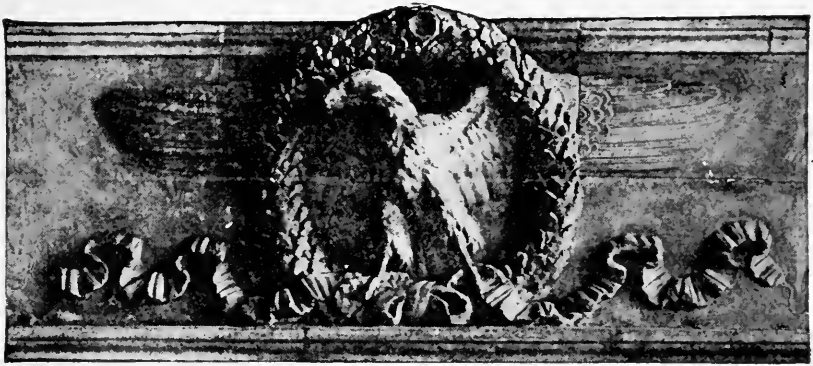
THE RECORDS OF THE HELVETII

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōfectae¹ et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulis nōminātīm ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus² domō

¹ Made out or written.

² Showing what number.

exisset eorum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.



SUPPLEMENTARY READING

STORIES AND FABLES

I. THE BAD APPLES

Carolus,¹ filius impigrī² agricolae, bonus erat puer sed malōs amīcōs amābat. Agricola igitur puerō calathum³ plēnum pōmōrum⁴ dat. Bona pōma continēbat calathus, pauca tamen erant putrida.⁵ Puer dōnum diligenter cūrat,⁵ sed mala pōma bona maculant,⁶ et mox cūncta sunt mala. Carolus maestus⁷ adversam fortūnam plōrat.⁸ Tum agricola filium ita monet: "Mala pōma bona maculant, certē malī amīcī bonum puerum maculābunt."

¹ *Charles.*

² *Active.*

³ *Calathus, -ī, basket.*

⁴ *Pōmum, -ī, apple.*

⁵ *Putridus, rotten.*

⁶ *Spot, spoil.*

⁷ *Sad.*

⁸ *Laments.*

2. THE BROKEN DIKE, I

Cimbrī¹ mīram terram habitant, nam ōceanus agrōs saepe inundat. Incolae fossīs tumulīsque² magnīs violentiam undārum³ coērcent; aliquandō⁴ tamen aqua claustra⁵ dē-turbat⁶ et terram vāstat. Forte⁷ erat tumulus nōn validus; iam appāret parva rīmā;⁸ mox via magna patēbit et undae terram superābunt. At perīculum videt puer parvus; statim dextrā⁹ rīmam implet¹⁰ coērcetque aquam.

¹ *The Cimbri, a people of Ger-many.*

² *Tumulus, -ī, mound.*

³ *Unda, -ae, wave.*

⁴ *Now and then.*

⁵ *Claustra, -ōrum, dike.*

⁶ *Tears down.*

⁷ *By chance.*

⁸ *Opening.*

⁹ *Supply manū.*

¹⁰ *Impleō, fill up.*

3. THE BROKEN DIKE, II

Diū puer praesidium servābat.¹ Iam rigēbant² membra, et parva dextra aquam semper coërcēbat. Postridiē agricolae locō appropinquant. Puer frigidus et moribundus³ dextrā tamen aquam coërcet. Saxīs⁴ tumulum celeriter cōfirmant, et līmō⁵ rīmam implent. Tum umerīs⁶ puerum⁵ sublevant⁷ recreantque cibō. Cimbrī tantam cōstantiam⁸ saepe commemorant, nārrantque suis liberīs puerī factum.⁹

¹ Kept.² Were stiffening.³ Dying.⁴ Saxum, -ī, stone.⁵ Līmus, -ī, mud.⁶ Umerus, -ī, shoulder.⁷ Raise.⁸ Steadfastness.⁹ Factum, -ī, deed.

4. THE YOUNG DOCTOR

Medicus¹ quondam,² longō labōre fessus, breve ōtium³ apud rūsticam villam⁴ amīcī petēbat. Intereā filiō cūram clientium committēbat. Iuvenis, labōre superbus,⁵ iocōsō⁶ comitī⁷ fortunam ita nārrat: “Pater mihi clientēs suōs committit.” “At,” respondet amīcus, “ubi pater urbem⁵ repetit, ex clientibus quot supererunt?”

¹ Doctor.² Once upon a time.³ Rest.⁴ Country house.⁵ Proud.⁶ Witty.⁷ Comes, comitis, companion.

5. THE LION'S SHARE

Societātem iungunt leō,¹ iuvenca, capra, ovis. Multam praedam capiunt, et in ūnum locum comportant. Tum in quattuor partēs praedam dīvidunt. Leō, autem, “Prīma pars,” inquit, “mea est; nam leō rēx animālium est. Et mea est pars secunda, propter magnōs meōs labōrēs. Ter-⁵tiam partem vindicō,² quoniam³ māior mihi quam vōbīs,

¹ Leō . . . ovis, lion, heifer, goat, sheep.² Claim (justly).³ Since.

animālibus imbēcillīs¹ et parvīs, famēs est. Quartam, dē-
nique, partem sī quis sibi arrogat,² mihi inimīcus erit.”

¹ *Weak.*² *Claims (unjustly).*

6. THE KID AND THE WOLF

Haedus¹ stāns in tēctō² domūs lupō³ praetereuntī⁴
maledixit. Cui lupus, “Nōn tū,” inquit, “sed tēctum mihi
maledicit.” Saepe locus et tempus hominēs timidōs audacēs
reddit.⁵

¹ *Kid.*³ *Lupus, -ī, wolf.*² *Tēctum, -ī, roof.*⁴ *Passing by.*⁵ *Makes.*

7. THE WOMAN AND THE HEN

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallinam,¹ quae eī cotīdiē
ōvum pariēbat² aureum. Mulier ita exīstimābat: “Mea
gallīna sine dubiō massam³ aurī intus⁴ cēlat;⁵ sī gallinam
occīdam, omne aurum statim possidēbō.” Itaque eam occīdit.
⁵ Sed nihil in eā repperit nisi quod⁶ in aliīs gallīnīs reperītur.
Māiōribus dīvitiīs⁷ inhiābat;⁸ minōrēs etiam perdidit.⁹

¹ *Hen.*⁵ *Conceals.*² *Laid.*⁶ *Nisi quod, except what.*³ *Quantity.*⁷ *Wealth.*⁴ *Inside.*⁸ *Longed for.*⁹ *Lost.*

8. THE FARMER AND HIS SONS

Agricola senex filiōs suōs convocāvit, qui interdum¹ dis-
cordābant.² Fascem³ virgulārum⁴ adferrī iubet. Tum filiōs
hortātur, ut hunc fascem frangerent. Hoc facere nōn po-
terant. Dēnique distribuit senex singulās⁵ virgulās, quās
⁵ celeriter frēgērunt.⁶ Tum exclāmāvit agricola: “Quam⁷
fīrma rēs est concordia,⁸ quam imbēcillīs⁹ discordia!”

¹ *Sometimes.*⁵ *One to each.*² *Disagreed.*⁶ *Perf. of frangō.*³ *Bundle.*⁷ *How.*⁴ *Virgula, -ae, small rod.*⁸ *Harmony.*⁹ *Weak.*

9. THE FOX AND THE GRAPES

Vulpēs¹ ad ūvam² subsiliēbat³ sed eam attingere⁴ nōn poterat. Tandem, dēfatīgāta⁵ inānī⁶ labōre, exclāmāvit: “At nunc etiam⁷ acerbae sunt, et eās edere nōlō.” Haec fābula docet multōs ea contemnere,⁸ quae assequī⁹ nōn possint.

5

¹ Fox.² Bunch of grapes.³ Leaped up.⁴ To reach.⁵ Exhausted.⁶ Vain.⁷ Nunc etiam, after all.⁸ Despise.⁹ Obtain.

10. THE MICE AND THE CAT

Mūrēs aliquandō¹ concilium habēbant, nam quandam fēlem magnopere timēbant. Multa cōnsilia prōposita sunt, sed mūribus nōn placēbant. Dēnique ūna ē mūribus ita locūta est: “Tintinnābulum² caudae³ istīus fēlis annectere⁴ necesse est, nam sonitus⁵ ēius nōs admonēbit, cum ea appropinquat, et fugere poterimus. Quis hoc facere vult?” Sed nēmō respondit, multī etenim⁶ in suādendō⁷ audācēs sunt, sed in periculō ipsō timidī.

¹ Once.² Bell.³ To the tail.⁴ To tie.⁵ Sound.⁶ For as you know. ⁷ Advice.

II. THE TRUMPETER

Tubicen¹ ab hostibus captus est. “Cūr mē,” inquit, “interficitis? nam inermis sum, neque² quidquam habeō praeter hanc tubam.” At hostēs, “Propter hoc ipsum,” inquirunt, “tē interficiēmus quod, ipse pugnandī imperitus,³ aliōs ad pugnam incitāre solēs.”⁴ Nōn solum maleficī sunt⁵ pūniendī,⁵ sed etiam eī quī aliōs ad male faciendum incitant.

¹ Trumpeter.² Neque = et nōn.³ Inexperienced.⁴ You are accustomed.⁵ To be punished.

12. THE FLATTERED CROW

Corvus,¹ quī caseum² rapuerat, in altam arborem subvolāvit.³ Vulpēcula,⁴ quae caseum appetēbat, corvum ita adloquitur: “Fōrmam tuam magnopere laudō et pennārum tuārum nitōrem.⁵ Pol!⁶ sī cantus tuus pulchritūdini⁷ tuae respondet,⁸ rēx avium es.” Tum corvus, laudibus vulpēculae inflātus,⁹ cantāre cōnātus est. Sed ē rostrō apertō dēlāpsus¹⁰ est caseus, quem vulpēcula statim dēvorāvit. Verba adulātōrum¹¹ sunt preti¹² parvī, ut haec fābula docet.

¹ Crow.² (Some) cheese.³ Flew up.⁴ Little fox.⁵ Brilliance.⁶ By Pollux.⁷ Beauty.⁸ Is equal to.⁹ Puffed up.¹⁰ Slipped out.¹¹ Of flatterers.¹² Of value.

13. THE DOG IN THE MANGER

Canis iacēbat¹ in praesēpe,² et bovēs latrandō³ ā pābulō arcēbat.⁴ Cui ūnus boum dīxit: “Quanta ista invidia⁵ est! Nōn pateris aliōs edere, et tū ipse edere nōn potes!”

¹ From iaceō.² Manger.³ By barking.⁴ Was keeping away.⁵ That jealousy (you feel).

14. TOWN VERSUS COUNTRY

Urbānus mūs, quī rūs ad frātrem īverat, cibum rūsticum aegrē¹ tulit atque edere nōluit. “Sī vīs,” inquit, “domum mēcum redire, sexcentās dēliciās habēbis.” Itaque illī, postquam tōtius diēi iter fēcērunt, mediā nocte parietem splendidī aedificī rīmā angustā ineunt. Tum mūs urbānus magnificās dapēs² adfert, et rūsticum in lectō purpureō³ locat. At subitō ingēns audītur clāmor; panduntur⁴ por-

¹ With difficulty.² Sumptuous (magnificās) banquet.³ Purple couch (lectō).⁴ Are opened.

tae; irruunt ¹ decem servī nigerrimī. Fugit perterritus mūs uterque,² et vix in perfugium sē recipit. Deinde rūsticus, “Sōlus,” inquit, “vītam urbānam carpe; ³ ego certē salūtem et glandēs ⁴ meās mālō.” ⁵

¹ *Rush in.*² *Each.*³ *Enjoy.*⁴ *Acorns.*⁵ *Prefer.*

15. CERES AND PROSERPINA

Prōserpina, Cereris filia, aliquandō in Siciliā ad urbem Hennam in agrīs flōrēs carpēbat,¹ lūdēbatque ² cum comitibus. Subitō Plūtō, īferōrum deus, cūius currum equī ātrī ³ vehēbant, ē terrā ēmersit.⁴ Deus Prōserpinam abdūxit, ut uxor sua et īferōrum rēgīna esset; clāmōrem puellae compressit.⁵ Māter, cum ignōrāret ubi filia esset, tōtum orbem terrārum frūstrā peragrāvit.

Tandem Cerēs ā Sōle, quī omnia cōspicit, audīvit quis filiam abdūxisset. Itaque statim iter ad Iovem flēxit et precibus animō ēius persuāsit, ut filia ā Plūtōne remitterētur. ¹⁰ Prōserpinae permīssum est, ut per partem annī apud mātrem, per partem alteram apud īferōs esset.

¹ *Was plucking.*² *Was playing.*³ *Black.*⁴ *Came forth.*⁵ *Suppressed.*

16. DAEDALUS AND ICARUS

Daedalus, artifex¹ perītissimus, ā Graeciā expulsus, ad Crētā fūgit. Ibi labyrinthum plēnum viārum flectuōsārum ² fēcit. Daedalus ipse in hunc labyrinthum ā rēge coniectus sibi et Īcarō filiō ālās cērā aptāvit,³ et āvolāvit. Dum Īcarus altius volat, cērā sōlis calōre calefactā,⁴ in ⁵ mare dēcidit, quod ex eō Īcarium mare est appellātum. Daedalus, autem, in Siciliam pervēnit.

¹ *Artist.*² *Winding.*³ *Fastened.*⁴ *Warmed.*

17. THESEUS

In mediō labyrinthō, quem Daedalus fēcit, mōnstrum, partim taurus, partim homō, habitābat. Mōnstrum autem rēx Crētae, saevus homō, captivīs saginābat.¹ Inter miserās victimās quondam erat Thēseus, rēgulus² Graecus. Ariadna, 5 tamen, filia rēgis, plēna misericordiae³ et amōris, iuvenī filum⁴ longum mīrumque gladium dat. Intrat igitur labyrinthum, filumque ad portam adligat. Itaque iuvenis, auxiliō filī, certam viam in vāstō labyrinthō servat. Tum gladiō mōnstrum facile occidit. Nec longa mora est. Thē- 10 seus cum filiā rēgis nāvī trāns lātum mare fugit.

¹ *Fed.*² *Prince.*³ *Pity.*⁴ *Thread.*

18. TANTALUS

Tantalus, Iovis filius, tam cārus fuit deīs, ut Iuppiter eī cōnsilia sua dīceret, eumque ad epulās¹ deōrum admitteret. At ille, quae ab Iove audīverat, cum mortālibus commūnicābat. Ob id crīmen² dīcitur apud īferōs in aquā conlo- 5 cātus esse, semperque sitīre.³ Nam, quotiēns⁴ haustum⁵ aquae sūmptūrus est, aqua recēdit. Tum etiā pōma super caput eīus pendent; sed, quotiēns ea dēcerpere⁶ cōnātur, rāmī ventō mōtī recēdunt.

¹ *Banquets.*² *Crime.*³ *To be thirsty.*⁴ *As often as.*⁵ *Draught.*⁶ *To pluck.*

19. HERCULES AND THE GOLDEN APPLES

Herculī imperātum est ut aurea pōma ex hortō Hesperidum auferret.¹ Hesperidēs erant nymphae pulcherrimae, quibus pōma ab Iūnōne commissa erant. Labor difficillimus erat, nam hortus mūrō ingentī circumdatus² erat,

¹ From *ab* + *ferō*.² *Surrounded.*

atque dracō,¹ cui centum erant capita, portam diligenter custodiēbat. Praetereā Herculēs ignorābat quō in locō hortus esset. Ā multīs mercātōribus quaesiverat ubi Hesperidēs habitārent, nihil tamen certum reperire potuerat. Tandem ad extrēmam partem orbis terrārum, quae est proxima 5 Ōceanō, pervēnit. Ibi stābat vir, nōmine Atlās, ingentī magnitudīne corporis, quī caelum umerīs suis sustinēbat, nē in terram dēcideret. Herculēs auxilium ab eō petiit. Atlās, quī erat pater Hesperidum, sē ad hortum itūrum et filiābus persuāsūrum dīxit, ut pōma trāderent. At postulāvit ut, 10 dum² ipse abesset, Herculēs caelum umerīs sustinēret. Filiae diū patrī pārēre nōlēbant. Atlās tamen eīs persuāsit et pōma ad Herculem rettulit.³

¹ *Dragon.*² *While.*³ From *re* + *ferō*.

20. THE GODS OF THE GAULS

Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt.¹ Hūius sunt plūrima simulācra;² hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt,³ hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs⁴ pecūniae et mercātūrās⁵ habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē 5 hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs⁶ dēpellere, Minervam operum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium⁷ tenēre, Mārtem bella regere.

¹ *Worship.*⁵ *Pursuits of trade.*² *Images.*⁶ *Diseases.*³ *Call.*⁴ *Gain.*⁷ *Of the gods.*

21. THE TOUCH OF GOLD, I

Midās, rēx Phrygiae, quod Bacchō¹ placuerat, ēgregiō² mūnere³ ā deō dōnātus est. “Dēlige, rēx magne,” inquit

¹ *Bacchus.*² *Extraordinary.*³ *Gift (abl.).*

deus, " id quod maximē cupis; hoc tibi libenter dabō." Tum vir avārus mīrum dōnum impetrāvit, omnia enim, quae suō corpore tangēbat, in aurum mūtāta sunt. Prōtinus¹ rēx laetus² rēgiam domum percurrēbat, manūque vāsa,³ mēnsās, 5 omnia tangēbat. Inde ubi nihil lignī⁴ aut argentī in aedibus⁵ manēbat, grātiās⁶ prō tantō beneficiō Bacchō persolvit.⁷

¹ *Forthwith.*² *Joyful.*³ *Dishes.*⁴ *Wood (gen.).*⁵ *House.*⁶ *Thanks.*⁷ *Rendered.*

22. THE TOUCH OF GOLD, II

Tandem labōre fessus cēnam¹ poscit, avidisque² oculīs dapēs³ splendidās lūstrat.⁴ Mox tamen ubi piscem⁵ ad ōs admovet, cibus in aurum statim mūtātus est; rēx igitur, 5 cūius in faucibus⁶ rigida haerēbat massa,⁷ vīnum poscit; idem ēvenit.⁸ Tandem rēx ēsuriēns,⁹ quod nihil nec edēbat, nec bibēbat¹⁰ complūribus diēbus, maximīs precibus¹¹ Bacchum ōrat. Inde cum rīsu¹² deus fātāle¹³ dōnum āmoveret.

¹ *Dinner.*² *Eager.*³ *Feast.*⁴ *Surveys.*⁵ *Fish.*⁶ *Throat.*⁷ *Lump.*⁸ *Happens.*⁹ *Suffering hunger.*¹⁰ *Drank.*¹¹ *Prayers.*¹² *Laughter.*¹³ *Fated.*

23. SPARTAN VALOR

Rēx Spartānus dixit: " Meī cīvēs numquam quaesivērunt, ' Quot sunt hostēs? ' sed ' Ubi sunt? ' "

Ante pugnam Persēs¹ hostis Spartānō dixit: " Sōlem propter iaculōrum multitudīnem et sagittārum nōn vidēbitis." " In umbrā igitur," inquit, " pugnābimus."

¹ *A Persian.*

24. THE WALLS OF SPARTA

Quīdam ex Spartānō¹ quaesīvit: “Cūr mūrōs nōn habet Sparta?” Spartānus respondit: “Nostra urbs mūrōs optimōs habet, incolārum fortium virtūtem.”

¹ *A Spartan.*

25. THE ART OF MEMORY

Themistoclēs¹ fuit vir magnī ingenī.² Ōlim ērudītus³ homō ad eum vēnit artemque memoriae eum docēre voluit. “Haec ars,” inquit, “facere potest ut omnia memoriā teneās.” Themistoclēs autem, “Magis,” inquit, “mihi tū placēbis, sī mē oblivīscī⁴ multa docueris.”

5

¹ An Athenian statesman.

³ *Learned.*

² *Ability.*

⁴ *To forget.*

26. THE FOUNDING OF ROME

Antīquīs temporibus Latīnus in Ītaliā rēgnāvit. Sub hōc rēge Trōia in Asiā ā Graecīs expugnāta est, et Aenēās cum multīs sociīs in Ītaliā vēnit. Ibi rēx Latīnus eum benignē¹ recēpit, atque eī filiam Lāvīniam in mātirimōnium dedit. Aenēās urbem condidit, quam ā nōmine uxōris Lāvīnium⁵ appellāvit. Ascanius, filius Aenēae, post mortem patris rēgnum in alium locum trānstulit. Urbs, quam condidit, Alba Longa appellāta est.

Posteā Numitor in Albā rēgnāvit. Rhēae Silviae, filiae Numitōris, erant duo filiī, Rōmulus et Remus. Amūlius¹⁰ rēgnum occupāvit et puerōs in Tiberim abicī iussit. Sed Tiberis ultrā rīpās flūxit et puerōs in siccō² reliquit. Lupa puerōs cūrāvīsse dīcitur, donec³ pastor eōs sustulit⁴ et uxōrī dedit. Sic frātrēs inter pastōrēs educātī sunt. Forte comperērunt⁵ quis ipsōrum avus esset. Amūlium interfē-¹⁵

¹ *Kindly.*

³ *Until.*

² *Dry ground.*

⁴ *Took.*

⁵ *Learned.*

cērunt et Numitōrī avō rēgnum restituērunt.¹ Tum in monte prope Tiberim condidērunt urbem, quam Rōmulus ā nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit.

¹ *Restored.*

27. THE SEVEN ROMAN KINGS

Rōmulus, prīmus rēx Rōmae, Sabīnōs vīcit, et eōs ad populum Rōmānum adiūnxit. Centum senātōrēs lēgit, eōsque cum¹ ob aetātem² tum³ ob reverentiam eīs dēbitam patrēs appellāvit; populum in trīgintā cūriās⁴ distribuit. Annōs 5 trīgintā septem rēgnāvit.

Secundus rēx erat Numa Pompilius. Nullum bellum gessit; tamen cīvitatī prōfuit.⁵ Nam lēgēs bonās dedit, et sacra⁶ plūrima īstituit. Annum in decem mensēs dēscripsit.

Numae successit Tullus Hostilius, quī bellum Albānīs 10 intulit. Hoc bellum Horātiōrum et Cūriātiōrum certāmine finītum est.

Post hunc Ancus Mārcius rēgnāvit, vir magnā iūstitiā. Latīnōs superāvit, urbem ampliāvit,⁷ et nova moenia⁸ fēcit.

Tarquinius Prīscus ex Etrūriā Rōmam dēmigrāvit,⁹ et 15 amīcitiā Ancī rēgis petiit, quī eum filiōrum suōrum tūtōrem¹⁰ reliquit. Tum per īnsidiās rēgnum occupāvit. Senātōribus, quōs Rōmulus creāverat, centum aliōs addidit. Cloācās¹¹ et mūrōs fēcit, templum Iovī incohāvit.¹² Multa bella gessit, prīmusque triumphāns urbem intrāvit. Ā filiīs 20 Ancī interfectus est.

Servius Tullius, filiūs captivāe, erat rēx sextus. Montēs trēs urbī adiūnxit. Prīmus omnium cēnsū ordināvit.¹³

¹ *Not only.*

² *Age.*

³ *But also.*

⁴ *Wards.*

⁵ *Benefited.*

⁶ *Sacred rites.*

⁷ *Enlarged.*

⁸ *Walls.*

⁹ *Removed.*

¹⁰ *Guardian.*

¹¹ *Sewers.*

¹² *Commenced.*

¹³ *Arranged.*

Sub eō Rōma habuit octōgintā tria mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum eīs quī in agrīs erant. Servius ā filiā suā, Tulliā, et Tarquiniō Superbō interfectus est.

Septimus rēx, Tarquinius Superbus, erat filius Tarquinī Prīscī. Propter multās iniūriās Lūcius Brūtus et aliī cīvēs 5 populō persuāsērunt ut eum ex urbe expelleret et portās clauderet. Rēx fūgit cum uxōre et liberīs suīs.

Ita Rōmae rēgnātum est¹ per septem rēgēs, annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā trēs.

¹ *The throne was held.*

28. ROMULUS AND REMUS

Dum Rōmulus mūrōs Rōmae multā cum diligentīā aedificat, Remus parvōs adhuc¹ mūrōs saepe trānsilit.² “Cārissime frāter,” inquit, “quam magnificī sunt mūrī tuī! inimicōs tuōs ēgregiē³ arcent!”⁴ Rōmulus, autem, plēnus irae, Remum occīdit. Tum fēliciter mūrōs cōnficit. 5

¹ *As yet.*

² *Leaps over.*

³ *Finely.*

⁴ *Keep off.*

29. THE FAITHLESS TARPE'IA

Cum Sabīnī Rōmae appropinquārent, ut urbem cape-
rent, Tarpēiam puellam Rōmānam rogāvērunt, ut viam in
arcem¹ mōnstrāret.² Eī³ permīsērunt ut mūnus⁴ sibi pos-
ceret. Illa petiit, ut sibi darent, quod in sinistrīs manibus
gererent, ānulōs⁵ aureōs et armillās⁶ significāns. At hostēs, 5
in arcem ab eā perductī, scūtīs Tarpēiam obruērunt;⁷ nam
et⁸ ea in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant.

¹ *Citadel.*

² *Show.*

³ *Dative.*

⁴ *Reward.*

⁵ *Rings.*

⁶ *Bracclets.*

⁷ *Overwhelmed.*

⁸ *Also.*

30. HORATIUS AT THE BRIDGE

Tarquinius Superbus ā Rōmānīs expulsus auxilium Porsenae, rēgis Etrūscōrum, petīvit. Mox Porsena magnō cum exercitū Rōmam oppugnāvit, et cīvēs in periculō erant. Rōmānī ex agrīs in urbem dēmigrant et summō studiō eam 5 mūniunt. Pōns hostibus iter dare poterat, sed virtūs ūnūs militis urbem ā periculō liberāvit. Hic vir, Horātius nōmine, positus in statiōne ¹ pontis, hostēs ūnum collem capere et ad pontem venīre videt. Militēs fugiunt, praeter Horātium et duōs sociōs. Etrūscī appropinquant, et nunc in 10 ponte sunt. Horātius pontem rescindī ā tergō ² iubet. Parvā parte pontis relictā, sociōs suōs discēdere iubet. Sōlus impetum hostium sustinet. Dēnique pōns in Tiberim dēcidit.³ Tum fortis vir armātus in flūmen dēsilit. Hostēs in eum multa tēla iaciunt, sed incolumis ⁴ ad suōs trānat.⁵

¹ Stationed as a guard.³ Falls down.² **Ā tergō**, behind him (as he faces the enemy).⁴ Safe.⁵ Swims across.

31. CINCINNATUS

Cincinnātus agricola Rōmānus fuit, quī patriam amāvit. Cum Rōma in periculō esset, cīvēs ab agrō eum vocāvērunt, ut esset dictātor et eōs ab hostibus dēfenderet. Hostibus victīs, ab omnibus cīvibus laudātus est, sed ad 5 agrum revertit.

32. A LESSON IN DIGNITY

Quīntus Fabius, iam senex, filiō suō cōsulī lēgātus fuit. Filius obviam ¹ patrī prōgressus est, duodecim lictōribus prō ² mōre antecēdentibus. Senex equō vehēbātur,³ et cōnsule appropinquante nōn dēscendit. Iam ex lictōribus ūn- 5 decim, verēcundiā ⁴ paternae māiestātis, tacitī praeterierant.

¹ To meet, used w. dative.³ Was borne.² According to.⁴ Out of respect for.

Cōsul proximum ¹ lictōrem iussit dīcere Fabiō patri: “ Ex equō dēscende.” Pater tum dēsiliēns, “ Nōn ego, fili,” ² inquit, “ tuum imperium contempsī, sed experīrī voluī, num ³ scīrēs cōnsulem tē esse.”

¹ *Last.*

² *Vocative.*

³ *Whether.*

33. CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS

Tiberius Gracchus et Gāius Gracchus erant filiī Cornēliae, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī ¹ filiae. Cornēlia erat mulier sapien-
tissima et māter optima. Cum Campāna ² fēmina ōrnā-
menta sua, quae pulcherrima erant, eī ostenderet, Cornēlia
duōs filiōs vocāvit. “ Haec,” inquit, “ mea ōrnāmenta sunt.” ³

¹ Scipio Africanus, the con- ² *A Campanian.*
queror of Hannibal.

34. REGULUS KEEPS HIS WORD

Prīmō bellō Pūnicō Rēgulus, dux Rōmānus, captus ā
Poenis, ¹ dē captīvīs commūtandīs Rōmam missus est. Is,
cum Carthāgine ² abiret, iūrāvit sē eō ³ reditūrum nisi suī
cīvēs condiciōnēs ⁴ fēcissent. At ille in senātū Rōmānō
captīvōs nōn esse commūtandōs dēclārāvit. Deinde, cum ⁵
propinquī et amīcī eum retinēre cōnārentur, ex urbe dēcessit;
ad supplicium redire māluit, ⁶ quam ⁷ fidem hostī datam
fallere.⁷

¹ *The Carthaginians.*

² *From Carthage.*

³ *Adv., there.*

⁴ *Terms (of agreement).*

⁵ *Preferred.*

⁶ *Rather than.*

⁷ *To break.*

35. THE ROMAN ARMY FIGHTS A SERPENT

Prīmō bellō Pūnicō Rōmānī castra aliquandō ¹ in Āfricā
apud Bagradam flūmen pōnunt; multisque proeliis cōpiās

¹ *Once upon a time.*

hostium ēgregiā ¹ militum virtūte superant. Sed, paucīs post diēbus, appāret serpēns ingentis magnitudinis; et exercitum flūminis ūsū prohibet. Militēs prīmō ex vāllō sagittīs tēlīsque serpentem petunt; deinde magnam manum Rēgulus
 5 cōsul ēdūcit. Serpēns multōs ingentī ōre corripit; ² multōs caudae volūminibus ³ ēlīdit; ⁴ reliquī perterritī ad castra celeriter fugiunt. Proximō diē tōtus exercitus in campum ēdūcitur. Diū et ācriter pugnātur. Tandem ballistās ⁵ et catapultās ⁶ admovent; crēbrīs lapidum vulneribus serpēns
 10 interficitur. Sanguis autem mōnstri vīcīnum flūmen imbuit.⁷ Corium,⁸ longum pedēs centum et vīgintī, Rōmam mittunt. Cīvēs corium in templō pōnunt.

¹ *Extraordinary.*² *Seizes.*³ *Coils.*⁴ *Crushes.*⁵ *Hurling engines.*⁶ *Catapults.*⁷ *Dyes.*⁸ *The skin.*

36. HANNIBAL INFORMS THE KING OF HIS OATH

Hannibal, cum rēgī Poenōrum multa dē fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāvisset, hoc adiūnxit: “ Pater meus, Hamilcar, puerulō ¹ mē nōn amplius novem annōs nātō,² in Hispāniam imperātor proficiscēns Carthāgine Iovī hostiās ³
 5 immolābat.⁴ Dum hoc facit, ā mē quaesivit vellemne sēcum in castra proficiscī. Id cum libenter audīvissem, tum ille, ‘ Faciam,’ ⁵ inquit, ‘ si mihi fidem, quam postulō, dederis.’ Simul mē ad āram ⁶ addūxit, eamque tenentem, iūrāre iussit, numquam mē in amicitīā cum Rōmānīs futūrum esse. Id
 10 iūsiūrandum,⁷ patrī datum, usque ad hanc diem ita cōn-servāvī, ut nēminī dubium esse dēbeat, quīn ⁸ eādem mente sim futūrus.”

¹ *Little boy.*² *Old (lit., born).*³ *Sacrifices.*⁴ *Was offering.*⁵ *Will grant (it).*⁶ *Altar.*⁷ *Oath.*⁸ *That.*

37. HANNIBAL'S JEST

Antiochus,¹ quī bellum cum Rōmānīs gerere parābat, ostendēbat Hannibalī in campō² cōpiās ingentēs, quās comparāverat, convertēbatque³ exercitum īnsignibus argenteīs et aureīs micantem; ⁴ indūcēbat etiam currūs⁵ cum falcibus,⁶ elephantōs cum turribus, equitēs cum armīs splendidis. Tum ⁵ rēx Hannibalem aspicit⁷ et dicit: "Satisne sunt Rōmānīs haec omnia?" Hannibal, quī ignāvōs⁸ Antiochī militēs dēspiciēbat,⁹ respondet: "Satis sine dubiō sunt Rōmānīs haec omnia, etiam sī avārissimī sunt."

¹ *Anti'ochus*, king of Syria.⁴ *Glittering*.⁷ *Looks at*.² *A plain*.⁵ *Chariots*.⁸ *Inactive*.³ *And was maneuvering*.⁶ *Scythes*.⁹ *Despised*.

38. "NOT AT HOME"

Nāsīca et Ennius poēta¹ amīcī erant. Ōlim Nāsīca ad Ennium vēnit et ad portam dē eō quaesīvit; ancilla² "Ennius," inquit, "domī nōn est." Vidēbat autem Ennium Nāsīca; nihil tamen dixit, sed domum revertit. Paucīs post diēbus ad Nāsīcam vēnit Ennius. Huic ipse Nāsīca exclāmāvit, "Nōn sum domī." Tum Ennius: "Quid? Nōnne cognōscō vōcem tuam?" Nāsīca autem respondit: "Homō es impudēns; ego ancillae tuae crēdidī: tū nōn mihi crēdis ipsī."

¹ Ennius was an early Roman poet.² *Maid*.

39. TWO OF CICERO'S JOKES

Cicerō, Rōmānōrum ōrātōrum clārissimus, Lentulum¹ generum suum, exiguae² statūrae hominem, longō gladiō accinctum³ vīdit. "Quis generum meum," inquit, "ad gladium adligāvit?"⁴

¹ Lentulus was Cicero's son-in-law (*gener*).² *Small*.³ *Girded*.⁴ *Tied*.

Fēmina quaedam, iūniōrem sē esse simulāns¹ quam erat, dictitābat² sē trīgintā tantum³ annōs habēre;⁴ cui Cicerō dixit: “Vērū est, nam hoc vīgintī annōs audiō.”

¹ *Pretending.*

² *Kept saying.*

³ *Only.*

⁴ *Was.*

40. A LETTER OF CICERO

CICERONIS EPISTULA AD TERENTIAM UXOREM.¹

ANTE CHRISTUM XLVI.

Sī valēs,² bene est, ego valeō. Nōs neque dē Caesaris adventū neque dē epistulis, quās Philotīmus habēre dīcitur, quidquam certī habēmus. Sī quid erit certī, faciam tē statim certiōrem. Fac³ ut valētūdinem⁴ tuam cūrēs. Valē.⁵

¹ (*His*) *wife.*

³ *Be sure.*

² *You are well.*

⁴ *Health.*

⁵ *Goodbye.*

41. ON THE WAY TO SCHOOL

SILVIUS. IŌANNĒS

SI. Cūr adeō curris, Iōannēs?

IO. “Cūr lepus,” ut aiunt, “prō canibus?”

SI. Quid hoc prōverbium est?

IO. Quia, nisi adfuerō in tempore ante recitātum cata-
5 logum, āctum est dē pelle meā.

SI. Hāc quidem ex parte nihil est periculī. Modo prae-
terita est quīnta hōra. Īnspecte hōrologium; manus nōndum
tetigit pūctum, quod horam ab hōrā aequīs spatiīs dīvidit.

IO. At ego vix habēō fidem hōrologiis.

10 SI. At mihi fide, quī campānae vōcem audīvī.

IO. Quid loquēbātur?

SI. Hōram esse quīntam.

IO. Sed est et aliud, unde magis etiam timeam. Red-

denda est memoriter hesternā lēctiō, satis longa. Vereor
ut possim. 15

SI. Commūne perīculum nārrās; nam et ipse vix satis
teneō.

IO. Et nōstī saevitiā magistrī. Omnis illī culpa capi-
tālīs est. Nec magis parcit nōbīs quam sī corium esset
būbulum. 20

SI. Vērum is nōn aderit in lūdō.

IO. Quem igitur in suō locō cōstituit?

SI. Cornēlium.

IO. Vae nostrō coriō! Is Orbiliō plāgōsior est.

SI. Vērum dīcis; et ideō nōn rārō illius bracchiō precātus 25
sum perniciem.

SI. Reddāmus inter nōs lēctiōnem, alterō recitante,
alterō librum inspiciente.

IO. Pulchrē monēs.

SI. Fac praesentī sīs animō; nam metus nocet memoriae. 30

IO. Facile dēpōnerem pavōrem, sī nōn adesset perīculum.
At in tantō discrīmine quis possit esse sēcūrus animō?

NOTES

One of the *Colloquies* of Erasmus (A. D. 1466-1536). The two boys, John and Silvius, are on the way to school between five and six in the morning.

LINE

1. **Adeō**, so. John overtakes Silvius, who is walking.
2. **Lepus**, hare (nom.); supply **currit**.
4. **Quia**, because. **Recitātum catalogum**, the calling of the roll.
5. **Actum . . . meā**, it is all up with my skin.
6. **Quidem**, at least. **Parte**, score. **Modo**, just.
7. **Quinta**: Erasmus reckons time in the modern way; hence five o'clock. **Inspice**, look at. **Hōrologium**, clock.
8. **Pūctum**, point.
10. **Fide**, trust (imper.). **Campānae**, of the bell.
13. **Unde**, whence, from which. **Reddenda**, to be repeated.
14. **Lēctiō**, lesson.
15. **Ut possim**, that I cannot.
16. **Commūne**, common (to both).

18. **Nōstī**, *you know*. **Saevitiam**, *cruelty*. **Culpa**, *fault, sin*. **Capitālis**, *capital, deadly*.
19. **Parcit**, *saves*. **Corium**, *skin, hide*.
20. **Būbulum**, *of an ox*.
21. **Vērum**, *but*. **Lūdō**, *school*.
24. **Vae**, *woe*. **Plāgōsior**, *more fond of whipping than Orbilius, the severe schoolmaster of Horace*.
25. **Vērum**, *truth*. **Ideō**, *therefore*. **Rārō**, *seldom*. **Bracchiō . . . perniciem**, *I have prayed for ruin to his arm*.
27. **Reddāmus**, *let us repeat*.
30. **Fac . . . animō**, *take care to show presence of mind*. **Metus**, *fear*.
31. **Pavōrem**, *dread*.
32. **Discrimine**, *danger*. **Sēcūrus**, *untroubled*.



LOOKING TOWARD THE PALATINE HILL FROM THE FORUM

ADDITIONAL SUPPLEMENTARY READING

Suggested by the New York State Syllabus of 1917

PERSEUS

Acrisius, king of Argos, having been warned by the oracle that he would be slain by his grandson, placed his daughter Danae and her infant son Perseus in an ark, which the waves of the sea carried to the island Seriphos. Here they were rescued and taken to Polydectes, king of the island, in whose court Perseus grew to manhood. The king, who sought in vain to win the love of Danae, shut her up in prison, saying that she should not be released until Perseus brought to him the head of the Gorgon Medusa. This difficult task he accomplished, as the story relates, and on his return home saved the beautiful Andromeda from a sea-monster. When Perseus afterwards reached the city of his grandfather Acrisius, the latter fled in terror, but was unable to avert the fulfillment of fate, for at the games held in Thessaly he was accidentally struck by a discus thrown by Perseus.

The Latin text following is one of Ritchie's "Fabulae Faciles."

THE ARK

1. Haec narrantur ā poētīs dē Perseō. Perseus filius erat Iovis, maximī deōrum; avus ēius Acrisius appellābatur. Acrisius volēbat Perseum nepōtem¹ suum necāre; nam propter ōrāculum puerum timēbat. Comprehendit igitur Perseum adhūc infantem, et cum mātrem in arcā lignēā inclūsit. Tum 5 arcam ipsam in mare coniēcit. Danaē, Perseī mātrem, magnopere territa est; tempestās enim magna mare turbābat. Perseus autem in sinū mātrem dormiēbat.

¹ For notes and special vocabulary, see p. 260.

JUPITER SAVES HIS SON

2. Iuppiter tamen haec omnia vīdit, et filium suum servāre
 10 cōstituit. Tranquillum igitur fēcit mare, et arcam ad īnsulam
 Serīphum perdūxit. Hūius īnsulae Polydectēs tum rēx erat.
 Postquam arca ad lītus adpulsa est, Danaē in harēnā quiētem
 capiēbat. Post breve tempus ā piscātōre quōdam reperta est
 et ad domum rēgis Polydectis adducta est. Ille mātrem et
 15 puerum benignē excēpit, et eīs sēdem tūtā in finibus suis dedit.
 Danaē hoc dōnum libenter accēpit, et prō tantō beneficiō rēgī
 grātiās ēgit.

PERSEUS IS SENT ON HIS TRAVELS

3. Perseus igitur multōs annōs ibi habitābat, et cum mātrem
 suā vītā beātā agēbat. At Polydectēs Danaēn magnopere
 20 amābat, atque eam in mātrimōnium dūcere volēbat. Hoc
 tamen cōsiliū Perseō minimē grātum erat. Polydectēs
 igitur Perseum dīmittere cōstituit. Tum iuvenem ad sē
 vocāvit et haec dīxit: "Turpe est hanc ignāvā vītā agere;
 iam dūdum tū adulēscēns es. Quō ūsque hīc manēbis? Tem-
 25 pus est arma capere et virtūtem praestāre. Hinc abī, et caput
 Medūsae mihi refer."

PERSEUS GETS HIS OUTFIT

4. Perseus ubi haec audīvit, ex īnsulā discessit, et, postquam
 ad continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaesīvit. Diū frūstrā
 quaerēbat, nam nātūram locī ignōrābat. Tandem Apollō et
 30 Minerva viam dēmōstrāvērunt. Prīmum ad Graeās, sorōrēs
 Medūsae, pervēnit. Ab hīs tālāria et galeam magicam accēpit.
 Apollō autem et Minerva falcem et speculum dedērunt. Tum,
 postquam tālāria pedibus induit, in āera ascendit. Diū per
 āera volābat; tandem tamen ad eum locum vēnit ubi Medūsa
 35 cum cēterīs Gorgonibus habitābat. Gorgonēs autem mōnstra
 erant speciē horribilī; capita enim eārum anguibus omnīnō
 contēcta erant. Manūs etiā ex aere factae erant.

THE GORGON'S HEAD

5. Rēs difficillima erat caput Gorgonis abscīdere; ēius enim cōspectū hominēs in saxum vertēbantur. Propter hanc causam Minerva speculum Perseō dederat. Ille igitur tergum ⁴⁰ vertit, et in speculum īspiciēbat; hōc modō ad locum vēnit ubi Medūsa dormiēbat. Tum falce suā caput ēius ūnō ictū abscīdit. Cēterae Gorgonēs statim ē somnō excitātae sunt, et, ubi rem vidērunt, irā commōtae sunt. Arma rapuērunt, et Perseum occīdere volēbant. Ille autem dum fugit, galeam magicam ⁴⁵ induit; et, ubi hoc fēcit, statim ē cōspectū eārum ēvāsit.

THE SEA-SERPENT

6. Post haec Perseus in finēs Aethiopum vēnit. Ibi Cēpheus quīdam illō tempore rēgnābat. Hic Neptūnum, maris deum, ōlim offenderat; Neptūnus autem mōnstrum saevissimum mīserat. Hoc cotīdiē ē marī veniēbat et hominēs dēvorābat. ⁵⁰ Ob hanc causam pavor animōs omnium occupāverat. Cēpheus igitur ōrāculum deī Hammōnis cōsultuit, atque ā deō iussus est filiam mōnstrō trādere. Ēius autem filia, nōmine Andromeda, virgō fōrmōsissima erat. Cēpheus ubi haec audīvit, magnum dolōrem percēpit. Volēbat tamen cīvēs suōs ē tantō periculō ⁵⁵ extrahere, atque ob eam causam imperāta Hammōnis facere cōstituit.

A HUMAN SACRIFICE

7. Tum rēx diem certam dīxit et omnia parāvit. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Andromeda ad lītus dēducta est, et in cōspectū omnium ad rūpem adligāta est. Omnēs fātum ēius dēplōrābant, ⁶⁰ nec lacrimās tenēbant. At subitō, dum mōnstrum exspectant, Perseus accurrit; et, ubi lacrimās vidit, causam dolōris quaerit. Illī rem tōtam expōnunt et puellam dēmōnstrant. Dum haec geruntur, fremitus terribilis audītur; simul mōnstrum horribilī speciē procul cōspicitur. Ēius cōspectus timōrem maximum ⁶⁵

omnibus iniēcit. Mōnstrum magnā celeritāte ad lītus contendit, iamque ad locum adpropinquābat ubi puella stābat.

THE RESCUE

8. At Perseus, ubi haec vīdit, gladium suum ēdūxit, et, postquam tālāria induit, in āera sublātus est. Tum dēsUPER in
70 mōnstrum impetum subitō fēcit, et gladiō suō collum ēius graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum horribilem ēdidit, et sine morā tōtum corpus in aquam mersit. Perseus dum circum lītus volat, reditum ēius exspectābat. Mare autem intereā undique sanguine inficitur. Post breve
75 tempus bēlua rūrsus caput sustulit; mox tamen ā Perseō ictū graviōre vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē in undās mersit, neque postea vīsa est.

THE REWARD OF VALOR

9. Perseus postquam ad lītus dēscendit, prīmum tālāria exiit; tum ad rūpem vēnit ubi Andromeda vīncta erat. Ea autem
80 omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat, et, ubi Perseus adiit, terrōre paene exanimāta erat. Ille vincula statim solvit, et puellam patrī reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem maximō gaudiō adfectus est. Meritam grātiā prō tantō beneficiō Perseō rettulit; praetereā Andromedam ipsam eī in mātrimōnium dedit. Ille
85 libenter hoc dōnum accēpit et puellam dūxit. Paucōs annōs cum uxōre suā in eā regiōne habitābat, et in magnō honōre erat apud omnēs Aethiopēs. Magnopere tamen mātrem suam rūrsus vidēre cupiēbat. Tandem igitur cum uxōre suā ē rēgnō Cēpheī discessit.

POLYDECTES IS TURNED TO STONE

90 10. Postquam Perseus ad īnsulam nāvem adpulit, sē ad locum contulit ubi māter ōlim habitāverat, sed domum invēnit vacuam et omnīnō dēsertam. Trēs diēs per tōtam īnsulam

mārem quaerēbat; tandem quārtō diē ad templum Diānae pervēnit. Hūc Danaē refūgerat, quod Polydectem timēbat. Perseus ubi haec cognōvit, irā magnā commōtus est; ad rēgiā 95 Polydectis sine morā contendit, et, ubi eō vēnit, statim in ātrium inrūpit. Polydectēs magnō timōre adfectus est et fugere volēbat. Dum tamen ille fugit, Perseus caput Medūsae mōnstrāvīt; ille autem simul atque hoc vīdit, in saxum versus est.

THE ORACLE FULFILLED

11. Post haec Perseus cum uxōre suā ad urbem Acrisī rediit. 100 Ille autem ubi Perseum vīdit, magnō terrōre adfectus est; nam propter ōrāculum istud nepōtem suum adhūc timēbat. In Thessaliam igitur ad urbem Lārīsam statim refūgit, frūstrā tamen; neque enim fātum suum vītāvit. Post paucōs annōs rēx Lārīsae lūdōs magnōs fēcīt; nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmī- 105 serat et diem ēdīxerat. Multī ex omnibus urbibus Graeciae ad lūdōs convēnērunt. Ipse Perseus inter aliōs certāmen discōrum iniit. At, dum discum conicit, avum suum cāsū occīdit; Acrisius enim inter spectātōrēs ēius certāminis forte stābat.

TIBERIUS GRACCHUS AND GAIUS GRACCHUS

Tiberius Gracchus and his brother Gaius were famous Romans, who lived in the second century B.C. In the following account, from Lhomond's "Viri Romae," they are represented as rebels, as the aristocratic party of Rome regarded them. As a fact, however, they resorted to revolutionary means only to improve the condition of the common people and make the government democratic.

1. Tiberius et Gāius Gracchī¹ Scīpiōnis Āfricānī ex filiā nepōtēs erant. Hōrum adulēscētia bonīs artibus et magnā omnium spē exācta est; ad ēgregiam enim indolem optima accēdēbat ēducātiō. Erant enim diligentiā Cornēliae mātris ā puerīs doctī et Graecīs litterīs ērudītī. Maximum mātrōnis 5

¹For notes and special vocabulary, see p. 262.

ōrnāmentum esse liberōs bene īnstitūtōs meritō putābat māter illa sapientissima. Cum Campāna mātrōna, apud illam hospita, ōrnāmenta sua, illō saeculō pulcherrima, ostentāret eī muliebriter, Cornēlia trāxit eam sermōne, quō ūsque ē scholā redirent
 10 liberī. Quōs reversōs hospitae ostendēns, “Haec,” inquit, “mea ōrnāmenta sunt.” Nihil quidem hīs adulēscentibus neque ā nātūrā neque ā doctrīnā dēfuit; sed ambō rem pūblicam, quam tuērī poterant, perturbāre māluērunt.

2. Tiberius Gracchus, tribūnus plēbis creātus, ā senātū
 15 dēscīvit; populī favōrem profūsīs largītīōnibus sibi conciliāvit; agrōs plēbī dīvidēbat, prōvinciās novīs colōniīs replēbat. Cum autem tribūniciam potestātem sibi prōrogārī vellet, et palam dictitāset interēptō senātū omnia per plēbem agī dēbere, viam sibi ad rēgnū parāre vidēbātur. Quā rē cum convocātī
 20 patrēs dēlībērārent, quidnam faciendum esset, statim Tiberius Capitōliū petit, manū ad caput referēns, quō signō salūtem suam populō commendābat. Hoc nōbilitās ita accēpit, quasi diadēma posceret, et Scīpiō Nāsica, cum esset cōnsōbrīnus Tiberī Gracchī, patriam cognātīōnī praeferēns sublātā dextrā prō-
 25 clāmāvit: “Quī rem pūblicam salvam esse volunt, mē sequantur!” Dein optimātēs, senātus atque equestris ōrdinis pars maior, in Gracchum inruunt, quī fugiēns dēcurrēnsque clīvō Capitōlīnō frāgmentō subsellī ictus vītam, quam glōriōsissimē dēgere potuerat, immātūrā morte finīvit. Mortuī Tiberī
 30 corpus in flūmen prōiectum est.

3. Gāiū Gracchum idem furor, quī frātrē Tiberium, occupāvit. Tribūnātum enim adeptus, seu vindicandae frāternae necis seu comparandae rēgiae potentiae causā, pessima coepit inīre cōsilia; maximās largītīōnēs fēcit, aerārium effūdīt,
 35 lēgem dē frūmentō plēbī dīvidendō tulit, cīvitatē omnibus Ītalīcīs dabat. Hīs Gracchī cōsiliīs, quantā poterant contentiōne, obsistēbant omnēs bonī, in quibus maximē Pīsō, vir cōsulāris. Is cum multa contrā lēgem frūmentāriam dīxisset, lēge tamen lātā, ad frūmentum cum cēterīs accipiendum vēnit.

Gracchus ubi animadvertit in cōtiōne Pīsōnem stantem, eum⁴⁰ sic compellāvit audiente populō Rōmānō: “Quī tibi cōstās, Pīsō, cum eā lēge frūmentum petās, quam dissuāsistī?” Cui Pīsō, “Nōlim quidem, Gracche,” inquit, “mea bona tibi virītim dividere liceat; sed sī faciēs, partem petam.” Quō respōnsō datō apertē dēclārāvit vir gravis et sapiēns, lēge, quam tulerat⁴⁵ Gracchus, patrimōnium pūblicum dissipārī.

4. Dēcrētum ā senātu est, ut vidēret cōsul Opīmius, nē quid dētrīmentī rēs pūblica caperet; quod nisi in maximō discrīmine dēcernī nōn solēbat. Gāius Gracchus, armātā familiā, Aventīnum occupāvit. Cōsul, vocātō ad arma populō, Gāium⁵⁰ aggressus est, quī pulsus profūgit et, cum iam comprehenderētur, iugulum servō praebuit, quī dominum et mox sē super dominī corpus interēmit. Ut Tiberī Gracchī antēā corpus, ita Gāi mīrā crūdēlitāte victōrum in Tiberim dēiectum est; caput autem ā Septimulēiō, amīcō Gracchī, ad Opīmius relātum aurō repēn-⁵⁵ sum fertur. Sunt quī trādant, infūsō plumbō eum partem capitis, quō gravius efficerētur, explēsse.

5. Occīsō Tiberiō Gracchō, cum senātus cōsulibus mandāsset, ut in eōs, quī cum Gracchō cōsēserant, animadverterētur, Blossius quīdam, Tiberī amīcus, prō sē dēprecātum vēnit, hanc,⁶⁰ ut sibi ignōscerētur, causam adferēns, quod tantī Gracchum fēcisset, ut, quidquid ille vellet, sibi faciendum putāret. Tum cōsul, “Quid?” inquit, “sī tē Gracchus templō Iovis in Capitōliō facēs subdere iussisset, obsecūtūrusne illius voluntātī fuistī propter istam, quam iactās, familiāritātem?” “Num-⁶⁵ quam,” inquit Blossius, “voluisset id quidem, sed sī voluisset, pāruiissem.”

6. Exstat Gāi Gracchī ē Sardinīā Rōmam reversī orātiō, in quā haec dē sē nārrat: “Versātus sum in prōvinciā, quōmodo ex ūsū vestrō esse exīstimābam, nōn quōmodo ambitiōnī meae⁷⁰ condūcere arbitrābar.” Nēmō potest vērē dīcere, assem aut eō plūs in mūneribus mē accēpisse aut meā causā quemquam sūmptum fēcisse. Zōnās, quās Rōmā proficiscēns plēnas

argentī extulī, eās ex prōvinciā inānēs rettulī. Aliī amphorās, 75 quās vīnī plēnās extulērunt, eās argentō replētās domum reportārunt.

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

PERSEUS

The numbers refer to the lines of text.

LINE

3. **nepōs, nepōtis**, *grandson*. **necō, -āre**, *put to death*.
4. **ōrāculum, -ī**, *oracle*. **comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsūm**, *seize*.
5. **adhūc**, *adv., still, yet*. **infāns, -fantis**, *infant*. **arca, -ae**, *ark*. **ligneus, -a, -um**, *wooden*. **inclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsūm**, *inclose*.
6. **Danaē, -ēs, -ae, -ēn, -ē**, Greek noun, first decl., F., *Danae* (dan'ā-ē).
7. **turbō, -āre**, *disturb*.
8. **sinus, -ūs**, *bosom, lap.* **dormiō, -īre**, *sleep*.
9. **tamen**, *however*.
10. **tranquillus, -a, -um**, *calm*.
11. **Serīphus, -ī**, F., *Seriphos* (se-rī'fos).
12. **lītus, -oris**, N., *shore*. **adpellō (ad + pellō)**, *drive to*. **harēna, -ae**, *sand, shore*. **quiēs, quiētis**, F., *rest*.
13. **piscātor, -ōris**, *fisherman*.
14. **domum**, *house; without ad, home*.
15. **benignē**, *kindly*. **excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum**, *receive*. **sēdēs, sēdis**, F., *abode*. **tūtus, -a, -um**, *safe*.
17. **grātiās agō**, *thank*.
19. **agēbat**, *led, passed*. **Danaēn**, *acc. case, Greek first decl.*
23. **turpis, -e**, *disgraceful*. **ignāvus, -a, -um**, *inactive, lazy*.
24. **dūdum**, *adv., for a long time*. **adulēscēns, -entis**, *a youth*. **quō ūsque**, *how long?* **hīc**, *adv., here*.
25. **praestāre**, *show*. **hinc**, *adv., hence*. **abī**, *imperative of ab + eō (go)*.
28. **continēns, -entis**, F., *mainland, continent*.
29. **ignōrō, -āre**, *be ignorant of*.
30. **Graeae, -ārum**, F. pl., *the Graeae*.
31. **tālāria, -ium**, N. pl., *winged shoes*. **galea, -ae**, *helmet*. **magicus, -a, -um**, *magic*.

LINE

32. *falx, falcis, F., sickle. speculum, -ī, mirror.*
33. *induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, put on; see 457. āēr, āeris (acc. āera), M., air.*
35. *cēterī, -ae, -a, the other. Gorgō, Gorgonis, F., Gorgon.*
36. *speciēs, -ēī, appearance; see 531. horribilis, -e, terrible.*
- anquis, -is, M. or F., serpent.*
37. *contēctus, -a, -um, pred. adj., covered. aes, aeris, N., copper, bronze.*
38. *abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, cut off.*
39. *saxum, -ī, stone. vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn.*
40. *tergum, -ī, back.*
41. *īnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, look into. modus, -ī, way, manner.*
42. *ictus, -ūs, blow, stroke.*
43. *somnus, -ī, sleep. excitō, -āre, arouse.*
46. *ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, escape.*
47. *Aethiops, -opis, an Aethiopian.*
49. *offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum, offend.*
51. *pavor, -ōris, M., terror, panic.*
52. *Hammōn, -ōnis, M., Hammon. cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, consult.*
53. *autem, now.*
54. *virgo, virginis, F., maiden, virgin. fōrmōsus, -a, -um, beautiful.*
55. *dolor, -ōris, M., grief. percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, feel.*
- cīvis, -is (citizen), subject.*
56. *extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum, rescue. imperātum, -ī, command.*
60. *rūpēs, -is, F., rock, cliff. fātum, -ī, fate. dēplōrō, -āre, lament.*
63. *expōnō (ex + pōnō), explain.*
64. *fremitus, -us, roar.*
65. *procul, adv., at a distance.*
66. *iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, inspire (in).*
69. *sublātus, participle of tollō. dēsUPER, adv., from above.*
70. *collum, -ī, neck.*
71. *sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsū, feel.*
72. *ēdō, -ere, ēdidī, ēditum, utter. mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum, dip, plunge.*
73. *volat: for tense see 605, b. reditus, -ūs, return.*
74. *īficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, stain.*
75. *bēlua, -ae, F., beast monster. sustulit, perfect of tollō.*

LINE

76. iterum, adv., *again*. unda, -ae, *wave*.
78. exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, *take off, put off*.
79. vinctus, -a, -um, *bound*.
80. adiit, from ad + eō, *approach*.
81. exanimātus, -a, -um, *exhausted*. solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, *loosen*.
82. reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditum, *restore*. gaudium, -ī, *joy*. adficiō (ad + faciō), *fill*.
83. grātiā referō, *show gratitude*.
86. regiō, -ōnis, F., *country, region*.
90. adpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *bring to*. sē contulit, *made his way*.
91. inveniō (in + veniō), *find*.
92. vacuus, -a, -um, *empty*. dēsertus, -a, -um, *deserted*.
94. hūc, adv., *to this place*. refugiō (re + fugiō), *flee*.
95. rēgia, -ae, *palace*.
96. ātrium, -ī, *hall*.
97. inrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *burst (into)*.
99. mōnstrō, -āre, *show*. simul atque, *as soon as*.
100. Acrisī, see p. 28, par. 96.
102. ōrāculum istud, *that oracle I told you of*.
104. vitō, -āre, *escape*.
105. lūdus, -ī, *game*.
106. ēdicō (e + dicō), *proclaim*.
107. discus, -ī, *discus, quoit*.
108. iniit, perfect of in + eō, *enter*. cāsus, -ūs, *chance*.

TIBERIUS GRACCHUS AND GAIUS GRACCHUS

1. Gracchī: nom. pl. *Āfricānus*: a surname of P. Cornelius Scipio, the conqueror of Hannibal. filia: Cornelia; see line 4.
2. nepōs, -pōtis, *grandson*. adulēscētia, -ae, *youth*.
3. exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *spend*. indolēs, -is, F., *natural quality*.
5. puerīs, *childhood*. litterīs, *literature*. ērudiō, -ire, *instruct*.
6. meritō, adv., *justly*.
7. Campānus, -a, -um, *Campanian*. apud, *at the house of*. hospita, -ae, *guest*.
8. illō saeculō, *of the time (saeculum)*. ostentō, -āre, *show*. muliebriter, adv., *as women will, like a woman*.

LINE

9. **trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum, detain.** **sermō, -ōnis, M., conversation.** **quō ūsque, until;** used like **dum, 605, c.**
11. **quidem, adv., indeed.** **adulēscēns, -entis, M., a youth.**
12. **doctrīna, -ae, instruction.** **ambō, -ae, -ō, adj., both.**
13. **tueor, -ēri, tūtus, protect.** **tuēri poterant, might have protected.**
mālō, mālī, māluī, prefer.
14. Tiberius was "tribune of the people" in 133 B.C. The tribunes were originally appointed to protect the common people, but gradually acquired other powers.
15. **dēsciscō, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scitum, withdraw.** **favor, -ōris, M., favor.** **profusus, -a, -um, lavish.** **largitīō, -ōnis, F., generosity.**
16. **colōnia, -ae, colony;** **colōniīs: abl. of means.** **repleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill up.**
17. **tribūnicus, -a, -um, of a tribune.** **prōrogō, -āre, prolong, extend.** The tribuneship could not lawfully be held for two successive years.
palam, adv., openly.
18. **dictitō, -āre, say often.** **interimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, kill.**
19. **quā rē, therefore.**
20. **patrēs: i.e. the senators.** **quidnam, what?**
21. **Capitōlium, -ī, the Capitol.** **referēs, raising.**
22. **commendō, -āre, entrust.** **nōbilitās, the aristocrats.** **quasi, conj., as if.**
23. **diadēma, -atis, N., royal crown.** **cum, although.** **cōnsōbrīnus, -ī, cousin.**
24. **cognātiō, -ōnis, F., relationship.** **prōclāmō, -āre, cry out.**
25. **salvus, -a, -um, safe.** **sequantur, let them follow.**
26. **dein, adv., then.** **optimās, -ātis, M., aristocrat.** **ōrdō, -inis, M., order;** **equestris ōrdinis, of the equestrian order, i.e. the knights.**
27. **inruō, -ruere, -ruī, make an attack.** **clīvō Capitōlinō, by the ascent (clīvus) to the Capitol.**
28. **subsellium, -ī, bench, low seat.** The senators broke up the seats on which they had been sitting, and armed themselves with the fragments. **icō, -ere, icī, ictum, strike.**
29. **dēgō, -ere, dēgī, spend;** **dēgere potuerat, might have spent.**
immātūrus, -a, -um, untimely.
31. **furor, -ōris, M., madness, frenzy.**
32. **tribūnātus, -ūs, M., tribuneship.** Gaius was tribune in 123 B.C.
adipīscor, -ī, adeptus, obtain. **seu . . . seu, whether . . . or.** **vindicō, -āre, avenge.** **frāternus, -a, -um, of a brother.**

LINE

34. *inire* (from *in* + *eō*), *enter upon, undertake*. *largitiōnēs*, *gifts*.
aerārium, -ī, *public money*. *effundō*, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *waste*.
35. *tulit*, *proposed*.
36. *Ītalicus*, -ī, *an Italian*. *contentiō*, -ōnis, F., *effort*.
37. *obsistō*, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum, *oppose*. *bonī*, *the aristocrats*; lit.,
 the good men.
38. *cōsulāris*, -e, *of consular rank*. *cum*, *although*. *frūmentāriam*,
concerning grain.
40. *animadvertō*, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *notice*. *cōntiō*, -ōnis,
 F., *mass-meeting, assembly*.
41. *compellō*, -āre, *address*. *quī tibi cōnstās*, *how are you consistent?*
42. *dissuādēō*, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsūm, *advise against*.
43. *nōlim quidem tibi liceat*, *I shouldn't like you to be allowed*.
- Gracche**: see 551. *virītim*, adv., *man by man, to each man separately*.
44. *partem*, *my share*.
45. *gravis*, *of authority*.
46. *patrimōnium pūblicum*, *the state's inheritance, the money in the*
treasury. *dissipō*, -āre, *squander*.
47. *dēcernō*, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *decree*.
48. *dētrimentum*, -ī, *injury*. *caperet*, *should suffer*. *discrimen*,
 -inis, N., *crisis, peril*.
49. *soleō*, -ere, *solitus*, *be accustomed*. *Aventinus*, -ī, *the Aventine*,
 one of the hills of Rome.
51. *aggredior*, -gredi, -gressus, *attack*. *comprehenderētur*, *was on*
the point of being taken.
52. *iugulum*, -ī, *throat*. *praebeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *hold forth, expose*.
54. *crūdēlītās*, -tātis, F., *cruelty*.
55. *repēdō*, -pendere, -pendī, -pēnsūm, *pay with the same weight*;
repēnsūm: supply *esse*.
56. *fertur*, *is reported*. *īfundō*, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *pour into*.
plumbum, -ī, *lead*. *eum*: i.e. *Septimulcius*.
57. *quō*: see 511, a. *efficerētur*, *might be made*. *expleō*, -ēre,
 -ēvī, -ētum, *fill up*; *explēsse* = *explēvisse*.
59. *cōsentiō*, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsūm, *conspire*. *animadverterētur*,
punishment should be inflicted.
60. *dēprecātum*, *to plead*, supine of *dēprecor*.
61. *ignōscerētur*, *that pardon be given*.
62. *quidquid*, *whatever*.
64. *facēs subdere*, *to set fire to*. *obsecūtūrusne fuistī*, *would you have*
yielded?

LINE

65. **iactō, -āre**, *boast of*.
68. **ex + stō**, *exist, be*. **ōrātiō**: Gaius was famous for his oratory.
69. **versor, -ārī, -ātus**, *conduct oneself*. **quōmodo**, *adv., as*.
70. **ambitiō, -ōnis**, *F., ambition*.
71. **condūcere**, *serve, be profitable*. **ās, assis, M.**, *penny*; **assem**,
 “*a red cent*,” as we might say.
72. **mūnus, -eris, N.**, *service, office*.
73. **sūmptus, -ūs, M.**, *expense*; **sūmptum fēcisse**, *was put to expense*.
- zōna, -ae**, *belt, money-belt*.
74. **inānis, -e**, *empty*. **amphora, -ae**, *jar*.
75. **replētus, -a, -um**, *filled*.

APPENDIX

NOUNS

I. FIRST DECLENSION

tuba, F., trumpet

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	tuba, a (the) trumpet	tubae, (the) trumpets
<i>Gen.</i>	tubae, of a (the) trumpet	tubārum, of (the) trumpets
<i>Dat.</i>	tubae, to or for a (the) trumpet	tubīs, to or for (the) trumpets
<i>Acc.</i>	tubam, a (the) trumpet	tubās, (the) trumpets
<i>Abl.</i>	tubā, by or with a (the) trumpet	tubīs, by or with (the) trumpets

2. SECOND DECLENSION

	carrus, M. <i>cart</i>	puer, M. <i>boy</i>	ager, M. <i>field</i>	vir, M. <i>man</i>	pīlum, N. <i>javelin</i>
SINGULAR					
<i>Nom.</i>	carrus	puer	ager	vir	pīlum
<i>Gen.</i>	carrī	puerī	agrī	virī	pīlī
<i>Dat.</i>	carrō	puerō	agrō	virō	pīlō
<i>Acc.</i>	carrum	puerum	agrum	virum	pīlum
<i>Abl.</i>	carrō	puerō	agrō	virō	pīlō
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	carrī	puerī	agrī	virī	pīla
<i>Gen.</i>	carrōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	pīlōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	carrīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	pīlīs
<i>Acc.</i>	carrōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	pīla
<i>Abl.</i>	carrīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	pīlīs

THIRD DECLENSION

	3. cōnsul, M. <i>consul</i>	victor, M. <i>victor</i>	pater, M. <i>father</i>	nātiō, F. <i>nation</i>	homō, M. <i>man</i>
SINGULAR					
<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsul	victor	pater	nātiō	homō
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsulis	victōris	patris	nātiōnis	hominis
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsulī	victōrī	patrī	nātiōnī	hominī
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsulem	victōrem	patrem	nātiōnem	hominem
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsule	victōre	patre	nātiōne	homine

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsulēs	victōrēs	patrēs	nātiōnēs	hominēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulūm	victōrum	patrum	nātiōnum	hominūm
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulibus	victōribus	patribus	nātiōnibus	hominibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulēs	victōrēs	patrēs	nātiōnēs	hominēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsulibus	victōribus	patribus	nātiōnibus	hominibus

4.	rēx, M. <i>king</i>	dux, M. <i>leader</i>	pēs, M. <i>foot</i>	mīles, M. <i>soldier</i>	libertās, F. <i>liberty</i>
----	------------------------	--------------------------	------------------------	-----------------------------	--------------------------------

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	dux	pēs	mīles	libertās
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	ducis	pedis	militis	libertātis
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	ducī	pedī	militī	libertātī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	ducem	pedem	militem	libertātem
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	duce	pede	milite	libertāte

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	ducēs	pedēs	militēs	libertātēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	ducum	pedum	militum	libertātum
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	ducibus	pedibus	militibus	libertātibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	ducēs	pedēs	militēs	libertātēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	ducibus	pedibus	militibus	libertātibus

5.	flūmen, N. <i>river</i>	opus, N. <i>work</i>	tempus, N. <i>time</i>	caput, N. <i>head</i>
----	----------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------	--------------------------

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	flūmen	opus	tempus	caput
<i>Gen.</i>	flūminis	operis	temporis	capitis
<i>Dat.</i>	flūminī	operī	temporī	capitī
<i>Acc.</i>	flūmen	opus	tempus	caput
<i>Abl.</i>	flūmine	opere	tempore	capite

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	flūmina	opera	tempora	capita
<i>Gen.</i>	flūminūm	operum	temporum	capitum
<i>Dat.</i>	flūminibus	operibus	temporibus	capitibus
<i>Acc.</i>	flūmina	opera	tempora	capita
<i>Abl.</i>	flūminibus	operibus	temporibus	capitibus

6.	nūbēs, F. <i>cloud</i>	hostis, M. <i>enemy</i>	mōns, M. <i>mountain</i>	nox, F. <i>night</i>
-----------	----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	------------------------------------	--------------------------------

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	nūbēs	hostis	mōns	nox
<i>Gen.</i>	nūbis	hostis	montis	noctis
<i>Dat.</i>	nūbī	hostī	montī	noctī
<i>Acc.</i>	nūbem	hostem	montem	noctem
<i>Abl.</i>	nūbe	hoste	monte	nocte

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	nūbēs	hostēs	montēs	noctēs
<i>Gen.</i>	nūbium	hostium	montium	noctium
<i>Dat.</i>	nūbibus	hostibus	montibus	noctibus
<i>Acc.</i>	nūbēs, -īs	hostēs, -īs	montēs, -īs	noctēs, -īs
<i>Abl.</i>	nūbibus	hostibus	montibus	noctibus

7.	vīs, F. <i>force</i>	iter, N. <i>way</i>	animal, N. <i>animal</i>	īnsigne, N. <i>decoration</i>
-----------	--------------------------------	-------------------------------	------------------------------------	---

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	vīs	iter	animal	īnsigne
<i>Gen.</i>	vīs	itineris	animālis	īnsignis
<i>Dat.</i>	vī	itinerī	animālī	īnsignī
<i>Acc.</i>	vīm	iter	animal	īnsigne
<i>Abl.</i>	vī	itinere	animālī	īnsignī

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	vīrēs	itinerā	animālia	īnsignia
<i>Gen.</i>	vīrium	itinerum	animālium	īnsignium
<i>Dat.</i>	vīribus	itineribus	animālibus	īnsignibus
<i>Acc.</i>	vīrēs, -īs	itinerā	animālia	īnsignia
<i>Abl.</i>	vīribus	itineribus	animālibus	īnsignibus

8. FOURTH DECLENSION

senātus, M. <i>senate</i>	domus, F. <i>house</i>	cornū, N. <i>horn</i>
-------------------------------------	----------------------------------	---------------------------------

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	senātus	domus	cornū
<i>Gen.</i>	senātūs	domūs	cornūs
<i>Dat.</i>	senātuī	domuī	cornū
<i>Acc.</i>	senātum	domum	cornū
<i>Abl.</i>	senātū	domō (-ū)	cornū

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	senātūs	domūs	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	senātuūm	domuūm	cornuūm
<i>Dat.</i>	senātibus	domibus	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	senātūs	domōs (-ūs)	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	senātibus	domibus	cornibus

9.

FIFTH DECLENSION

diēs, M., *day*rēs, F., *thing*

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

10.

bonus, *good*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

11.

liber, *free*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

12.

pulcher, beautiful

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Gen.</i>	puchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

13.

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

alius, another, other**alter, the other**SINGULAR¹

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
<i>Gen.</i>	alius ²	alius ²	alius ²	alterius	alterius	alterius
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
<i>Acc.</i>	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

neuter, neither**ūnus, one**

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	neuter	neutra	neutrum	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
<i>Gen.</i>	neutrius	neutrius	neutrius	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius
<i>Dat.</i>	neutrī	neutrī	neutrī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
<i>Acc.</i>	neutrum	neutram	neutrum	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
<i>Abl.</i>	neutrō	neutrā	neutrō	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

¹ The plural is regular, like the plural of **bonus**.² **Alterius** is used instead of **alius**.

THIRD DECLENSION

14.

acer, sharp

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs (-īs)</i>	<i>ācrēs (-īs)</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

15.

fortis, brave

	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>forte</i>	<i>fortēs</i>	<i>fortia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortium</i>	<i>fortium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fortem</i>	<i>forte</i>	<i>fortēs (-īs)</i>	<i>fortia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>

16.

potēns, powerful

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>potēns</i>	<i>potēns</i>	<i>potentēs</i>	<i>potentia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>potentis</i>	<i>potentis</i>	<i>potentium</i>	<i>potentium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>potentī</i>	<i>potentī</i>	<i>potentibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>potentem</i>	<i>potēns</i>	<i>potentēs (-īs)</i>	<i>potentia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>potentī (-e)</i>	<i>potentī (-e)</i>	<i>potentibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>

17.

COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVE

altior, higher

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>altior</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altiōrēs</i>	<i>altiōra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>altiōris</i>	<i>altiōris</i>	<i>altiōrum</i>	<i>altiōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>altiōrī</i>	<i>altiōrī</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>altiōrem</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altiōrēs</i>	<i>altiōra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>altiōre</i>	<i>altiōre</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>

18.

SPECIAL ADJECTIVES

vetus, old

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
<i>Gen.</i>	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
<i>Dat.</i>	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
<i>Acc.</i>	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
<i>Abl.</i>	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

*plūs, more**mīlle, thousand*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.		
<i>Nom.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra	mille	milia
<i>Gen.</i>	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium	—	milium
<i>Dat.</i>	—	—	plūribus	plūribus	—	milibus
<i>Acc.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra	mille	milia
<i>Abl.</i>	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus	—	milibus

*duo, two**trēs, three*

	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

19.

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus, <i>high</i>	altior	altissimus
fortis, <i>brave</i>	fortior	fortissimus
audāx, <i>bold</i>	audācior	audācissimus
potēns, <i>powerful</i>	potentior	potentissimus
liber, <i>free</i>	liberior	liberrimus
ācer, <i>sharp</i>	ācrior	ācerrimus
facilis, <i>easy</i>	facilior	facillimus
difficilis, <i>difficult</i>	difficilior	difficillimus

20. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, <i>good</i>	melior, <i>better</i>	optimus, <i>best</i>
malus, <i>bad</i>	pēior, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, <i>worst</i>
magnus, <i>great</i>	māior, <i>greater</i>	maximus, <i>greatest</i>
parvus, <i>little</i>	minor, <i>less</i>	minimus, <i>least</i>
multus, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, <i>most</i>
senex, <i>old</i>	senior, <i>older</i>	maximus nātū, <i>oldest</i>
iuvenis, <i>young</i>	iūnior, <i>younger</i>	minimus nātū, <i>youngest</i>
idōneus, <i>suitable</i>	magis idōneus	maximē idōneus
exterus, <i>outward</i>	exterior, <i>outer,</i> <i>exterior</i>	extrēmus } <i>outermost,</i> extimus } <i>last</i>
inferus, <i>below</i>	inferior, <i>lower</i>	īnfirmus } <i>lowest</i> īmus }
posterus, <i>following</i>	posterior, <i>later</i>	postrēmus } <i>last</i> postumus }
superus, <i>above</i>	superior, <i>higher</i>	suprēmus } <i>highest</i> summus }
[cis, citrā, <i>on this side</i>]	citerior, <i>hither</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost</i>
[in, intrā, <i>in, within</i>]	interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>inmost</i>
[prae, prō, <i>before</i>]	prior, <i>former</i>	prīmus, <i>first</i>
[prope, <i>near</i>]	propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>next</i>
[ultrā, <i>beyond</i>]	ulterior, <i>farther</i>	ultimus, <i>farthest</i>

ADVERBS**21. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS**

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē, <i>widely</i>	lātius	lātissimē
liberē, <i>freely</i>	liberius	liberrimē
ācriter, <i>sharply</i>	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile, <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
sapienter, <i>wisely</i>	sapientius	sapientissimē

22. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene, <i>well</i>	melius, <i>better</i>	optimē, <i>best</i>
male, <i>badly, ill</i>	pēius, <i>worse</i>	pessimē, <i>worst</i>
magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis, <i>more</i>	maximē, <i>most</i>
multum, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimum, <i>most</i>
parum, <i>little</i>	minus, <i>less</i>	minimē, <i>least</i>
diū, <i>long (in time)</i>	diūtius, <i>longer</i>	diūtissimē, <i>longest</i>
prope, <i>near</i>	propius, <i>nearer</i>	proximē, <i>next</i>
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius, <i>oftener</i>	saepissimē, <i>oftenest</i>

23. SIGN	CARDINAL	NUMERALS	ORDINAL
I	ūnus, <i>one</i>		prīmus, <i>first</i>
II	duo, <i>two</i>		secundus, <i>second</i>
III	trēs, <i>three</i>		tertius, <i>third</i>
IV	quattuor, <i>four</i>		quārtus, <i>fourth</i>
V	quīnque, <i>five</i>		quīntus, <i>fifth</i>
VI	sex		sextus
VII	septem		septīmus
VIII	octō		octāvus
IX	novem		nōnus
X	decem		decimus
XI	ūndecim		ūndecimus
XII	duodecim		duodecimus
XIII	tredecim		tertius decimus
XIV	quattuordecim		quārtus decimus
XV	quīndecim		quīntus decimus
XVI	sēdecim		sextus decimus
XVII	septendecim		septīmus decimus
XVIII	duodēvigintī		duodēvīcēsimus
XIX	ūndēvigintī		ūndēvīcēsimus
XX	vīgintī		vīcēsimus
XXI	vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī		vīcēsimus prīmus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīcēsimus
XXX	trīgintā		trīcēsimus
XL	quadrāgintā		quadrāgēsimus
L	quīnquāgintā		quīnquāgēsimus
LX	sexāgintā		sexāgēsimus
LXX	septuāgintā		septuāgēsimus
LXXX	octōgintā		octōgēsimus
XC	nōnāgintā		nōnāgēsimus
C	centum		centēsimus
CI	centum (et) ūnus		centēsimus prīmus
CXXI	centum vīgintī ūnus		centēsimus vīcēsimus prīmus
CC	ducentī		ducentēsimus
CCC	trecentī		trecentēsimus
CCCC	quadringentī		quadringentēsimus
D	quingentī		quingentēsimus
DC	sescentī		sescentēsimus
DCC	septingentī		septingentēsimus
DCCC	octingentī		octingentēsimus
DCCCG	nōngentī		nōngentēsimus
M	mille		mīllēsimus
MC	mille centum		mīllēsimus centēsimus
MM	duo milia		bis (=twice) mīllēsimus

PRONOUNS

	PERSONAL				REFLEXIVE	
	ego, I		tū, thou		suī, of himself, etc.	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	nostrum, -trī	tuī	vestrum, -trī	suī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

DEMONSTRATIVE

	hic, this					
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

26. ille, that (yonder)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

Iste, that (of yours), is declined like ille.

27. is, this, that

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī, iī	cae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

28. *idem, the same*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i> ¹	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> ²	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> ²	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>

INTENSIVE

29. *ipse, self*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

RELATIVE

30. *quī, who, which, that*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

INTERROGATIVE

31. *quis, who? which? what?*

	SINGULAR	
	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>quid</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quid</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quō</i>

The plural of the interrogative **quis** is like that of the relative **quī**. The interrogative adjective **quī, quae, quod**, is declined like the relative.

¹ Or *īdem*.² Or *īsdem*.

INDEFINITE

32.

quis, *any, any one*

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis (quī)	quae or qua	quid (quod)
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid (quod)
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae or qua
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae or qua
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

33.

aliquis, *some, some one*

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis (-quī)	aliqua	aliquid (-quod)
<i>Gen.</i>	aliciūus	aliciūus	aliciūus
<i>Dat.</i>	aliciui	aliciui	aliciui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (-quod)
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

VERBS

34.

FIRST CONJUGATION

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, *love*

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Present

amō, *I love, am loving, do love*
 amās, *you love, are loving, do love*
 amat, *he (she, it) loves, is loving, does love*
 amāmus, *we love, are loving, do love*
 amātis, *you love, are loving, do love*
 amant, *they love, are loving, do love*

INDICATIVE PASSIVE

Present

amor, *I am (being) loved*
 amāris, *you are (being) loved*
 amātur, *he (she, it) is (being) loved*
 amāmur, *we are (being) loved*
 amāmini, *you are (being) loved*
 amantur, *they are (being) loved*

Imperfect

amābam, *I was loving, loved, did love*
 amābās, *you were loving, loved, did love*
 amābat, *he was loving, loved, did love*
 amābāmus, *we were loving, loved, did love*
 amābātis, *you were loving, loved, did love*
 amābant, *they were loving, loved, did love*

Future

amābō, *I shall love*
 amābis, *you will love*
 amābit, *he will love*
 amābimus, *we shall love*
 amābitis, *you will love*
 amābunt, *they will love*

Perfect

amāvī, *I have loved, loved, did love*
 amāvistī, *you have loved, loved, did love*
 amāvīt, *he has loved, loved, did love*
 amāvimus, *we have loved, loved, did love*
 amāvistis, *you have loved, loved, did love*
 amāvērunt, *they have loved, loved, did love*

Pluperfect

amāveram, *I had loved*
 amāverās, *you had loved*
 amāverat, *he had loved*
 amāverāmus, *we had loved*
 amāverātis, *you had loved*
 amāverant, *they had loved*

Imperfect

amābar, *I was (being) loved*
 amābāris, *you were (being) loved*
 amābātur, *he was (being) loved*
 amābāmur, *we were (being) loved*
 amābāminī, *you were (being) loved*
 amābantur, *they were (being) loved*

Future

amābor, *I shall be loved*
 amāberis, *you will be loved*
 amābitur, *he will be loved*
 amābimur, *we shall be loved*
 amābiminī, *you will be loved*
 amābuntur, *they will be loved*

Perfect

amātus sum, *I have been loved, was loved*
 amātus es, *you have been loved, were loved*
 amātus est, *he has been loved, was loved*
 amātī sumus, *we have been loved, were loved*
 amātī estis, *you have been loved, were loved*
 amātī sunt, *they have been loved, were loved*

Pluperfect

amātus eram, *I had been loved*
 amātus erās, *you had been loved*
 amātus erat, *he had been loved*
 amātī erāmus, *we had been loved*
 amātī erātis, *you had been loved*
 amātī erant, *they had been loved*

Future Perfect

amāverō, *I shall have loved*
 amāveris, *you will have loved*
 amāverit, *he will have loved*
 amaverimus, *we shall have loved*
 amāveritis, *you will have loved*
 amāverint, *they will have loved*

Future Perfect

amātus erō, *I shall have been loved*
 amātus eris, *you will have been loved*
 amātus erit, *he will have been loved*
 amātī erimus, *we shall have been loved*
 amātī eritis, *you will have been loved*
 amātī erunt, *they will have been loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

Present

amem amēmus
 amēs amētis
 amet ament

Imperfect

amārem amārēmus
 amārēs amārētis
 amāret amārent

Perfect

amāverim amāverimus
 amāveris amāveritis
 amāverit amāverint

Pluperfect

amāvīsem amāvīssēmus
 amāvīssēs amāvīssētis
 amāvīset amāvīssent

PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

amā, *love (thou)* amāte, *love (ye)*

INFINITIVE ACTIVE

Pres. amāre, *to love*
Perf. amāvīsse, *to have loved*
Fut. amātūrus esse, *to be about to love*

SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

Present

amer amēmur
 amēris amēminī
 amētur amentur

Imperfect

amārer amārēmur
 amārēris amārēminī
 amārētur amārentur

Perfect

amātus sim amātī simus
 amātus sis amātī sitis
 amātus sit amātī sint

Pluperfect

amātus essem amātī essēmus
 amātus essēs amātī essētis
 amātus esset amātī essent

PRESENT IMPERATIVE PASSIVE

amāre, *be (thou) loved* amāminī, *be (ye) loved*

INFINITIVE PASSIVE

Pres. amārī, *to be loved*
Perf. amātus esse, *to have been loved*
Fut. amātum irī, *to be about to be loved*

PARTICIPLES ACTIVE

Pres. amāns, *loving*
Fut. amātūrus, *about to love*

GERUND

Gen. amandī, *of loving*
Dat. amandō, *for loving*
Acc. amandum, *loving*
Abl. amandō, *by loving*

PARTICIPLES PASSIVE

Perf. amātus, *having been loved, loved*
Fut. amandus, *to be loved (Gerundive)*

SUPINE (ACTIVE)

Acc. amātum, *to love*
Abl. amātū, *to love*

35. SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal Parts.

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, *warn, advise*
 regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, *rule*
 capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *take*
 audiō, audire, audīvī, audītum, *hear*

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present

mōneō	regō	capiō	audiō
monēs	regis	capis	audīs
monet	regit	capit	audit
monēmus	regimus	capimus	audimus
monētis	regitis	capitis	audītis
monent	regunt	capiunt	audiunt

Imperfect

monēbam	regēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
monēbās	regēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
monēbat	regēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
monēbāmus	regēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
monēbātis	regēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
monēbant	regēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

Future

monēbō	regam	capiam	audiam
monēbis	regēs	capies	audiēs
monēbit	reget	capiet	audiet
monēbimus	regēmus	capiemus	audiemus
monēbitis	regētis	capietis	audiētis
monēbunt	regent	capient	audient

Perfect

monuī	rēxī	cēpī	audīvī
monuisti	rēxisti	cēpisti	audivisti
monuit	rēxit	cēpit	audivit
monuimus	rēximus	cēpimus	audivimus
monuistis	rēxistis	cēpistis	audivistis
monuērunt	rēxērunt	cēpērunt	audivērunt

Pluperfect

monueram	rēxeram	cēperam	audiveram
monuerās	rēxerās	cēperās	audiverās
monuerat	rēxerat	cēperat	audiverat
monuerāmus	rēxerāmus	cēperāmus	audiverāmus
monuerātis	rēxerātis	cēperātis	audiverātis
monuerant	rēxerant	cēperant	audiverant

Future Perfect

monuerō	rēxerō	cēperō	audiverō
monueris	rēxeris	cēperis	audiveris
monuerit	rēxerit	cēperit	audiverit
monuerimus	rēxerimus	cēperimus	audiverimus
monueritis	rēxeritis	cēperitis	audiveritis
monuerint	rēxerint	cēperint	audiverint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present

moneam	regam	capiam	audiam
moneās	regās	capiās	audiās
moneat	regat	capiat	audiat
moneāmus	regāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
moneātis	regātis	capiātis	audiātis
moneant	regant	capiant	audiant

Imperfect

monērem	regerem	caperem	audīrem
monērēs	regerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
monēret	regeret	caperet	audīret
monērēmus	regerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
monērētis	regerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
monērent	regerent	caperent	audīrent

Perfect

monuerim	rēxerim	cēperim	audiverim
monueris	rēxeris	cēperis	audiveris
monuerit	rēxerit	cēperit	audiverit
monuerimus	rēxerimus	cēperimus	audiverimus
monueritis	rēxeritis	cēperitis	audiveritis
monuerint	rēxerint	cēperint	audiverint

Pluperfect

monuissem	rēxissem	cēpisssem	audivissem
monuissēs	rēxissēs	cēpissēs	audivissēs
monuisset	rēxisset	cēpisset	audivisset
monuissēmus	rēxissēmus	cēpissēmus	audivissēmus
monuissētis	rēxissētis	cēpissētis	audivissētis
monuissent	rēxissent	cēpissent	audivissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD, PRESENT TENSE

<i>Sing.</i> monē	rege	cape	audi
<i>Plur.</i> monēte	regite	capite	audite

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> monēre	regere	capere	audire
<i>Perf.</i> monuisse	rēxisse	cēpisse	audivisse
<i>Fut.</i> monitūrus esse	rēctūrus esse	captūrus esse	auditūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i> monēns	regēns	capiēns	audiēns
<i>Fut.</i> monitūrus	rēctūrus	captūrus	auditūrus

GERUND

<i>Gen.</i> monendī	regendī	capiendī	audiendī
<i>Dat.</i> monendō	regendō	capiendō	audiendō
<i>Acc.</i> monendum	regendum	capiendum	audiendum
<i>Abl.</i> monendō	regendō	capiendō	audiendō

SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i> monitum	rēctum	captum	auditum
<i>Abl.</i> monitū	rēctū	captū	auditū

36. SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal Parts

moneor, monēri, monitus sum, be warned, be advised
regor, regi, rēctus sum, be ruled
capior, capi, captus sum, be taken
audior, audiri, auditus sum, be heard

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present

moneor	regor	capior	audior
monēris	regeris	caperis	audīris
monētur	regitur	capitur	audītur
monēmur	regimur	capimur	audīmur
monēminī	regiminī	capiminī	audīminī
monentur	reguntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

Imperfect

monēbar	regēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
monēbāris	regēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
monēbātur	regēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
monēbāmur	regēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
monēbāminī	regēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
monēbantur	regēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

Future

monēbor	regar	capiar	audiar
monēberis	regeris	capiēris	audiēris
monēbitur	regētur	capiētur	audiētur
monēbimur	regēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
monēbiminī	regēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
monēbuntur	regentur	capientur	audientur

Perfect

monitus sum	rēctus sum	captus sum	auditus sum
monitus es	rēctus es	captus es	auditus es
monitus est	rēctus est	captus est	auditus est
monitī sumus	rēctī sumus	captī sumus	auditī sumus
monitī estis	rēctī estis	captī estis	auditī estis
monitī sunt	rēctī sunt	captī sunt	auditī sunt

Pluperfect

monitus eram	rēctus eram	captus eram	auditus eram
monitus erās	rēctus erās	captus erās	auditus erās
monitus erat	rēctus erat	captus erat	auditus erat
monitī erāmus	rēctī erāmus	captī erāmus	auditī erāmus
monitī erātis	rēctī erātis	captī erātis	auditī erātis
monitī erant	rēctī erant	captī erant	auditī erant

Future Perfect

monitus erō	rēctus erō	captus erō	auditus erō
monitus eris	rēctus eris	captus eris	auditus eris
monitus erit	rēctus erit	captus erit	auditus erit
monitī erimus	rēctī erimus	captī erimus	auditī erimus
monitī eritis	rēctī eritis	captī eritis	auditī eritis
monitī erunt	rēctī erunt	captī erunt	auditī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present

monear	regar	capiar	audiar
monēāris	regāris	capiāris	audiāris
monēātur	regātur	capiātur	audiātur
monēāmur	regāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
monēāminī	regāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
monēantur	regantur	capiantur	audiantur

Imperfect

monērer	regerer	caperer	audirer
monērēris	regerēris	caperēris	audirēris
monērētur	regerētur	caperētur	audirētur
monērēmur	regerēmur	caperēmur	audirēmur
monērēminī	regerēminī	caperēminī	audirēminī
monērentur	regerentur	caperentur	audirentur

Perfect

monitus sim	rēctus sim	captus sim	auditus sim
monitus sīs	rēctus sīs	captus sīs	auditus sīs
monitus sit	rēctus sit	captus sit	auditus sit
monitī simus	rēctī simus	captī simus	auditī simus
monitī sitis	rēctī sitis	captī sitis	auditī sitis
monitī sint	rēctī sint	captī sint	auditī sint

Pluperfect

monitus essem	rēctus essem	captus essem	auditus essem
monitus essēs	rēctus essēs	captus essēs	auditus essēs
monitus esset	rēctus esset	captus esset	auditus esset
monitī essēmus	rēctī essēmus	captī essēmus	auditī essēmus
monitī essētis	rēctī essētis	captī essētis	auditī essētis
monitī essent	rēctī essent	captī essent	auditī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD, PRESENT TENSE

<i>Sing.</i> monēre	regere	capere	audire
<i>Plur.</i> monēmini	regimini	capimini	audimini

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> monērī	regī	capī	audīrī
<i>Perf.</i> monitus esse	rēctus esse	captus esse	auditus esse
<i>Fut.</i> monitum irī	rēctum irī	captum irī	auditum irī

PARTICIPLES

<i>Perf.</i> monitus	rēctus	captus	auditus
<i>Fut.</i> monendus	regendus	capendus	audiendus

DEPONENT VERBS

37.

First Conjugation

*Principal Parts*cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, *try*

INDICATIVE	<i>Present</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE
cōnor, <i>I try, am trying, do try</i>		cōner
cōnāris, <i>you try, are trying, do try</i>		cōnēris
cōnātur, <i>he tries, is trying, does try</i>		cōnētur
cōnāmur, <i>we try, are trying, do try</i>		cōnēmur
cōnāmini, <i>you try, are trying, do try</i>		cōnēmini
cōnantur, <i>they try, are trying, do try</i>		cōnentur

Imperfect

cōnābar, <i>I was trying, tried, did try</i>	cōnārer
cōnābāris, <i>you were trying, tried, did try</i>	cōnārēris
cōnābātur, <i>he was trying, tried, did try</i>	cōnārētur
cōnābāmur, <i>we were trying, tried, did try</i>	cōnārēmur
cōnābāmini, <i>you were trying, tried, did try</i>	cōnārēmini
cōnābantur, <i>they were trying, tried, did try</i>	cōnārentur

Future

cōnābor, *I shall try*
 cōnāberis, *you will try*
 cōnābitur, *he will try*
 cōnābimur, *we shall try*
 cōnābimini, *you will try*
 cōnābuntur, *they will try*

Perfect

cōnātus sum, *I have tried, tried, did try*
 cōnātus es, *you have tried, tried, did try*
 cōnātus est, *he has tried, tried, did try*
 cōnātī sumus, *we have tried, tried, did try*
 cōnātī estis, *you have tried, tried, did try*
 cōnātī sunt, *they have tried, tried, did try*

cōnātus sim
 cōnātus sis
 cōnātus sit
 cōnātī simus
 cōnātī sitis
 cōnātī sint

Pluperfect

cōnātus eram, *I had tried*
 cōnātus erās, *you had tried*
 cōnātus erat, *he had tried*
 cōnātī erāmus, *we had tried*
 cōnātī erātis, *you had tried*
 cōnātī erant, *they had tried*

cōnātus essem
 cōnātus essēs
 cōnātus esset
 cōnātī essēmus
 cōnātī essētis
 cōnātī essent

Future Perfect

cōnātus erō, *I shall have tried*
 cōnātus eris, *you will have tried*
 cōnātus erit, *he will have tried*
 cōnātī erimus, *we shall have tried*
 cōnātī eritis, *you will have tried*
 cōnātī erunt, *they will have tried*

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

Sing. cōnāre, *try (thou)*

Plur. cōnāmini, *try (ye)*

INFINITIVE

Pres. cōnārī, *to try*

Perf. cōnātus esse, *to have tried*

Fut. cōnātūrus esse, *to be about to try*

PARTICIPLES

Pres. cōnāns, *trying*

Perf. cōnātus, *having tried*

Fut. Act. cōnātūrus, *about to try*

Fut. Pass. cōnandus, *to be tried*

	GERUND	SUPINE
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnandī, <i>of trying</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnandō, <i>for trying</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnandum, <i>trying</i>	cōnātum, <i>to try</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnandō, <i>by trying</i>	cōnātū, <i>to try</i>

38. Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations

Principal Parts

vereor, verēri, veritus sum, *fear*
 ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, *use*
 patior, pati, passus sum, *allow, suffer*
 potior, potiri, potitus sum, *get possession of*

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	vereor	ūtor	patior	potior
	verēris	ūteris	pateris	potiris
	verētur	ūtitur	patitur	potitur
	verēmur	ūtimur	patimur	potimur
	verēminī	ūtiminī	patiminī	potiminī
	verentur	ūtuntur	patiuntur	potiuntur
<i>Impf.</i>	verēbar	ūtēbar	patiēbar	potiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	verēbor	ūtar	patiar	potiar
<i>Perf.</i>	veritus sum	ūsus sum	passus sum	potitus sum
<i>Plup.</i>	veritus eram	ūsus eram	passus eram	potitus eram
<i>Fut. P.</i>	veritus erō	ūsus erō	passus erō	potitus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	verear	ūtar	patiar	potiar
<i>Impf.</i>	verērer	ūterer	paterer	potirer
<i>Perf.</i>	veritus sim	ūsus sim	passus sim	potitus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	veritus essem	ūsus essem	passus essem	potitus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	verēre	ūtere	patere	potire
--------------	--------	-------	--------	--------

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	verēri	ūtī	pati	potiri
<i>Perf.</i>	veritus esse	ūsus esse	passus esse	potitus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	veritūrus esse	ūsūrus esse	passūrus esse	potitūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i>	verēns	ūtēns	patiēns	potiēns
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	veritūrus	ūsūrus	passūrus	potitūrus
<i>Perf.</i>	veritus	ūsus	passus	potitus
<i>Fut. Pass.</i>	verendus	ūtendus	patiendus	potiendus

GERUND

verendī	ūtendī	patiendī	potiendī
---------	--------	----------	----------

SUPINE

veritum	ūsum	passum	potitum
---------	------	--------	---------

IRREGULAR VERBS

39.

sum, *am, be**Principal Parts: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus*

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sum, <i>I am</i>	sumus, <i>we are</i>
es, <i>you are</i>	estis, <i>you are</i>
est, <i>he (she, it) is</i>	sunt, <i>they are</i>

Imperfect

eram, <i>I was</i>	erāmus, <i>we were</i>
erās, <i>you were</i>	erātis, <i>you were</i>
erat, <i>he was</i>	erant, <i>they were</i>

Future

erō, <i>I shall be</i>	erimus, <i>we shall be</i>
eris, <i>you will be</i>	eritis, <i>you will be</i>
erit, <i>he will be</i>	erunt, <i>they will be</i>

Perfect

fuī, <i>I have been, was</i>	fuiimus, <i>we have been, were</i>
fuiistī, <i>you have been, were</i>	fuiistis, <i>you have been, were</i>
fuit, <i>he has been, was</i>	fuiērunt, <i>they have been, were</i>

Pluperfect

fueram, <i>I had been</i>	fuerāmus, <i>we had been</i>
fuerās, <i>thou hadst been</i>	fuerātis, <i>you had been</i>
fuerat, <i>he had been</i>	fuerant, <i>they had been</i>

Future Perfect

fuerō, *I shall have been*
 fueris, *thou wilt have been*
 fuerit, *he will have been*

fuerimus, *we shall have been*
 fueritis, *you will have been*
 fuerint, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sim	sīmus
sīs	sītis
sit	sint

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
essem	essēmus
essēs	essētis
esset	essent

Perfect

fuerim	fuerīmus
fuerīs	fuerītis
fuerit	fuerint

Pluperfect

fuissem	fuiissēmus
fuiissēs	fuiissētis
fuisset	fuiissent

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

Sing. es, be (*thou*)Plur. este, be (*ye*)

INFINITIVE

Pres. esse, *to be**Perf.* fuisse, *to have been**Fut.* futūrus esse *or fore, to be about to be*

PARTICIPLE

futūrus, *about to be*

40.

possum, *be able**Principal Parts: possum, posse, potui*

INDICATIVE

Present

possum, *I am able, I can*
 potes, *you are able, you can*
 potest, *he is able, he can*

possumus, *we are able, we can*
 potestis, *you are able, you can*
 possunt, *they are able, they can*

Imperfect

poteram, *I was able, I could*
 poterās, *you were able, you could*
 poterat, *he was able, he could*

poterāmus, *we were able, we could*
 poterātis, *you were able, you could*
 poterant, *they were able, they could*

Future

poterō, *I shall be able*
 poteris, *you will be able*
 poterit, *he will be able*

poterimus, *we shall be able*
 poteritis, *you will be able*
 poterunt, *they will be able*

Perfect

potuī, <i>I have been able, I could</i>	potuimus, <i>we have been able, we could</i>
potuistī, <i>you have been able, you could</i>	potuistis, <i>you have been able, you could</i>
potuit, <i>he has been able, he could</i>	potuērunt, <i>they have been able, they could</i>

Pluperfect

potueram, <i>I had been able</i>	potuerāmus, <i>we had been able</i>
potuerās, <i>you had been able</i>	potuerātis, <i>you had been able</i>
potuerat, <i>he had been able</i>	potuerant, <i>they had been able</i>

Future Perfect

potuerō, <i>I shall have been able</i>	potuerimus, <i>we shall have been able</i>
potueris, <i>you will have been able</i>	potueritis, <i>you will have been able</i>
potuerit, <i>he will have been able</i>	potuerint, <i>they will have been able</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
possim	possīmus
possīs	possitis
possit	possint

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
possem	possēmus
possēs	possētis
posset	possent

Perfect

potuerim	potuerīmus
potuerīs	potuerītis
potuerit	potuerint

Pluperfect

potuissem	potuissēmus
potuissēs	potuissētis
potuisset	potuissent

INFINITIVE

*Pres. posse, to be able**Perf. potuisse, to have been able*

PARTICIPLE

Pres. potēns, powerful (used as adjective)

41.

fiō, be made, be done

Principal Parts: fiō, fierī, factus sum

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	fiō, fis, fit fīmus, fītis, fīunt	fīam, fīās, etc.
<i>Impf.</i>	fīēbam	fīerem
<i>Fut.</i>	fīam, fīēs, etc.	
<i>Perf.</i>	factus sum	factus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	factus eram	factus essem
<i>Fut. P.</i>	factus erō	

	IMPERATIVE			INFINITIVE
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	fieri
<i>Pres.</i>	fī,	fīte	<i>Perf.</i>	factus esse
			<i>Fut.</i>	factum iri

PARTICIPLE

<i>Perf.</i>	factus
<i>Fut.</i>	faciendus (<i>Gerundive</i>)

42.

eō, go

Principal Parts: eō, ire, iī (īvī), itum

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Present</i>			
eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
is	ītis	eās	eātis
it	eunt	eat	eant
<i>Imperfect</i>			
ībam	ībāmus	īrem	īrēmus
ībās	ībātis	īrēs	īrētis
ībat	ībant	īret	īrent
<i>Future</i>			
ībō	ībimus		
ībīs	ībītis		
ībīt	ībunt		
<i>Perfect</i>			
īī (īvī)	īimus	īerim	īerīmus
īstī	īstis	īerīs	īerītis
īt	īerunt	īerit	īerint

Pluperfect

ieram	ierāmus	īsem	īssēmus
ierās	ierātis	īssēs	īssētis
ierat	ierant	īssēt	īssent

Future Perfect

ierō	ierimus
ieris	ieritis
ierit	ierint

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

Sing. ī

Plur. īte

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLES

Pres. ire

iēns (*genitive, euntis*)

Perf. īsse

Fut. itūrus esse

itūrus

GERUND

SUPINE

Gen. eundī

Dat. eundō

Acc. eundum

Abl. eundō

itum

itū

13.

*ferō, bear; passive, be borne**Principal Parts: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum*

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

ferō	feram	feror	ferar
fers	ferās	ferris	ferāris
fert	ferat	fertur	ferātur
ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
fertis	ferātis	feriminī	ferāminī
ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur

Imperfect

ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
ferēbās	ferrēs	ferēbāris	ferrēris
ferēbat	ferret	ferēbātur	ferrētur
ferēbāmus	ferrēmus	ferēbāmur	ferrēmur
ferēbātis	ferrētis	ferēbāminī	ferrēminī
ferēbant	ferrent	ferēbantur	ferrentur

Future

feram	ferar
ferēs	ferēris (-re)
feret	ferētur
ferēmus	ferēmur
ferētis	ferēminī
ferent	ferentur

Perfect

tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
------	---------	-----------	-----------

Pluperfect

tuleram	tulisses	lātus eram	lātus essem
---------	----------	------------	-------------

Future Perfect

tulerō	—	lātus erō	—
--------	---	-----------	---

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

<i>Sing.</i> fer	<i>Plur.</i> ferte	<i>Sing.</i> ferre	<i>Plur.</i> ferimini
------------------	--------------------	--------------------	-----------------------

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> ferre	<i>Pres.</i> ferrī
<i>Perf.</i> tulisse	<i>Perf.</i> lātus esse
<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus esse	<i>Fut.</i> lātum irī

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i> ferēs	<i>Perf.</i> lātus
<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus	<i>Fut.</i> ferendus (<i>Gerundive</i>)

GERUND

<i>Gen.</i> ferendī
<i>Dat.</i> ferendō
<i>Acc.</i> ferendum
<i>Abl.</i> ferendō

SUPINE (ACTIVE)

lātum
lātū

44. **volō**, *be willing, wish*; **nōlō**, *be unwilling*

Principal Parts: **volō**, **velle**, **voluī**
nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	volō	velim	<i>Pres.</i>	nōlō	nōlim
	vīs	velis		nōn vīs	nōlīs
	vult	velit		nōn vult	nōlit
	volumus	velīmus		nōlumus	nōlīmus
	vultis	velītis		nōn vultis	nōlītis
	volunt	velint		nōlunt	nōlint
<i>Impf.</i>	volēbam	vellem	<i>Impf.</i>	nōlēbam	nōllem
<i>Fut.</i>	volam		<i>Fut.</i>	nōlam	
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	voluerim	<i>Perf.</i>	nōluī	nōluerim
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram	voluissem	<i>Plup.</i>	nōlueram	nōluissem
<i>Fut. P.</i>	voluerō		<i>Fut. P.</i>	nōluerō	

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

Sing. nōlī *Plur.* nōlīte

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	<i>Pres.</i>	nōlle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	<i>Perf.</i>	nōluisse

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns	<i>Pres.</i>	nōlēns
--------------	--------	--------------	--------

IMPERSONAL VERBS

45. licet, *it is allowed*

Principal Parts: licet, licēre, licuit (**licitum est**)

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	licet	<i>Pres.</i>	liceat
<i>Impf.</i>	licēbat	<i>Impf.</i>	licēret
<i>Fut.</i>	licēbit		
<i>Perf.</i>	licuit (licitum est)	<i>Perf.</i>	licuerit (licitum sit)
<i>Plup.</i>	licuerat	<i>Plup.</i>	licuisset (licitum esset)
<i>Fut. P.</i>	licuerit		

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	licēre	<i>Perf.</i>	licuisse	<i>Fut.</i>	licitūrum esse
--------------	--------	--------------	----------	-------------	----------------

46. ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

laudātūrus sum, *I am about to praise*

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	laudātūrus sum
<i>Impf.</i>	laudātūrus eram
<i>Fut.</i>	laudātūrus erō
<i>Perf.</i>	laudātūrus fuī
<i>Plup.</i>	laudātūrus fueram
<i>Fut. P.</i>	laudātūrus fuerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	laudātūrus sim
<i>Impf.</i>	laudātūrus essem
<i>Perf.</i>	laudātūrus fuerim
<i>Plup.</i>	laudātūrus fuisset

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	laudātūrus esse
<i>Perf.</i>	laudātūrus fuisse

47. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

laudandus sum, *I am to be praised*

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	laudandus sum
<i>Impf.</i>	laudandus eram
<i>Fut.</i>	laudandus erō
<i>Perf.</i>	laudandus fuī
<i>Plup.</i>	laudandus fueram
<i>Fut. P.</i>	laudandus fuerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	laudandus sim
<i>Impf.</i>	laudandus essem
<i>Perf.</i>	laudandus fuerim
<i>Plup.</i>	laudandus fuisset

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	laudandus esse
<i>Perf.</i>	laudandus fuisse

RULES OF SYNTAX

48. Agreement.

1. A noun in apposition with another noun or a pronoun agrees with it in *case*. (98)¹
2. An adjective, whether attributive or predicate, agrees with its noun in *gender*, *number*, and *case*. (119)
3. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; its *case* depends on its relation to other words of its clause. (329)
4. A finite verb agrees with its subject in *number* and *person*. (26)

¹ Numbers in parentheses refer to sections of the Lessons.

49. Nominative Case.

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case. (26)
2. A predicate noun is in the nominative case after the verbs *be*, *become*, *seem*, and the passive verbs *be made*, *be called*, *be chosen*, and the like. (99 and 191, a)

50. Vocative Case.

The name of the person or thing *addressed* is in the vocative case. (551)

51. Genitive Case.

1. A noun limiting the meaning of another noun, and not denoting the same person or thing, is in the genitive case. (General rule.)
2. A word denoting the owner or *the possessor* is in the genitive case. (51)
3. The genitive may denote *the whole*, depending on a word denoting a part. (530)
4. The genitive of a noun, with an adjective in agreement, may be used to *describe* another noun. (532)
5. The genitive is used with certain nouns and adjectives to denote the *object* of an action or feeling implied. (353)

a. The nouns and adjectives so used denote *desire*, *knowledge*, *memory*, *fulness*, or their opposites.

52. Dative Case.

1. The dative of the indirect object is used with *transitive* verbs, in connection with the accusative of the direct object. (60)
2. The dative of the indirect object is used with verbs meaning *favor*, *help*, *please*, *trust*, and their opposites; *believe*, *persuade*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*; *envy*, *threaten*, *pardon*, *spare*. These verbs in Latin may be intransitive. (437)
3. The dative of the indirect object is used with some verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**. (457)
4. The dative is used with the verb **sum** to denote the *possessor*. (459)
5. The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation to denote the *agent*. (574)
6. The dative is used with adjectives meaning *near*, *like*, *equal*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *suitable*, and their opposites. (246)

53. Accusative Case.

1. The *direct object* of a verb is in the accusative case. (42)
2. The verbs *name*, *call*, *choose*, *make*, and the like, take two

accusatives, one of the direct object, the other a *predicate accusative*. (191)

3. The accusative is used with certain prepositions, forming prepositional phrases. (541)

4. The *place to which* is regularly expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in**; but with names of towns, **domus**, and **rūs**, the preposition is omitted. (282)

5. The accusative is used to denote *duration of time*. (291)

6. The accusative is used to denote *extent of space*. (523)

7. The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative case. (342)

54. Ablative Case.

1. The ablative is used with certain prepositions, forming prepositional phrases. (541)

2. The *means or instrument* of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. (66)

3. *Accompaniment* is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **cum**. (136)

4. The *manner* of an action may be expressed by the ablative with **cum**, but **cum** may be omitted if an adjective modifies the noun. (137)

5. With a passive verb the *person by whom* an act is performed is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**. (150)

6. Verbs denoting *separation* require an ablative to complete their meaning, with or without **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**. (221)

7. The *place from which* is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**; but with names of towns, **domus**, and **rūs**, the preposition is omitted. (281)

8. The *place in which* is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in**; but the locative case is used for **domus**, **rūs**, and the names of towns in the singular number. (279 and 280)

9. *Time when or within which* anything is or is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. (292)

10. The ablative without a preposition is used to express *cause or reason*. (362)

11. The ablative without a preposition is used to show *in what respect* the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective applies. (378)

12. The ablative is used with the deponent verbs **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vēscor**. (403)

13. A comparative without **quam** is followed by the ablative; but when **quam** is used the words denoting the things compared are in the same case. (472)

14. The ablative is used with comparatives to express the *measure of difference*. (473)

15. The ablative of a noun, with an adjective in agreement, may be used to *describe* a noun. (532)

16. A noun or pronoun in the ablative, with a noun, an adjective, or a participle in agreement, may be used to express *time, cause, condition*, or other relation. (565)

55. Noun Clauses.

1. *Volitive*¹ noun clauses introduced by **ut** or **nē**, and having the verb in the subjunctive, depend on verbs meaning *advise, command, demand, induce, permit, persuade, urge*. (439)

2. Noun clauses of *result* introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn**, and having the verb in the subjunctive, depend on verbs meaning *happen, accomplish, cause*. (448)

56. Adverbial Clauses.

1. Clauses expressing the *purpose* of an action take the subjunctive with **ut**, **nē**, **quō**, or a relative. (420)

2. Clauses expressing the *result* of an action take the subjunctive with **ut** or **ut nōn**. (447)

3. Temporal clauses with **postquam** or **ubi** take the perfect indicative. (310, a)

4. Temporal clauses with **cum** take the subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect to describe the circumstances of an action. (513)

5. Temporal clauses with **dum**, meaning *while* or *as long as*, take the indicative. (605, a, b)

6. Temporal clauses with **dum**, *until*, or **priusquam**, take the indicative of an *actual* event, but the subjunctive of an *expected* event. (605, c)

7. Causal clauses with **quod** take the indicative to state the reason of the speaker or writer; the subjunctive, to state the reason of another. (612, a)

8. Causal clauses with **cum** take the subjunctive. (612, b)

9. Conditional sentences take the indicative in both clauses, when the condition is stated as a fact. (621)

10. Conditional sentences take the subjunctive in both clauses, when the condition is stated as less probable, or contrary to fact. (621)

57. Infinitive.

1. An infinitive may be used to complete the meaning of another verb, as, *be able, begin, dare, decide, hasten, hesitate, prepare, ought, seem, wish*. (110)

2. An infinitive with subject accusative is used with verbs meaning *say, think, know, perceive*. (343)

¹ Expressing an *act wanted*.

58. Sequence of Tenses.

In complex sentences primary tenses are used in clauses that depend upon primary tenses, secondary tenses in clauses that depend upon secondary tenses. (430)

59. Questions and Answers.

1. Questions may be introduced by interrogative pronouns, interrogative adjectives, or interrogative adverbs, especially **-ne**, **nōne**, or **num**. (197, 198, *a*)

2. Questions may be answered by repeating the verb (with **nōn**, if negative), or by using the adverbs **certē**, *certainly*, **ita**, *so*, *yes*, **nōn**, *no*, **minimē**, *by no means*. (198)

3. An indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive. (502)

60. Order of Words.

1. GENERAL RULE. The normal order of words in a Latin sentence is (1) the subject, (2) the modifiers of the subject, (3) the modifiers of the verb, (4) the verb. (68)

2. A genitive normally follows the noun that it limits. (50, *a*)

3. An indirect object normally stands before the direct object. (59, *b*)

4. An ablative normally precedes the object and other modifiers of the verb. (68, *b*)

5. A vocative normally follows one or more words of the sentence. (551, *b*)

6. An adjective normally follows its noun. Adjectives of quantity and demonstrative adjectives precede their nouns. (22 and page 75, footnote)

7. An adverb normally stands just before the word it modifies. (68, *c*)

8. Any word becomes *emphatic* by standing out of its normal position. (68)

9. *Special words*: **Causā** follows a genitive; the adjective **Rōmānus** follows its noun; **ferē** usually follows the word it modifies; **inquit** follows one or more words of a quotation.

10. A preposition of one syllable often stands between its noun and a modifying adjective. (Page 40, footnote)

11. The preposition **cum**, when used with a personal, reflexive, or relative pronoun, follows the pronoun and is joined to it as an enclitic. (18)

VOCABULARIES

ABBREVIATIONS

<p><i>abl.</i> ablative <i>acc.</i> accusative <i>adj.</i> adjective <i>adv.</i> adverb <i>comp.</i> comparative <i>conj.</i> conjunction <i>dat.</i> dative <i>def.</i> defective <i>dem.</i> demonstrative <i>dep.</i> deponent <i>F., fem.</i> feminine <i>fut.</i> future <i>fut. p.</i> future perfect <i>gen.</i> genitive <i>imper.</i> imperative <i>impers.</i> impersonal <i>impf.</i> imperfect <i>indecl.</i> indeclinable <i>indef.</i> indefinite <i>ind.</i> indicative <i>inf.</i> infinitive</p>	<p><i>interrog.</i> interrogative <i>lit.</i> literally <i>loc.</i> locative <i>M., masc.</i> masculine <i>N., neut.</i> neuter <i>nom.</i> nominative <i>obj.</i> object <i>part.</i> participle <i>pass.</i> passive <i>perf.</i> perfect <i>pl., plur.</i> plural <i>plup.</i> pluperfect <i>poss.</i> possessive <i>pred.</i> predicate <i>prep.</i> preposition <i>pres.</i> present <i>pron.</i> pronoun <i>rel.</i> relative <i>sing.</i> singular <i>subj.</i> subjunctive <i>sup.</i> superlative</p>
---	--

In the English pronunciation of proper names the sounds of the vowels are as follows:

1. *a* as in *fat*
2. *ā* as in *fate*
3. *ä* as in *far*
4. *â* as in *fall*
5. *ä* as in *idea*

1. *e* as in *met*
2. *ē* as in *me*
3. *ê* as in *episcopal*
4. *é* as in *her*
5. *ē* as in *prudent*

1. *i* as in *pin*
2. *ī* as in *pine*

1. *o* as in *not*
2. *ō* as in *note*
3. *ō* as in *democrat*
4. *ö* as in *move*

1. *u* as in *tub*
2. *ū* as in *mule*
3. *ū* as in *singular*

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

ā, ab, prep. w. abl., *away from, from, by, on the side of*; as adv., *off*; as a prefix, *away*.

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum [ab+dō], *put away, hide*.

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [ab+dūcō], *lead away*.

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [ab+iaciō], *throw away*.

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [ab+teneō], *hold from, keep from, restrain*.

absum, abesse, āfui [ab+sum], *be away, be distant*.

ac, *and*, used only before consonants; see *atque*.

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [ad+cēdō, *make way*], *go to, approach, be added*.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, — [ad+cadō], *fall to, befall, happen*; **accidit**, *impers., it happens*.

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [ad+capiō], *take to, receive, accept*; *hear*.

accurrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum [ad+currō], *run to, hasten to*.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *accuse, find fault with*.

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, keen, active*.

acerbus, -a, -um, *bitter, sour*.

aciēs, -ēi, F., *edge, line, battle line, army*.

ācriter, adv., *sharply, fiercely*.

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, toward, till, against, near*; adv. (w. numerals), *about*; as prefix, *to*.

addō, addere, addidī, additum [ad+dō], *give to, add*.

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [ad+dūcō], *lead to, bring to, influence*.

adferō, adferre, attulī, adlātum [ad+ferō], *bring to, offer*.

adgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum [ad+gradior, *step, go*], *dep., go toward, attack*.

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tum [ad+iungō], *join to, add*.

adligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad+ligō, *bind*], *bind to, tie to*.

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [ad+mittō], *send to, let in, let go, allow*; **equō admissō**, *at full speed*.

admoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mō-tum [ad+moveō], *bring to, apply, move up*.

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum [ad+orior, *rise*], *dep., rise against, attack*.

adpropinquō, see *appropinquō*.

adsum, -esse, -fui [ad+sum], *be at hand, be near, be present*.

adventus, -ūs, M. [veniō], *a coming to, arrival, approach*.

adversus, -a, -um [advertō], *adverse, opposite, unfavorable*.

- advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum
[ad+vertō, *turn*], *turn to, turn toward*.
- aedificium, -ī, N., *a building*.
- aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [aedēs, *house, faciō*], *build*.
- Aenēās, Aenēae, M., *Aeneas*.
- aestās, -tātis, F., *summer*.
- ager, agrī, M., *field, territory*.
- agmen, -inis, N., *an army* (on the march); novissimum agmen, *the rear* (of an army).
- agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *put in motion, drive, do, discourse*.
- agricola, -ae, M., *farmer*.
- āla, -ae, F., *wing*.
- aliēnus, -a, -um [alius], *another's, foreign, unfavorable*.
- aliquandō, adv., *sometime, once*.
- aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron., *some, any*.
- alius, -a, -ud, *another, other* (of more than two).
- Allobrogēs, -um, M., *the Allobroges* (a-lob'rō-jēz), a Gallic tribe.
- Alpēs, -ium, F., *the Alps*.
- alter, -era, -erum, *the other* (of two); alter — alter, *the one — the other*; pl., *one party — the other*.
- altitūdō, -inis, F. [altus], *height, depth*.
- altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*.
- amicitia, -ae, F. [amicus], *friendship*.
- amicus, -a, -um, *friendly*; as noun, M., *friend*.
- āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [ā+mittō], *send away, let go, lose*.
- amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *love*.
- amor, -ōris, M., *love*.
- āmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [a+moveō], *take away*.
- amplius (comp. of amplē), adv., *farther, longer, more*.
- amplus, -a, -um, *large, ample*.
- angustiae, -ārum, F. [angustus], *narrowness, a narrow pass*.
- angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*.
- animal, animālis, N., *animal*.
- animus, -ī, M., *soul, mind, feeling, spirit, courage*.
- annus, -ī, M., *a year*.
- ante, adv., or prep. w. acc., *before*.
- anteā, adv., *before, formerly*.
- antīquus, -a, -um [ante], *ancient, former*.
- apertus, -a, -um, *open, exposed, unprotected*.
- appāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *appear*.
- appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call* (by name), *address*.
- appetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petitum [ad+petō], *seek for, have a desire for*.
- appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad+propinquō], *draw near to, approach*.
- Aprīlis, -e, *of April*.
- apud, prep. w. acc., *among, near, at, with, in the presence of*.
- aqua, -ae, F., *water*.
- Aquilēia, -ae, F., *Aquileia* (ak-wi-lē'ya), a town at the head of the Adriatic.
- Aquitāni, -ōrum, M., *the Aquitani* (ak-wi-tā'nī), *Aquitanians*, a nation of southern Gaul.
- Aquitānia, -ae, F., *Aquitania*.
- Arar, Araris, M., *the Saône* (sōn), a river of Gaul.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.,

think, judge.

arbor, arboris, F., *tree.*

arceō, -ēre, -uī, —, *keep off.*

argenteus, -a, -um, *of silver, silver.*

argentum, -ī, N., *silver.*

arma, -ōrum, N., *arms (equipment).*

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *arm, equip.*

ars, artis, F., *art.*

ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, as-

cēnsus, *climb, ascend.*

ascēsus, -ūs, M., *a climbing up, ascent.*

at, conj., *but.*

atque (ac), conj., *and also, as.*

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum

[ad+tangō, *touch*], *touch upon, border upon, reach.*

auctōritās, -tātis, F., *influence, authority, advice.*

audācia, -ae, F. [audāx], *boldness.*

audācter, adv., *boldly.*

audāx, audācis, *bold.*

audiō, -ire, -īvī, -ītum, *hear.*

aureus, -a, -um, *of gold, golden.*

aurum, -ī, N., *gold.*

aut, conj., *or; aut—aut, either—or.*

autem, conj., *on the other hand, but, furthermore, besides.*

auxilium, -ī, N., *help, aid; pl., auxiliaries.*

avārus, -a, -um, *greedy.*

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum

[ā+vertō, *turn*], *turn off, turn away, retreat.*

avis, avis, F., *bird.*

āvolo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ā+volō, *fly*], *fly away.*

avus, -ī, M., *grandfather.*

Axona, -ae, F., *the Aisne (ān), a river of Gaul.*

B

beātus, -a, -um, *happy.*

Belgae, -ārum, M., *the Belgae* (bel'jē), *Belgians*, a nation of northern Gaul.

bellicōsus, -a, -um [bellum], *war-like.*

bellum, -ī, N., *war.*

bene, adv. [bonus], *well.*

beneficium, -ī, N., *well-doing, kindness, benefit.*

Bibracte, -is, N., *Bibracte* (bibrak'tē), a town of the Haedui.

bīduum, -ī, N. [diēs], *two days.*

bonitās, -tātis, F. [bonus], *goodness, excellence; fertility.*

bonus, -a, -um, *good.*

bōs, bovis (gen. pl., boum), M. or F., *ox, cow; pl., cattle.*

brevis, -e, *short.*

Britannī, -ōrum, M., *the Britons.*

Britannia, -ae, F., *Britain.*

Brūtus, -ī, M., *Brutus.*

C

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall.*

caelum, -ī, N., *sky, heavens.*

Caesar, Caesaris, M., *Gaius Julius Caesar*, a Roman general, statesman and writer; born 100 B.C., assassinated 44 B.C.; governor of Gaul 58-49 B.C.

calamitās, -tātis, F., *disaster, defeat.*

calor, -ōris, M., *heat, warmth.*

campus, -ī, M., *plain, field.*

canis, canis, M., *dog.*

cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *sing.*

cantus, -ūs, M., *song.*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *take, seize.*

- captivus, -ī, M.** [capiō], *captive, prisoner.*
caput, capitis, N., head.
carrus, -ī, M., cart.
Carthāgō, -inis, F., Carthage, a city in northern Africa.
cārus, -a, -um, dear.
Cassius, -ī, M., Lucius Cassius, a Roman general.
castellum, -ī, N., fort, redoubt.
Casticus, -ī, M., Casticus, a chief of the Sequani.
castra, -ōrum, N. [castrum, fort], camp.
cauda, -ae, F., tail.
causa, -ae, F., cause; abl., causā, for the sake.
cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, go from, go away, depart.
celer, celeris, celere, quick, rapid.
celeritās, -tātis, F. [celer], quickness, speed.
celeriter (celerius, celerrimē), adv., quickly.
Celtae, -ārum, M., the Celts, inhabitants of central Gaul.
cēnsus, -ūs, M., enumeration, census.
centum, indecl. adj., hundred.
centuriō, -ōnis, M. [centum], centurion, commander of a hundred.
cēra, -ae, F., wax.
Cerēs, Cereris, F., Ceres (sē'rēz), goddess of agriculture.
certāmen, -inis, N., contest.
certē, adv., surely.
certus, -a, -um, sure, certain; certiorē facere, to inform.
cibus, -ī, M., food.
Cicerō, -ōnis, M., Cicero (sis'ċ-rō).
circiter, adv., about.
circum, prep. w. acc., around, about; as prefix, around.
circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [circum + dūcō], lead around.
circumveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum [circum + veniō], come around, surround.
citerior, -ius, comp. adj. (citrā), nearer, hither.
citrā, adv., or prep. w. acc., this side (of), within.
cīvis, cīvis, M., citizen.
cīvitās, -ātis, F. (cīvis), citizenship, state, tribe, citizens.
clāmor, -ōris, M., shouting, clamor.
clārus, -a, -um, clear, bright; fāmous.
classis, classis, F., fleet.
claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, shut, close.
cliēns, -entis, M. or F., client, vassal; patient.
coēmō, -ēmere, -ēmī, -ēptum [con + emō], buy up, purchase.
coepī, coepisse, def. verb, began.
coërceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, control, restrain, check.
cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, learn, recognize; perf., have learned, hence, know.
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum [con + agō], drive together, collect, compel.
cohors, cohortis, F., cohort, tenth part of a legion.
cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. [con + hortor], exhort, encourage.
collis, collis, M., hill.
colō, colere, coluī, cultum, till, cultivate.
combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstum

- [con+ūrō, burn], burn up, consume.
- comes, comitis, M. OR F., companion, comrade.
- commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+memorō], call to mind, recount, mention, relate.
- committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [con+mittō], send together, commit, intrust, permit, join, begin.
- commodē, adv., conveniently.
- commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [con+moveō], move deeply, disturb, alarm.
- commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+mūtō], change (completely), exchange.
- comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+parō], get ready, prepare, procure.
- comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertum, learn, discover, ascertain.
- compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill up, fill.
- complūrēs, -a (-ia), many, very many.
- comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+portō], bring together.
- con- (com-, comb-, co-), prefix, together.
- concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [con+cēdō, make way], yield, concede, grant, allow.
- concidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum [con+caedō, cut], cut down, kill.
- conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bring together, win over, secure, gain.
- concilium, -ī, N., meeting, assembly, council, conference.
- concursum, -ūs, M., running together, onset.
- condiciō, -ōnis, F. (a speaking together), terms, terms of agreement.
- condō, condere, condidī, conditum [con+dō], put together, build, found.
- condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [con+dūcō], bring together.
- cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātum [con+ferō], bring together, collect; sē cōnferre, to retreat.
- cōnferthus, -a, -um, crowded, in close order.
- cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [con+faciō], do thoroughly, accomplish, complete.
- cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+firmō, strengthen], make firm, strengthen, establish, assure, declare.
- coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [con+iaciō], throw together, hurl.
- coniūrātiō, -ōnis, F. [coniūrō], conspiracy.
- coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+iūrō, swear together], conspire.
- conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+locō], place together, station.
- cōnōr, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., try, attempt.
- cōnsanguineus, -a, -um [sanguis, blood], related by blood; as noun, M., kinsman.
- cōnsciscō, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītum [con+sciscō], decree, resolve; w. mortem, commit suicide.
- cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scripsī, -scriptum [con+scrībō], write together, enroll, levy.

- cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum
[con+sequor], *follow up, pursue, obtain.*
- cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+servō], *save, spare, protect, keep.*
- cōnsidius, -i, M., *Considius*, a Roman soldier.
- cōnsidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum
[con+sīdō, sit down], *encamp, settle.*
- cōnsilium, -ī, N., *counsel, plan.*
- cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum,
take a stand.
- cōnspectus, -ūs, M. (*a looking at*),
sight.
- cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum
[con+speciō, look], *catch sight of, see.*
- cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.,
perceive.
- cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitutum
[con+statuō, set together],
put, station, decide, appoint.
- cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum,
become accustomed; perf., be accustomed, be wont.
- cōnsul, cōnsulis, M., *consul.*
- cōnsulātus, -ūs, M. [cōnsul], *consulship.*
- cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūmptum
[con+sūmō], *destroy, consume.*
- contemnō, -temnere, -tempī, -temptum,
despise, scorn.
- contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum
[con+tendō, stretch tight],
strive, fight, contend, hasten.
- continenter, adv., *continually.*
- contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum
[con+teneō], *hold together, restrain, bound, hem in.*
- contrā, prep. w. acc., and adv., *opposite, against.*
- conveniō, -venire, -vērī, -ventum
[con+veniō], *come together, meet, assemble.*
- convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum
[con+vertō], *turn; signa convertere, wheel about.*
- convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+vocō],
call together, summon.
- cōpia, -ae, F., *plenty, supply, number; pl., forces, troops.*
- cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *well-supplied, wealthy.*
- Corinthus, -ī, F., *Corinth*, a city of Greece.
- Cornēlia, -ae, F., *Cornelia.*
- cornū, -ūs, N., *horn, wing (of an army).*
- corpus, corporis, N., *body.*
- cotidiānus, -a, -um, *daily.*
- cotidiē, adv., *daily.*
- crās, adv., *tomorrow.*
- Crassus, -ī, M., *Publius Crassus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, *thick; frequent, numerous, repeated.*
- crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum,
believe, suppose.
- creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum, *create, elect, make.*
- cultus, -ūs, M. [colō], *civilization.*
- cum, prep. w. abl., *with.*
- cum, conj., *when, since, although.*
- cūnctus, -a, -um [coniūnctus], *all (taken together), entire.*
- cupidē, adv., *eagerly.*
- cupiditās, -tātis, F., *desire, longing.*
- cupidus, -a, -um, *desirous, eager.*
- cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *desire, be eager.*

cūr, adv., *why*.

cūra, -ae, F., *care, attention*.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *care for*;
(w. gerundive), *have (something done), cause*.

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum,
run.

currus, -ūs, M., *chariot*.

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *watch*.

D

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *condemn*.

dē, prep. w. abl., *down from, from, concerning, of, about, during*;
as prefix, *down, utterly; off, away*.

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *owe, ought*.

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
[dē+cēdō], *go away, depart, withdraw*.

decem, indecl. adj., *ten*.

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, — [dē+
cadō], *fall down, fall*.

decimus, -a, -um, *tenth*.

dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+
clārō], *make clear, reveal, declare*.

dēditiō, -ōnis, F. (*a giving up*), *surrender*.

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum [dē+
dō], *give up, surrender*.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēn-
sum, *keep off, defend, protect*.

dēfessus, -a, -um, *wearied, exhausted*.

dēficiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [dē+
iaciō], *throw down, dislodge; w. spē, disappoint*.

deinde, adv., *then, next*.

dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *blot out*.

dēlibērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *deliberate, ponder*.

dēliciae, -ārum, F., *luxuries*.

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum [dē+
legō], *choose, select*.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+
migrō], *move away*.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+
mōnstrō], *point out, explain*.

dēnique, adv., *at length, finally*.

dēnsus, -a, -um, *dense*.

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum
[dē+pellō], *drive away, avert*.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum
[dē+pōnō], *lay aside; w. memoria, blot out*.

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī,
-scēnsus [dē+scandō, *climb down*], *descend*.

dēscribō, -scribere, -scripsī,
-scriptum, *divide, mark off*.

dēsiliō, -silire, -siluī, -sultum
[dē+saliō], *leap down, dismount*.

dēsum, deesse, dēfui [dē+sum],
be lacking, be wanting, fail.

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *swallow, devour*.

deus, -ī, M., *god*.

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right: dextra (manus), the right hand*.

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, *say, tell, speak*.

dictiō, -ōnis, F. [dīcō], (*a speaking*), *pleading*.

diēs, -ēī, M. or F., *day, time*.

differō, differre, distulī, dilātum
[dis+ferō, *bear apart*], *differ*.

difficilis, -e [dis+facilis], *not easy, difficult*.

difficultās, -tātis, F., *difficulty*.

diligēns, -entis, [diligō], *careful, diligent.*

diligenter, adv. [diligēns], *carefully, diligently.*

diligentia, -ae, F. [diligēns], *carefulness, diligence.*

dimitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum [di+mittō, send a part], *dismiss.*

dis-, di-, prefix, *apart, away, not.*

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum [dis+cēdō, go apart], *depart, withdraw.*

discō, discere, didici, —, *learn.*

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [dis+iaciō], *throw apart, break, scatter.*

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum [dis+pōnō, place apart], *arrange, station.*

dissimilis, -e [dis+similis], *unlike.*

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum [dis+tribuō], *distribute, assign, divide.*

diū, adv., *for a long time.*

Diviciācus, -ī, M., *Diviciacus* (div-i-shi-ā'kus), a chief of the Haedui.

Divicō, -ōnis, M., *Divico* (div'i-kō), a chief of the Helvetii.

dividō, -videre, -visi, -visum, *divide, separate.*

dō, dare, dedi, datum, *give.*

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, *teach.*

domina, -ae, F., *mistress.*

dominus, -ī, M. [domus], *master* (of a house).

domus, -ūs, F., *house, home; domi, at home.*

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *give, present'.*

dōnum, -ī, N., *gift.*

dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful; neut., as noun, doubt.*

ducentī, -ae, -a [duo+centum], *two hundred.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, *lead, draw, consider, prolong.*

dum, conj., *while, as long as, until.*

Dumnorix, -īgis, M., *Dumnorix* (dum'nō-riks), a chief of the Haedui.

duo, duae, duo, *two.*

duodecim [duo+decem], indecl. adj., *twelve.*

dux, ducis, M. [dūcō], *leader, guide.*

E

ē, ex, prep. w. abl., *out of, from, of; as prefix, out, forth.*

edō, edere, ēdi, ēsum, *eat.*

1. ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *bring up, educate.*

2. ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum [ē+dūcō], *lead out.*

effērō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum [ex+ferō], *bear out, take away, elate.*

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [ex+faciō], *bring about, cause, accomplish.*

ego, mei, *I.*

ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum [ē+gradior, step], *go out, march out.*

ēgregius, -a, -um, *uncommon, remarkable.*

ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum [ē+mittō], *send forth, discharge, hurl, throw aside.*

emō, emere, emī, emptum, *buy.*

enim, conj., *for.*

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ē+nūntiō], *tell out, report.*

1. eō, ire, iī (īvī), itum, go.
 2. eō, adv., to that place, thither.
 eōdem, adv., to the same place.
 epistula, -ae, F., letter, epistle.
 eques, equitis, M., horseman; pl., cavalry.
 equester, -tris, -tre [eques], belonging to a horseman, cavalry.
 equitātus, -ūs, M. [eques], cavalry.
 equus, equī, M., horse.
 ēripiō, -ripere, -ripiū, -reptum [ē + rapiō, seize], snatch away, rescue; sē ēripere, to escape.
 et, conj., and.
 etiam, conj. and adv., and also, also, even.
 etsī, conj., even if, although.
 Eurōpa, -ae, F., Europe.
 ex, see ē.
 exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex + clāmō], cry out, exclaim.
 exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum [ex + eō], go out.
 exercitus, -ūs, M. [exerceō, exercise], (a trained body), army.
 existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think, estimate.
 expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum [ex + pellō], drive out, expel.
 experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, dep., try, test, experience.
 explorātor, -ōris, M., scout, spy.
 expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex + pugnō], take by storm, capture.
 exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum [ex + sequor], follow out, enforce, execute.
 exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, look out for, await, expect.
 extrā, adv. and prep. w. acc., outside of, beyond.

extrēmus, -a, -um, outermost, farthest, extreme.

F

fābula, -ae, F., story, fable.
 facile, adv., easily.
 facilis, -e, easy.
 faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, make, do.
 facultās, -tātis, F. [faciō], opportunity (of doing), means; pl., resources.
 fāma, -ae, F., report, fame, reputation.
 famēs, famis, F., hunger.
 familia, -ae, F., household, retinue.
 fēliciter, adv. [fēlix], happily, successfully, favorably.
 fēlis, fēlis, F., cat.
 fēmina, -ae, F., woman.
 ferāx, -ācis, [ferō], fertile.
 ferē, adv., almost.
 ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, carry, bring.
 ferrum, -ī, N., iron.
 fessus, -a, -um, weary, tired.
 fidēs, -eī, F., faith, confidence, protection, pledge.
 filia, -ae, F., daughter.
 filius, -ī, M., son.
 finiō, -īre, -īvī, -itum [finis], limit, bound.
 finis, finis, M., end, limit, boundary; pl. territory.
 finitimus, -a, -um [finis], bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring; finitimī, as noun, neighbors.
 fiō, fierī, factus sum, be made, be done; impers., it happens, the result is.
 firmus, -a, -um, strong, firm.

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum, *turn, bend.*

flos, flōris, M., *flower.*

flūmen, -inis, N. [fluō], *river.*

fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxum, *flow.*

fōrma, -ae, F., *form, shape, beauty.*

forte, adv. [fors], *by chance, perhaps.*

fortis, -e, *strong, brave.*

fortiter, adv., *bravely.*

fortitūdō, -inis, F. [fortis], *bravery.*

fortūna, -ae, F., *chance, fortune, luck; pl., property.*

forum, -ī, N., *market place; especially the Forum, the open space in Rome between the Capitoline and Palatine hills.*

fossa, -ae, F. [fodiō, dig], *ditch, trench.*

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, *break.*

frāter, frātris, M., *brother.*

frigidus, -a, -um, *cold.*

frigus, -oris, N., *cold, coldness.*

frūmentārius, -a, -um [frūmentum], *abounding in grain, fruitful; rēs frūmentāria, supplies.*

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *gather grain.*

frūmentum, -ī, N., *grain; pl., crops.*

frūstrā, adv., *in vain.*

fuga, -ae, F., *flight.*

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum [fuga], *flee.*

fugitivus, -ī, M., *deserter, fugitive.*

fūmus, -ī, M., *smoke.*

G

Gāius, Gāi, Gāiō, etc., M., *Gaius, (gā'yus), a personal name.*

Galba, -ae, M., *Galba, a family name.*

Gallia, -ae, F., *Gaul.*

Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic.*

Gallus, -ī, M., *a Gaul.*

Garumna, -ae, M. OR F., *the Garonne (gā-ron'), a river of Gaul.*

Genava, -ae, F., *Geneva.*

genus, generis, N., *race, tribe, class.*

Germānia, -ae, F., *Germany.*

Germānus, -a, -um, *German.*

Germānus, -ī, M., *a German.*

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, *carry on, wage, do.*

gladius, -ī, M., *sword.*

glōria, -ae, F., *glory, fame, renown.*

Graecia, -ae, F., *Greece.*

Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek, Grecian.*

grātia, -ae, F., *favor, good-will.*

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *congratulate.*

grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing, agreeable.*

gravis, -e, *heavy.*

graviter, adv., *heavily, severely; graviter ferre, be annoyed, be vexed.*

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *have, hold-habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, dwell, live, inhabit, live in.*

Haeduī, -ōrum, M., *the Haedui (hed'ū-ī), a Gallic tribe.*

Haedus, -a, -um, *of the Haedui, Haeduan.*

haereō, haerere, haesī, haesum, *stick.*

Helvētia, -ae, F., *Helvetia (hel-vē'shiä), now Switzerland.*

Helvētīi, -ōrum, M., *the Helvetii (hel-vē'shi-ī), Helvetians.*

Helvētius (Helvēticus), -a, -um, of
the Helvetii, Helvetian.

herī, adv., yesterday.

Hesperidēs, -um, F., the Hesperides
(hes-per'i-dēz).

hīberna, -ōrum, N. (supply castra),
winter quarters.

hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron., this, he,
she, it; pl., these, they.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, pass the
winter.

hiems, hiemis, F., winter.

Hispanī, -ōrum, M., the Spaniards.

Hispania, -ae, F., Spain.

hodiē, adv., this day, today.

homō, -inis, M. or F., a human being,
man.

honor, -ōris, M., honor, respect.

hōra, -ae, F., hour.

Horātius, -ī, M., Horatius (hō-rā'-
shī-us), Horace.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., urge,
encourage.

hortus, -ī, M., garden.

hostis, -is, M., enemy (of the state);
pl., the enemy.

hūmānitās, -tātis, F., refinement,
civilization.

I

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, —, lie, lie down.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, throw.

iaculum, -ī, N., javelin.

iam, adv., by this time, now, al-
ready.

ibi, adv., in that place, there.

īdem, eadem, idem, dem. pron.,
the same.

idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable.

Īdūs, -uum, F., the Ides.

igitur, conj., accordingly, therefore.

īgnis, ignis, M., fire.

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron., that
(yonder).

impedimentum, -ī, N., hindrance,
impediment; pl., baggage, bag-
gage-train.

impediō, -īre, -ivī, -itum [pēs],
entangle, hinder.

imperātor, -ōris, M., commander in
chief, general.

imperium, -ī, N., command, su-
preme power, authority.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, com-
mand, demand, levy.

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, obtain
(by request), bring to pass.

impetus, -ūs, M., attack.

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [in +
portō], bring in, import.

impudēns, -entis, shameless, im-
puudent.

in, prep. w. acc. (of motion), into,
to, toward, against, upon; w. abl.
(of rest), in, on, among, over; as
prefix, in, into, on; negative
prefix, not.

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēn-
sum, set fire to, burn.

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, urge on,
incite.

incola, -ae, M. or F., inhabitant.

incolō, -colere, -coluī, — [in +
colō], dwell in, inhabit.

incommodum, -ī, N., misfortune.

incrēdibilis, -e [in + crēdō, believe],
incredible.

indiciū, -ī, N., information.

indūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum
[in + dūcō], lead into, lead on, in-
duce, exhibit.

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, -dul-
tum, favor.

inermis, -e [in+arma], *unarmed*.

inferior, -ius [inferus], *lower*.

inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātum,
bring into, bring upon, wage upon.

inferus, -a, -um, *low, below*; pl. as
noun, *inhabitants of the lower
world, the dead*.

influō, -fluere, -fluxī, -fluxum, *flow
into, flow*.

ingenium, -ī, N., *ability*.

ingēns, -entis, *vast, huge, enormous*.

inimicus, -a, -um [in+amicus],
unfriendly, hostile; as noun,
enemy.

inīquus, -a, -um [in+aequus], *un-
even, unfair, unfavorable*.

initium, -ī, N., *beginning*.

iniūria, -ae, F. [iūs, right], *wrong,
injustice, injury*.

inopia, -ae, F., *lack, scarcity*.

inquam, inquit, def. verb., pres.
tense, *I say, he says*.

insequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum [in
+sequor], *follow up, pursue*.

insidiāe, -ārum, F., *treachery, am-
buscade, stratagem*.

insigne, -is, N., *sign, decoration*.

insignis, -e, *marked, remarkable*.

institūō, -stituerē, -stitūī, -stitū-
tum [in+statuō], *set up, establish,
begin, train*.

institūtum, -ī, N., *custom, institution*.

instruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūc-
tum [in+struō], *build, draw up,
marshal*.

insula, -ae, F., *island*.

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum
[inter+legō, gather], *learn, know,
understand*.

inter, prep. w. acc., *between,
among*; as prefix, *between*.

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
[inter+cēdō], *go between, inter-
vene*; (of time) *elapse*.

interdum, adv. [inter+dum], *some-
times*.

intereā, adv. [inter+ea], *mean-
while*.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
[inter+faciō], *kill*.

interim, adv., *meanwhile*.

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-
sum [inter+mittō], *stop, inter-
rupt, intervene*; (of time) *let pass*.

intersum, -esse, -fuī [inter+sum],
be between, intervene; impers., *it
concerns, it interests*.

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *enter, pen-
etrate*.

inundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *overflow,
inundate*.

inventor, -ōris, M. [inveniō],
inventor, author.

invitus, -a, -um, *unwilling*.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *intensive pron.,
himself, herself, itself*.

ira, -ae, F., *anger, wrath*.

is, ea, id, dem. pron., *this, that; he,
she, it*.

iste, ista, istud, dem. pron., *that
(of yours)*.

ita, adv., *so, thus*.

Italia, -ae, F., *Italy*.

itaque, conj., *and so, accordingly,
therefore*.

item, adv., *in like manner, likewise*.

iter, itineris, N. [eō], *(a going), way,
route, journey, march*.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *order*.

iūdicium, -ī, N., *judgment, trial*.

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *judge, de-
cide*.

- iugum, -ī, N., *yoke; ridge* (of a mountain).
- Iūlia, -ae, F., *Julia*.
- Iūlius, -ī, *Julius*.
- iumentum, -ī, N., *yoke-animal, beast of burden*.
- iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iunctum, *join*.
- iūnior, comp. of *iuvenis*.
- Iūnō, -ōnis, F., *Juno*, queen of the gods and wife of Jupiter.
- Iuppiter, Iovis, M., *Jupiter*, the supreme god.
- Iūra, -ae, M., *Jura*, a mountain range running from the Rhine to the Rhone.
- iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *swear*.
- iūs, iūris, N., *right, justice, law*.
- iūsiurandum, iūrisiurandī, N., *oath*.
- iūstitia, -ae, F. [iūstus], *justice*.
- iuvenis, iuvenis, gen. pl. iuvenum, adj., *young*; as noun, *youth*.
- iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *help, aid*.
- K**
- Kalendae (Calendae), -ārum, F., *the Calends*, the first day of a month.
- L**
- Labiēnus, -ī, M., *Titus Labienus*, Caesar's chief lieutenant.
- labor, -ōris, M., *labor, toil*.
- labyrinthus, -ī, M., *labyrinth*.
- laccessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *provoke, assault, harass*.
- lacrima, -ae, F., *tear*.
- lacus, -ūs, M., *lake*.
- lapis, lapidis, M., *stone*.
- iātē, adv., *broadly, widely*.
- Latinus, -ī, M., *Latinus* (la-tī'nus), legendary king of Latium.
- Latinus, -a, -um, *Latin*; as noun, Latinī, -ōrum, *the Latini*.
- lātitudō, -inis, F. [lātus], *width*.
- lātus, -a, -um, *broad, wide*.
- latus, -eris, N., *side, flank*.
- laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *praise*.
- laus, laudis, F., *praise*.
- Lāvīnium, -ī, N., *Lavinium*.
- lēgatiō, -ōnis, F., *embassy, mission*.
- lēgātus, -ī, M., *lieutenant, ambassador*.
- legiō, -ōnis, F., *legion*.
- legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, *gather, choose, read*.
- Lemannus, -ī, M., w. lacus, *Lake Geneva*.
- lēnitās, -tātis, F., *smoothness, gentleness*.
- lēx, lēgis, F., *law*.
- libenter, adv., *gladly, willingly*.
- liber, librī, M., *book*.
- liber, -era, -erum, *free*.
- liberālitās, -tātis, F., *liberality*.
- liberē, adv., *freely*.
- liberī, -ōrum, M. [liber], *children, free members of a household*.
- liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *set free, free*.
- libertās, -tātis, F. [liber], *freedom, liberty*.
- licet, licēre, licuit, impers., *it is permitted*.
- lictor, -ōris, M., *lictor*, official attendant of a Roman magistrate.
- Lingonēs, -um, M., *the Lingones* (ling'gō-nēz), a Gallic tribe.
- lingua, -ae, F., *tongue, language*.
- linter, lintris, F., *boat*.
- littera, -ae, F., *letter of the alphabet*; pl., *a letter* (epistle).
- locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *place, locate*.

locus, -ī, M., pl. loca, -ōrum, N.,
place.

longē, adv., *far, by far.*

longitūdō, -inis, F. [longus], *length.*

longus, -a, -um, *long.*

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, dep.,
speak.

Lūcius, -ī, M., *Lucius* (lū'shius), a
Roman name.

lūna, -ae, F., *moon.*

lupa, -ae, F., *she-wolf.*

lūx, lūcis, F., *light.*

M

magis, comp. adv. (sup. maximē),
more, rather.

magister, magistrī, M., *master,*
teacher.

magistrātus, -ūs, M., *magistracy,*
magistrate.

magnificus, -a, -um, *magnificent,*
splendid.

magnitudō, -inis, F. [magnus],
greatness, size.

magnopere, adv., *greatly, espe-*
cially.

magnus, -a, -um (comp. māior,
sup. maximus), *great, large.*

māiestās, -tātis, F. [māior], *great-*
ness, dignity, majesty.

māiōrēs, -um, M. [māior], *ancestors.*

male, adv., *badly.*

maledicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum,
speak ill of, abuse.

maleficiū, -ī, N., *mischievous, harm.*

maleficus, -ī, M., *evil-doer.*

malus, -a, -um, *bad.*

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intrust,*
order; w. sē fugae, take to flight.

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūm,
remain.

manus, -ūs, F., *hand; armed force,*
band.

Mārcus, -ī, M., *Marcus*, a Roman
name.

mare, maris, N., *sea.*

Marius, -ī, M., *Marius* (mā'ri-us),
a famous Roman general.

Massilia, -ae, F., *Massilia*, now
Marseilles.

māter, mātris, F., *mother, matron.*

mātrīmōnium, -ī, N., *marriage.*

Matrona, -ae, M., *the Marne*
(mārn).

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hasten.*

mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe, early.*

maximē, sup. adv. [magnus], *most,*
very greatly, especially.

maximus, see magnus.

medius, -a, -um, *middle, the middle*
of.

membrum, -ī, N., *limb.*

memoria, -ae, F., *recollection, mem-*
ory.

mēnsa, -ae, F., *table.*

mēnsis, -is, M., *month.*

mercātor, -ōris, M., *trader, merchant.*

Mercurius, -ī, M., *Mercury.*

mereor, -ērī, -itus sum, dep., *de-*
serve, merit.

merīdiēs, -ēī, M., *midday, noon.*

Messāla, -ae, M., *Messala* (me-
sā'lā), a family name.

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, dep.,
measure.

meus, -a, -um, *my.*

mīles, militis, M., *soldier.*

militāris, -e [mīles], *pertaining to a*
soldier, military.

mīlle, adj., *a thousand; pl. as noun,*

mīlia, -ium, N.; mīlia passuum,
miles.

minimē, adv., *least, by no means*.
minimus, -a, -um (sup. of **parvus**), *least, very little*.
minor, minus (comp. of **parvus**), *smaller, less*.
minus, adv. [**minor**], *less*.
miser, -era, -erum, *wretched, poor*.
mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful, surprising, strange*.
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send*.
modo, adv., *only*.
molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *grind*.
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *advise, warn*.
mōns, montis, M., *mountain*.
mōnstrum, -ī, N., *monster*.
mora, -ae, F., *delay*.
morior, morī, mortuus sum, dep., *die*.
moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *delay, tarry*.
mors, mortis, F. [**morior**], *death*.
mōs, mōris, M., *manner, custom; pl., customs, character*.
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move*.
mox, adv., *soon, presently*.
mulier, mulieris, F., *woman*.
multitūdō, -inis, F. [**multus**], *great number, multitude*.
multus, -a, -um, *much; pl., many*.
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -itum, *fortify*.
mūnitiō, -ōnis, F. [**mūniō**], *fortification*.
mūrus, -ī, M., *wall*.
mūs, mūris, M., *mouse*.
mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *change*.

N

nam, conj., *for*.
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tell, narrate*.
nātiō, -ōnis, F., *nation, tribe*.
nātūra, -ae, F., *nature, character*.
nauta, -ae, M., *sailor*.
nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *sail*.
nāvis, nāvis, F., *ship*.
nē, conj., *that — not, lest*.
-ne, enclitic interrog. particle; w. direct questions, not to be translated; w. indirect questions, *whether*.
nec, see **neque**.
nesse, indecl. adj., *necessary*.
nēmō, dat. **nēminī**, acc. **nēminem**, M., *no one, nobody*.
neque (nec), conj., *and not; neque — neque, neither — nor*.
neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither*.
nex, necis, F., *death*.
niger, nigra, nigrum, *black*.
nihil, indecl. noun, N., *nothing*.
nisi, conj., *if not, unless*.
nōbilis, -e, *famous, high-born, noble*.
nōbilitās, -tātis, F. [**nōbilis**], *nobility, nobles*.
noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *harm, injure*.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, not wish*.
nōmen, nōminis, N., *name*.
nōminatim, adv. [**nōmen**], *by name*.
nōn, adv., *not*.
nōnāgintā, indecl. adj., *ninety*.
nōndum, adv., *not yet*.
nōnne, interrog. particle, implying an affirmative answer.
nōnnūllus, -a, -um, (*not none*), *some; pl., as noun, some*.

nōnnumquam, adv., (*not never*),
sometimes.

nōs, pl. of ego, *we.*

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, *know.*

noster, -tra, -trum [nōs], *our, ours.*

novem, indecl. adj., *nine.*

novus, -a, -um, *new: novae rēs,*
new state of affairs, revolution;
see agmen.

nox, noctis, F., *night.*

nūdus, -a, -um, *naked, exposed, un-*
protected.

nūllus, -a, -um, *not any, no,*
none.

num, interrog. particle implying a
negative answer.

numerus, -ī, M., *number.*

numquam, adv., *never.*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *report,*
announce.

nūntius, -ī, M., *messenger; message,*
news.

nūper, adv., *recently.*

nympha, -ae, F., *nymph.*

O

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of; as*
prefix, *towards, against, in front.*

obaerātus, -ī, M. [aes, *money*],
debtor.

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [ob+
iaciō], *throw in front, set up; op-*
pose, expose.

obliviscor, obliviscī, oblītus sum,
dep., forget.

obses, obsidis, M. or F., *hostage.*

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum
[ob+teneō], *hold, possess, gain.*

occidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsum [ob+
caedō, *cut*], *kill, slay.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *seize,*
take possession of, occupy.

occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum
[ob+currō, *run*], *run to, meet,*
meet.

Ōceanus, -ī, M., *ocean.*

octō, indecl. adj., *eight.*

octōgintā, indecl. adj., *eighty.*

oculus, -ī, M., *eye.*

odium, -ī, N., *hatred.*

ōlim, adv., *formerly, once, once*
upon a time.

omnīnō, adv. [omnis], *altogether, in*
all.

omnis, -e, *all, every.*

onus, oneris, N., *load, burden,*
weight.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, impers. verb, *it*
is necessary.

oppidānus, -ī, M. [oppidum],
inhabitant of a town, towns-
man.

oppidum, -ī, N., *town.*

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ob+
pugnō], *fight against, attack.*

opus, operis, N., *work.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, F. [ōrō], *speech, ad-*
dress, argument.

ōrātor, -ōris, M. [ōrō], *speaker,*
orator.

orbis, orbis, M., *circle, ring.*

Orgetorix, -igis, M., *Orgetorix* (or-
jet'ō-riks), a chief of the Hel-
vetii.

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *speak, plead,*
entreat.

ōs, ōris, N., *mouh, face.*

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum
[ob+tendō, *stretch*], *show, point*
out, declare.

ōvum, -ī, N., *egg.*

P

pābulum, -ī, N., *food, fodder.*

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [pāx], *pacify, subdue.*

paene, adv., *almost.*

paeninsula, -ae, F. [paene + īnsula], *peninsula.*

pāgus, -ī, M., *canton, district.*

pār, paris, adj., *equal.*

parātus, -a, -um [parō], *prepared, ready.*

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *obey, submit to.*

pariēs, parietis, M., *wall (of a house).*

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *prepare, provide.*

pars, partis, F., *part, side, direction.*

partim, adv. [pars], *partly.*

parvus, -a, -um (comp. minor, sup. minimus), *small, little.*

passus, -ūs, M., *step, pace (five Roman feet); mille passūs, mile; pl. milia passuum.*

pāstor, -ōris, M., *shepherd, herdsman.*

pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie open, stand open, extend.*

pater, patris, M., *father.*

patior, patī, passus sum, dep., *suffer, permit, allow.*

patria, -ae, F. (supply terra), *fatherland, native land, country.*

paucī, -ae, -a, *few.*

pāx, pācis, F., *peace.*

pecūnia, -ae, F. [pecus], *money.*

pedes, peditis, M. [pēs], *foot soldier.*

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive, beat, rout.*

pendeō, pendēre, pependī, —, *hang, be suspended.*

penna, -ae, F., *feather.*

per, prep. w. acc., *through, by, by means of, during; as prefix, through, thoroughly, very.*

peragrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [per + ager], *wander through, wander.*

perducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum [per + dūcō], *lead through, extend.*

perfacile, adv., *very easily.*

perfacilis, -e, *very easy.*

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [per + ferō], *bear through, endure, suffer.*

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [per + faciō], *do thoroughly, accomplish, complete, bring about.*

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum [per + frangō, break], *break through.*

perfugium, -ī, N., *shelter, refuge.*

periculum, -ī, N., *danger, risk, peril.*

perītus, -a, -um, *experienced, skilled, skillful.*

permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [per + mittō, let go through], *permit, grant, allow.*

permovēō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [per + movēō], *move thoroughly, rouse, influence.*

perpaucī, -ae, -a, *very few.*

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum [per + rumpō, break], *break through.*

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum [per + sequor], dep., *follow after, pursue.*

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *persuade.*

perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [per + terreō], *frighten thoroughly, terrify.*

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, —, [per +

- teneō], *reach through, extend, pertain.*
- perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [per + turbō], *disturb, confuse.*
- pervenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum [per + venīō], *come through, arrive, reach.*
- pēs, pedis, M., *foot.*
- petō, -ere, -ivī (-iū), -itum, *attack, aim at, seek, ask.*
- phalanx, phalangis, F., *phalanx.*
- pīlum, -ī, N., *javelin.*
- Pīsō, -ōnis, M., *Piso* (pī'sō), a Roman family name.
- placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *please; impers., it pleases.*
- plēbs, plēbis, F., *common people, plebeians.*
- plēnus, -a, -um, *full.*
- plūrimus, -a, -um, sup. of multus.
- plūs, plūris, comp. of multus.
- poena, -ae, F., *punishment, penalty.*
- Poenī, -ōrum, M., *the Carthaginians.*
- poēta, -ae, M., *poet.*
- polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum, dep., *promise.*
- Pompēius, -ī, M., *Pompey.*
- pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *put, place, pitch* (a camp).
- pōns, pontis, M., *bridge.*
- populus, -ī, M., *people, nation.*
- porta, -ae, F., *gate.*
- portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry, bring.*
- portus, -ūs, M., *harbor, port.*
- poscō, poscere, poposci, —, *demand.*
- possessiō, -ōnis, F., *possession, property.*
- possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *have possession of.*
- possum, posse, potuī [potis, able + sum], *be able, can.*
- post, prep. w. acc., *behind, after.*
- postea, adv. [post + ea], *afterwards.*
- posterus, -a, -um, *following.*
- postquam, conj., *after.*
- postrīdiē, adv., *on the day after.*
- postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ask, demand.*
- potēns, -entis, adj., *powerful.*
- potentia, -ae, F., *power, ability.*
- potestās, -tātis, F., *power.*
- potior, potīrī, potitus sum, dep., *get control of, obtain possession of, secure.*
- prae, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of, in comparison with; as prefix, before, over, very.*
- praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [prae + cēdō], *go before, surpass, precede, excel.*
- praecipīō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [prae + capiō], *(take in advance), order, direct.*
- praeda, -ae, F., *booty, plunder.*
- praefērō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [prae + ferō], *bear before, choose, prefer.*
- praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [prae + faciō], *put before, put over, place in command.*
- praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [prae + mittō], *send before, send in advance.*
- praemium, -ī, N., *reward.*
- praeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prae + optō, choose], *choose rather, prefer.*
- praesēns, -entis [praesum], adj., *present.*

praesidium, -ī, N., *protection, guard, garrison.*

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum [prae + stō, *stand*], *stand before, excel.*

praesum, -esse, -fuī [prae + sum], *be before, be over, command.*

praeter, prep. w. acc., *except, besides; beyond, by, past; as prefix, by, past.*

praetereō, -īre, -iī (īvī), -itum [praeter + eō], *go by.*

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsūm, *lay hold of, grasp.*

prex, **precis**, F., *prayer, entreaty.*

prīdiē, adv., *on the day before.*

prīmō, adv., *at first.*

prīmum, adv., *in the first place, first.*

prīmus, -a, -um, *first.*

prīnceps, **prīncipis**, adj., *chief; as noun, chief, leader.*

prīncipātus, -ūs, M. [prīnceps], *leadership, chief position.*

prīstinus, -a, -um, *former, old.*

prīus, comp. adv., *before.*

prīusquam, conj., *before, sooner than.*

prīvātus, -a, -um, *private, personal.*

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, for, considering, in behalf of, in proportion to; as prefix, before, forth, out.*

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *test, prove, approve.*

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum [prō + dō], *transmit, hand down.*

proelium, -ī, N., *battle.*

profectiō, -ōnis, F., *setting out, departure.*

proficīscor, **proficīscī**, **profectus sum**, dep., *set out, depart.*

profugus, -a, -um, *fleeing, fugitive.*

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum [prō + gradior], dep., *go forward, advance.*

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [prō + habeō], *keep from, prohibit, prevent, hinder.*

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [prō + iaciō], *throw forth, hurl, cast down.*

prope, adv., and prep. w. acc., *near.*

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum [prō + pellō], *drive before, rout.*

propinquus, -a, -um [prope], *near, neighboring; as noun, relative, kinsman.*

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [prō + pōnō], *set forth, declare, propose.*

propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*

propterea [propter + ea], adv., *for this reason; propterea quod, for the reason that.*

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *look forward, look out for, provide for.*

prōvincia, -ae, F., *province.*

proximē, adv. [prope], *next, nearest, last.*

proximus, -a, -um, *nearest, next, last.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, *public; rēs pūblica, state, republic, commonwealth.*

puella, -ae, F., *girl.*

puer, -ī, M., *boy, child.*

pugna, -ae, F., *fight, battle.*

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight.*

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful.*

pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -itum, *punish.*

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *suppose, reckon, think.*

Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um; with montēs, *the Pyrenees.*

Q

quā, adv., *by which way, where.*

quadrāgintā, indecl. adj., *forty.*

quadringentī, -ae, -a, *four hundred.*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum, *seek, ask.*

quālis, -e, *of what sort? what?*

quam, adv. and conj., *how, as, than; with sup., as — as possible.*

quantus, -a, -um, *how great; tantus — quantus, so (as) great — as.*

quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth.*

quattuor, indecl. adj., *four.*

quattuordecim, indecl. adj., *fourteen.*

-que, enclitic conj., *and.*

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, that.*

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, indef. pron., *a certain, certain.*

quīndecim, indecl. adj., *fifteen.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a, *five hundred.*

quīnquāgintā, indecl. adj., *fifty.*

quīnque, indecl. adj., *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um, *fifth.*

Quīntus, -ī, M., *Quintus, a personal name.*

quis, quid, interrog. pron., *who? which? what?* indef. pron., *any one, anything, any.*

quisquam, quidquam [quicquam], indef. pron., *any one, anything.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque [quodque], indef. pron., *each one, every one, each.*

quō, conj. (=ut eō), *in order that.*

quod, conj., *because; quod sī, but if.*

quondam, adv., *formerly, once upon a time.*

quoque, conj., *also.*

quot, indecl. adj., *how many?*

R

rāmus, -ī, M., *branch.*

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum, *seize.*

ratiō, -ōnis, F., *reckoning, plan, reason, account.*

ratis, ratis, F., *raft.*

re- (red-), prefix, *back, again.*

recēns, -entis, *fresh, recent, new.*

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [re + capiō], *take back, receive.*

recreō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re + creō], *make anew, restore, revive.*

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum [red + eō], *go back, return.*

reditiō, -ōnis, F. [redeō], *a going back, return.*

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [re + dūcō], *lead back, withdraw.*

referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [re + ferō], *bring back, report.*

rēgīna, -ae, F., *queen.*

rēgius, -a, -um, *kingly, royal.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *reign.*

rēgnum, -ī, N., *sovereignty, royal power.*

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, *rule.*

reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [re + iaciō], *throw back, drive back.*

relinquō, -linquere, -liqūī, -lictum [re + linquō], *leave behind, abandon; pass. be left, remain.*

reliquus, -a, -um, *the rest of, remaining.*

- remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, remain.**
removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [re+moveō], move back, remove.
renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+novō], renew.
renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+nūntiō], bring back word, report.
repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum [re+pellō], drive back, repulse.
repentinus, -a, -um, sudden.
reperiō, reperire, repperī, reperitum [re+pariō, procure], find out, discover.
repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petitum, seek again, return to.
rēs, reī, F., thing, affair, fact; see pública.
rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum [re+scindō], break down, destroy.
resistō, -sistere, -stitī, — [re+sistō, stand], resist, withstand.
respondeō, -spondere, -spondī, -spōnsum, answer, reply.
respōnsum, -ī, N., reply.
restituō, -stituere, -stitūī, -stitūtum [re+statuō], set up again, restore.
retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [re+teneō], hold back, detain, retain.
revertor, revertī, revertī, reversum [re+vertō], usually dep. in pres. system, turn back, return.
revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+vocō], call back, recall.
rēx, rēgis, M., king.
Rhēnus, -ī, M., the Rhine.
Rhodanus, -ī, M., the Rhone.
rīma, -ae, F., opening, crack.
rīpa, -ae, F., bank (of a river).
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask.
Rōma, -ae, F., Rome.
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman; as noun, Rōmānī, -ōrum, M., the Romans.
Rōmulus, -ī, M., Romulus.
rōstrum, -ī, N., beak (of bird or ship).
ruīna, -ae, F., downfall, ruin; pl., ruins.
rūrsus, adv., again, in turn.
rūs, rūris, N., the country (opposed to city).
rūsticus, -a, -um [rūs], of the country, rural.

S

- saepe, adv., often.**
saevus, -a, -um, fierce, cruel, savage.
sagitta, -ae, F., arrow.
salūs, -ūtis, F., safety.
sanguis, sanguinis, M., blood.
Santonēs, -um, M., the Santones (san'tō-nez), a Gallic tribe.
sapiēns, -entis, adj., wise; as noun, wise man.
sarcinae, -ārum, F., soldiers' packs, baggage (carried by soldiers).
satis, indecl. noun and adj., enough; adv., sufficiently.
satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum [satis+faciō], do enough, satisfy, make amends.
scelus, sceleris, N., crime.
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, know.
Scipiō, -ōnis, M., Scipio (sip'i-ō).
scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptum, write.

scūtum, -ī, N., *shield*.
 secundus, -a, -um, *following, second, favorable*.
 sed, conj., *but*.
 sēdecim [sex], indecl. adj., *sixteen*.
 Segusiāvī, -ōrum, M., *the Segusiavi*
 (sē-gū-shi-ā'vī), a Gallic tribe.
 sēmentis, -is, F., *sowing, planting*.
 semper, adv., *always*.
 senātus, -ūs, M., *senate*.
 senex, senis, adj., *old*; as noun,
old man.
 sēparātīm, adv., *separately*.
 septimus, -a, -um, *seventh*.
 sepultūra, -ae, F., *burial*.
 Sēquana, -ae, F., *the Seine*.
 Sēquanī, -ōrum, M., *the Sequani*
 (sek'wā-nī), *Sequanians*, a Gallic
 tribe.
 Sēquanus, -a, -um, *Sequanian*.
 sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, dep.,
follow.
 servitūs, -tūtis, F. [servus], *slavery*.
 servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *save, guard,*
preserve.
 servus, -ī, M., *slave*.
 sex, indecl. adj., *six*.
 sexāgintā, indecl. adj., *sixty*.
 sexcentī, -ae, -a, *six hundred*.
 sextus, -a, -um, *sixth*.
 sī, conj., *if*.
 sīc, adv., *so, thus*.
 signifer, -ferī, M., *standard bearer*.
 signficō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [signum
 + faciō], *indicate*.
 signum, -ī, N., *signal, standard*.
 silva, -ae, F., *forest*.
 similis, -e, *like, similar*.
 simul, adv., *at the same time*.
 sīn, conj., *but if*.
 sine, prep. w. abl., *without*.

singulī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj.,
one at a time, one by one, single.
 sinister, -tra, -trum, *left* (opposed
 to dexter).
 societās, -tātis, F. [socius], *partner-*
ship, alliance.
 socius, -ī, M., *ally*.
 sōl, sōlis, M., *the sun*.
 sōlum, adv., *only*.
 solum, -ī, N., *soil, ground*.
 sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, only*.
 soror, -ōris, F., *sister*.
 spatium, -ī, N., *space, period*.
 spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [spēs],
hope, look for, expect.
 spēs, speī, F., *hope*.
 statim, adv. [stō], *on the spot, at*
once.
 statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, *set up, es-*
tablish, determine, decide.
 stō, stāre, stetī, stātum, *stand*.
 studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *be eager for,*
desire.
 studium, -ī, N., *eagerness, desire*.
 sub, prep. w. acc. or abl., *under,*
beneath, up to; as prefix, *under*.
 subducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum
 [sub + dūcō], *draw up, withdraw*.
 subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum [sub + eō], *go*
under, go near, undergo.
 subitō, adv., *suddenly*.
 subsidium, -ī, N., *aid, reinforce-*
ment.
 succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
 [sub + cēdō], *go under, go near,*
approach, advance, succeed.
 suī, sibi, sē [sēsē], *himself, herself,*
itself, themselves.
 Sulla, -ae, M., *Sulla*, a Roman dic-
 tator.
 sum, esse, fuī, —, *be*.

- summa**, -ae, F., (*highest point*),
sum, total.
summus, -a, -um [superus], *high-*
est, greatest; the top of.
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptum,
take, claim.
sūmptus, -ūs, M., *expense.*
super, prep. w. acc. and abl., *above,*
over; as prefix, over.
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *surpass,*
conquer, overcome.
supersum, -esse, -fui [super +
 sum], *be over, survive, remain.*
superus, -a, -um (comp. superior,
 sup. suprēmus, summus), *upper,*
higher.
supplicium, -ī, N., *punishment,*
penalty.
supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sub +
 portō], *bring up, convey, supply.*
suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum
 [sub + capiō], *undertake, undergo.*
suspiciō, -ōnis, F., *suspicion.*
sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum
 [sub + teneō], *hold up, hold out,*
sustain, withstand.
suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its, their.*
- T**
- tabula**, -ae, F., *board, tablet, record.*
tacitus, -a, -um, *silent.*
tālis, -e, *such.*
tam, adv., *so.*
tamen, adv., *nevertheless, yet.*
tandem, adv., *at length, finally.*
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum,
touch.
tantus, -a, -um, *so great, so much.*
taurus, -ī, M., *bull.*
tēlum, -ī, N., *weapon, javelin,*
spear.
temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *control,*
refrain.
tempestās, -tātis, F., *season,*
weather, storm.
templum, -ī, N., *temple.*
temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *try, at-*
tempt.
tempus, temporis, N., *time.*
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, *hold.*
terra, -ae, F., *earth, land, country.*
terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *frighten.*
tertius, -a, -um, *third.*
Tiberis, -is, M., *the Tiber.*
Tigurīnus, -a, -um, *of the Tigurini*
 (tig-ū-rī'nī); **Tigurīnī**, -ōrum,
 M., *the Tigurini, a canton of the*
Helvetii.
timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear.*
timidus, -a, -um [timeō], *timid.*
timor, -ōris, M., *fear.*
Titus, -ī (abbr. T.), M., *Titus* (tī'-
 tus), a personal name.
tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *endure,*
support, sustain.
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum,
lift up, take away.
tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*
tōtus, -a, -um (gen. -īus, dat. -ī),
the whole of, all, entire.
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum [trāns +
 dō], *give over, hand down, sur-*
render.
trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum
 [trāns + dūcō], *lead across.*
trāns, prep. w. acc., *across; as pre-*
fix, across, through.
trānseō, -īre, -iī (ivī), -itum [trāns +
 eō], *go across, cross.*
trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum
 [trāns + ferō], *carry over, transfer.*
trecentī, -ae, -a, *three hundred.*

trēs, tria, *three*.
 trīduum, -ī, N., *three days*.
 trīgintā, indecl. adj., *thirty*.
 triplex, -icis, adj., *threefold*,
triple.
 triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *cele-*
brate a triumph.
 Trōia, -ae, F., *Troy*.
 Trōiānus, -a, -um, *Trojan*.
 tū, pers. pron., *thou, you*.
 tuba, -ae, F., *trumpet*.
 Tulingī, -ōrum, M., *the Tulingi*
 (tū-lin'ji), a German tribe.
 tum, adv., *then, at that time*.
 turris, turris, F., *tower*.
 tuus, -a, -um, *thy, your*.

U

ubi, adv. and conj., *when, where*.
 ūllus, -a, -um (gen. -īus, dat. -ī),
any.
 ulterior, -ius, comp. adj. [ultrā],
farther.
 ultrā, adv. and prep. w. acc., *be-*
yond.
 umbra, -ae, F., *shade*.
 umerus, -ī, M., *shoulder*.
 ūnā, adv., *together, in company*
with.
 unde, adv., *from which place,*
whence.
 undique [unde], adv., *from all parts,*
on all sides.
 ūnus, -a, -um (gen. -īus, dat. -ī),
one.
 urbānus, -a, -um, *belonging to a*
city, of a city.
 urbs, urbis, F., *city*.
 ūsus, -ūs, M., *use, advantage*.
 ut [utī], conj. w. subj., *that, in*
order that; w. ind., as, when.

uter, -tra, -trum (gen. -īus, dat. -ī),
which (of two).
 ūtilis, -e [ūtor], *useful*.
 ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, dep., *use*.
 uxor, -ōris, F., *wife*.

V

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *be vacant,*
be unoccupied.
 vadum, -ī, N., *ford, shoal*.
 valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *be strong,*
be well.
 validus, -a, -um, *strong*.
 vāllum, -ī, N., *rampart, barricade*.
 vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *lay waste,*
devastate, ravage.
 vāstus, -a, -um, *immense, vast*.
 vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum, *carry*.
 vel, or; vel — vel, *either — or*.
 vēlōx, -ōcis, *swift*.
 veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum, *come*.
 ventus, -ī, M., *wind*.
 verbum, -ī, N., *word*.
 vereor, -ērī, -itus sum, dep., *fear,*
dread.
 Vergilius, -ī, M., *Vergil (vēr'jil), a*
great Latin poet (70-19 B.C.).
 vērus, -a, -um, *true*.
 vesper, -erī, M., *evening*.
 vester, -tra, -trum, *your, yours*.
 veterānus, -a, -um [vetus], *old,*
veteran; as noun, veteran soldier,
veteran.
 vetus, veteris, adj., *old, former*.
 via, -ae, F., *way, road*.
 victor, -ōris, M. [vincō], *victor, con-*
queror.
 victōria, -ae, F., *victory*.
 vicīnus, -a, -um [vīcus], *neighbor-*
ing, near.
 vīcus, -ī, M. *village*.

- videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum, see;**
 pass., *be seen, seem.*
- vigilia, -ae, F., watch of the night,**
watch.
- vīgintī, indecl. adj., twenty.**
- vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, con-**
quer.
- vinculum, -ī, N., bond.**
- vīnum, -ī, N., wine.**
- violentia, -ae, F., violence.**
- vir, -ī, M., man.**
- virtūs, -tūtis, F. [vir], (manliness),**
virtue, valor.
- vīs, vīs, F., force, violence; pl. vīrēs,**
strength.
- vīta, -ae, F., life.**
- vīvō, vīvere, vixī, vīctum, live.**
- vix, adv., hardly, scarcely.**
- vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call, sum-**
mon.
1. **volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fly.**
2. **volō, velle, voluī, —, wish, be**
willing.
- voluntās, -tātis, F., willingness,**
wish, consent, good-will.
- vōs, pl. of tū.**
- vōx, vōcis, F., voice, word.**
- vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vulnus],**
wound.
- vulnus, -eris, N., wound.**

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

- able*: *be able*, *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*.
about, *circum*, w. acc.; *dē* (concerning), w. abl.; w. numerals, *ad*.
about to, expressed by fut. act. part.
absent: *be absent*, *absum*, *abesse*, *āfuī*.
account: *on account of*, *ob*, *propter*, w. acc.
accuse, *accūsō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*.
across, *trāns*, w. acc.
advise, *moneō*, *-ēre*, *-uī*, *-itum*.
after, (prep.) *post*, w. acc.; (conj.) *postquam*.
aid, (noun) *auxilium*, *subsidium*, *-ī*, N.; (verb) *iuvō*, *iuvāre*, *iūvī*, *iūtum*.
all, *omnis*, *-e*; *tōtus*, *-a*, *-um*.
allow, *patior*, *patī*, *passus sum*.
almost, *ferē*, *paene*.
always, *semper*.
ambassador, *lĕgātus*, *-ī*, M.
among, *inter*, *apud*, w. acc.
and, *et*, *-que*, *ac*, *atque*.
animal, *animal*, *-ālis*, N.
announce, *nūntiō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*.
another, *alius*, *-a*, *-ud*.
any one, *quis*, *quisquam*.
April, *Aprīlis*, *-e*.
are, see *be*.
arms, *arma*, *-ōrum*, N.
army, *aciēs*, *-ēī*, F.; *agmen*, *-inis*, N.; *exercitus*, *-ūs*, M.
arrival, *adventus*, *-ūs*, M.
arrive, *pervenīō*, *-venīre*, *-venī*, *-ventum*.
arrow, *sagitta*, *-ae*, F.
as — *as possible*, *quam* w. superlative.
ascend, *ascēnsus*, *-ūs*, M.
ask, *rogō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*.
assemble, *conveniō*, *-venīre*, *-venī*, *-ventum*.
at, *ad*, w. acc.
attack, (noun) *impetus*, *-ūs*, M.; (verb) *oppugnō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*; *adgredior*, *-gredī*, *-gressus sum*.
attempt, *cōnor*, *-ārī*, *-ātus sum*.
authority, *auctōritās*, *-tātis*, F.
away: *be away*, *absum*, *abesse*, *āfuī*.
away from, *ā* (*ab*).

B

- bad*, *malus*, *-a*, *-um*.
badge, *īnsigne*, *-is*, N.
baggage, *impedimenta*, *-ōrum*, N.
band, *manus*, *-ūs*, F.
bank (of a river), *rīpa*, *-ae*, F.
battle, *proelium*, *-ī*, N.
be, *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*.
be away, *absum*, *abesse*, *āfuī*.
bear, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*.
beast of burden, *iūmentum*, *-ī*, N.
beautiful, *pulcher*, *-chra*, *-chrum*.
because, *quod*.
because of, *propter*, w. acc.
before, (prep.) *ante*, w. acc.; *prō*, w. abl.; (conj.) *priusquam*.

began, *coepī*, -isse.
behalf: *in behalf of*, *prō*, w. abl.
behind, *post*, w. acc.
Belgians, *Belgae*, -ārum, M.
believe, *crēdō*, *crēdere*, *crēdidī*, *crēditum*.
better, *melior*; (adv.) *melius*.
between, *inter*, w. acc.
boldly, *audācter*.
boldness, *audācia*, -ae, F.
book, *liber*, *librī*, M.
booty, *praeda*, -ae, F.
both — *and*, *et* — *et*.
boy, *puer*, *puerī*, M.
brave, *fortis*, -e.
bravely, *fortiter*.
bravery, *fortitudō*, -inis, F.; *virtūs*, -tūtis, F.
breadth, *lātitudō*, -inis, F.
bridge, *pōns*, *pontis*, M.
bring, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*; *portō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
bring in, *importō*.
bring together, *condūcō*, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum; *cōnferō*.
bring upon, *īnferō*.
broad, *lātus*, -a, -um.
brother, *frāter*, *frātris*, M.
Brutus, *Brūtus*, -ī, M.
building, *aedificium*, -ī, N.
burn, *incendō*, -cendere, -cendī, -cēsum.
but, *sed*, *autem*.
buy, *emō*, *emere*, *ēmi*, *ēptum*.
buy up, *coēmō*.
by, sign of abl.; *ā* (ab) w. abl.

C

Caesar, *Caesar*, *Caesaris*, M.
call (by name), *appellō*, -āre, -āvī,

-ātum; (summon), *vocō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
call back, *revocō*.
call together, *convocō*.
camp, *castra*, -ōrum, N.
can, *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*.
capital, *caput*, *capitis*, N.
captive, *captivus*, -ī, M.
capture. *capiō*, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captum*; *capture* (a town), *expugnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
care, *cūra*, -ae, F.
carry, *portō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
carry on (war), *gerō*, *gerere*, *gessi*, *gestum*.
cart, *carrus*, -ī, M.
cavalry, *equitēs*, -um, M.; *equitātus*, -ūs, M.
Celis. *Celtae*, -ārum, M.
centurion, *centuriō*, -ōnis, M.
certain, (adj.) *certus*, -a, -um; (pron.) *quīdam*.
chief, *prīnceps*, -cipis, M.
children, *puerī*, -ōrum, M.; *liberī*, -ōrum, M.
choose, *dēligō*, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
citizen, *cīvis*, -is, M. or F.
city, *urbs*, *urbis*, F.
climb, *ascendō*, *ascendere*, *ascendī*, *ascēsum*.
cohort, *cohors*, *cohortis*, F.
come, *veniō*, *venire*, *vēnī*, *ventum*.
come together, *conveniō*.
command, *imperō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *be in command*, *praesum*, -esse, -fuī; *put in command*, *praeficiō*, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
commander, *imperātor*, -ōris, M.
compel, *cōgō*, *cōgere*, *coēgī*, *coāctum*.

complete, perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.

concerning, dē, w. abl.

conquer, vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum; superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

conspiracy, coniūratiō, -ōnis, F.

construct, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.

consul, cōsul, -is, M.

contend, contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum.

Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, F.

Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, F.

Cornelius, Cornēlius, -ī, M.

could, see *can*.

council, concilium, -ī, N.

country, terra, -ae, F.; finēs, -ium, M.; *native country*, patria, -ae, F.; *country* (as distinguished from city), rūs, rūris, N.

course, iter, itineris, N.

cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī (īvī), -itum.

custom, mōs, mōris, M.

D

danger, periculum, -ī, N.

daring, audāx, -ācis.

daughter, filia, -ae, F.

day, diēs, -ēī, M.

death, mors, mortis, F.

decide, statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum; cōstituō.

deep, altus, -a, -um.

defeat, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

defend, dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum.

delay, mora, -ae, F.

dense, dēnsus, -a, -um.

depart, discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum.

depth, altitudō, -inis, F.

deserve, mereor, -ērī, -itus sum.

desire, (noun) cupiditās, -tātis, F.; (verb) cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupitum.

desirous, cupidus, -a, -um.

determine, cōstituō, -stituere, -stitūī, -stitūtum.

devastate, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

difficult, difficilis, -e.

diligence, diligētia, -ae, F.

direction, pars, partis, F.

discover, reperiō, reperire, repperī, repertum.

distant: *be distant*, absum, abesse, āfuī.

district, pāgus, -ī, M.

Divico, Dīvicō, -ōnis, M.

divide, dividō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsum.

do, agō, agere, ēgī, āctum; faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.

down from, dē, w. abl.

E

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque.

eager, cupidus, -a, -um; *be eager for*, studeō, -ēre, -uī.

eagerness, cupiditās, -tātis, F.; studium, -ī, N.

easily, facile.

easy, facilis, -e.

eight, octō.

eighth, octāvus.

eighty, octōgintā.

either — *or*, aut — *aut*; *vel* — *vel*.

elect, creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum.

embassy, lēgatiō, -ōnis, F.

encourage, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum; cohortor.

enemy, hostis, hostis, M.

enough, satis.

enroll, cōnscrībō, -scrībēre, -scrīb-sī, -scrīptum.

envoy, lēgātus, -ī, M.

equal, pār, paris.

establish, cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

evening, vesper, vesperī, M.

every, omnis, -e; quisque; *everything*, omnia.

excel, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *praecēdō*, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum.

except, praeter, w. acc.

expect, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

explain, dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

extend, pateō, -ēre, -uī; *pertineō*, -ēre, -uī.

F

fact, rēs, rei, F.

faithfully, diligenter.

famous, clārus, -a, -um.

far, (adv.) longē.

farmer, agricola, -ae, M.

farther, (adj.) ulterior, -ius.

farthest, extrēmus, -a, -um; *ultimus*, -a, -um.

father, pater, patris, M.

favor, indulgēō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, -dultum.

fear, (noun) timor, -ōris, M.; (verb) timeō, -ēre, -uī; *vereor*, -ērī, -itus sum.

fertile, ferāx, -ācis.

few, paucī, -ae, -a; *very few*, per-paucī.

field, ager, agrī, M.

fiercely, ācritēr.

fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *contendō*, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum.

find out, cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum.

fire, ignis, ignis, M.

first, primus, -a, -um.

fit, idōneus, -a, -um.

five, quīnque.

flee, fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum.

fleet, classis, classis, F.

flight, fuga, -ae, F.

flow, fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxum.

food, cibus, -ī, M.

foot, pēs, pedis, M.; *at the foot of*, sub, w. abl.

for, sign of dat. case; prō, w. abl.

forage, frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus sum.

force, vīs, vīs, F.

forces, cōpia, -ārum, F.

ford, vadum, -ī, N.

fort, castellum, -ī, N.

fortification, mūnitiō, -ōnis, F.

fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

forum, forum, -ī, N.

four, quattuor.

fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.

free, (adj.) liber, -era, -erum; (verb) liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

friend, amīcus, -ī, M.

friendly, amīcus, -a, -um.

friendship, amīcītia, -ae, F.

frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

from, sign of abl.; ab, dē, ex, w. abl.

G

Galba, Galba, -ae, M.

Gallic, Gallicus, -a, -um.

gate, porta, -ae, F.

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, F.; *the Gauls*,

Gallī, -ōrum, M.

general, imperātor, -ōris, M.

Geneva, Genava, -ae, F.

German, Germānus, -a, -um; *the Germans*, Germānī, -ōrum, M.
Germany, Germānia, -ae, F.
get possession of, potior, -īrī, -ītus sum.
girl, puella, -ae, F.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
go, eō, ire, iī (ivī), itum.
go across, trānseō.
go out, exeō.
god, deus, -ī, M.
good, bonus, -a, -um.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, N.
great, magnus, -a, -um; *so great*, tantus, -a, -um.
guard, praesidium, -ī, N.
guide, dux, ducis, M.

H

Haeduan, Haeduus, -a, -um; *the Haedui*, Haedui, -ōrum, M.
hand, manus, -ūs, F.
happen: it happens, accidit, accidere, accidit; *fit*, fierī, factum est.
harbor, portus, -ūs, M.
hasten, mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *contendō*, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum.
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
he, ending of verb; or pron. is.
hear, audiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum.
heavy, gravis, -e.
height, altitūdō, -inis, F.
Helvetia, Helvētia, -ae, F.
Helvetian, Helvētius, -a, -um; *the Helvetii*, Helvētīi, -ōrum, M.
her, ēius.
her own, suus, -a, -um.
herself, ipsa, suī.
high, altus, -a, -um.

higher, altior; (*upper*) superior.
hill, collis, collis, M.
himself, ipse, suī.
his, ēius.
his own, suus, -a, -um.
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum.
home, domus, -ūs, F.; *at home*, domī.
hope, (noun) spēs, speī, F.; (verb) spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
horn, cornū, -ūs, N.
horse, equus, equī, M.
horseman, eques, equitis, M.
hostage, obses, obsidis, M. or F.
hour, hōra, -ae, F.
house, domus, -ūs, F.
human being, homō, hominis, M. or F.
hundred, centum.
hurl, iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum.

I

I, ending of verb; or pron. ego.
if, sī.
import, importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
in, sign of abl.; *in w. abl.*
induce, indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.
influence, (noun) auctōritās, -tātis, F.; (verb) addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.
inform, certiōrem faciō; *be informed*, certior fiō.
inhabit, incolō, -colere, -coluī.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, M. or F.
intend, in animō habeō.
into, in w. acc.
is, see *be*.
it, ending of verb; or *id*, *hoc*.
Italy, Ītalia, -ae, F.
itself, ipsum, suī.

J

javelin, pīlum, -ī, N.
journey, iter, itineris, N.
Julia, Iūlia, -ae, F.

K

keep away, keep off, prohibeō, -ēre,
 -uī, -itum.
kill, occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum;
 interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
king, rēx, rēgis, M.
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, M.
lack, inopia, -ae, F.
lake, lacus, -ūs, M.
land, terra, -ae, F.; *native land*,
 patria, -ae, F.
language, lingua, -ae, F.
large, magnus, -a, -um.
law, lēx, lēgis, F.
lead, dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum.
lead across, trādūcō.
lead out, ēdūcō.
leader, dux, ducis, M.
learn, discō, discere, didici; cog-
 nōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gni-
 tum.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, F.
length, longitūdō, -inis, F.
less, minus.
letter, epistula, -ae, F.
liberty, libertās, -tātis, F.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, M.
like, similis, -e.
little, parvus, -a, -um.
live, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
 incolō, -ere, -uī.
long, longus, -a, -um; (adv.) a
 long time, diū.

love, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Lucius, Lūcius, -ī, M.

M

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, M.
make, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum;
be made, fiō, fierī, factus sum.
make upon, inferō, -ferre, -tulī,
 -lātum.
man, vir, virī, M.; *homō*, -inis, M.
many, multī, -ae, -a.
march, (noun) iter, itineris, N.;
 (verb) iter faciō.
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, M.
master, dominus, -ī, M.
memory, memoria, -ae, F.
merchant, mercātor, -ōris, M.
message, nūntius, -ī, M.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, M.
mile, mille passūs.
mind, animus, -ī, M.
money, pecūnia, -ae, F.
month, mēnsis, mēnsis, M.
moon, lūna, -ae, F.
more, comp. ending; plūs, magis.
most, sup. ending; plūrimus, -a,
 -um; maximē.
mountain, mōns, montis, M.
move, moveō, movēre, mōvī, mō-
 tum.
much, multus, -a, -um; (adv.)
 multum, *by much*, multō.
my, meus, -a, -um.

N

name, (noun) nōmen, -inis, N.;
 (verb) appellō, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātum.
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
narrowness: narrow pass, angus-
 tiae, -ārum, F.

nation, nātiō, -ōnis, F.; *populus*,
 -ī, M.
nature, nātūra, -ae, F.
near, ad, w. acc.; (adv.) prope.
nearest, proximus, -a, -um.
neighboring, finitimus, -a, -um.
neighbors, finitimī, -ōrum, M.
neither, (pron.) neuter, -tra,
 -trum; (conj.) neque.
next, proximus, -a, -um; *on the*
next day, posterō diē.
new, novus, -a, -um.
night, nox, noctis, F.
no, none, nullus, -a, -um.
no one, nēmō, dat., nēminī.
noon, merīdiēs, -ēī, M.
nor, neque (nec).
not, nōn.
nothing, nihil.
now, nunc.
number, numerus, -ī, M.

O

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī.
of, sign of gen. case; *dē*, ex, w.
 abl.
often, saepe.
on, in, w. abl.; *on account of*, ob,
 propter, w. acc.; *on all sides*,
 undique.
one, ūnus, -a, -um.
opportunity, facultās, -tātis, F.
or, aut.
orator, ōrātor, -ōris, M.
order, iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum.
order: in order that, ut, quō; *in*
order not, nē.
other (of more than two), alius, -a,
 -ud; *the other (of two)*, alter,
 -era, -erum.
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

our, noster, -tra, -trum.
out of, ex (ē), w. abl.
over, trāns, w. acc.
overcome, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
owe, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

P

pace, passus, -ūs, M.
pack animal, iumentum, -ī, N.
part, pars, partis, F.
peace, pāx, pācis, F.
people, populus, -ī, M.
peril, periculum, -ī, N.
persuade, persuādeō, -suādēre,
 -suāsī, -suāsūm.
pitch (a camp), pōnō, pōnere, po-
 suī, positum.
place, locus, -ī, M.; pl., loca, -ōrum,
 N.
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
plan, cōsiliū, -ī, N.
plunder, praeda, -ae, F.
possession: get possession of, po-
 tior, -irī, -itus sum.
possible: as — as possible, quam
 w. a superlative.
powerful, potēns, potentis.
praise, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
prepare, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
 comparō.
present: be present, adsum, adesse,
 adfuī.
promise, polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum.
property: your property, vestra,
 -ōrum, N.; *their property*, sua,
 -ōrum, N.
protect, dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī,
 -fēnsūm.
province, prōvincia, -ae, F.
punishment, poena, -ae, F.
purpose: for the purpose, causā.

Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae, F.
quickly, celeriter.
Quintus, Quīntus, -ī, M.

R

raft, ratis, ratis, F.
reach (arrive at), perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, w. ad.
read, legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum.
ready, parātus, -a, -um.
receive, recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
recent, recēns, recentis.
recently, nūper.
remain, maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum.
remember, memoriā teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum.
report, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
resist, resistō, -sistere, -stitī.
rest: the rest of, reliquus, -a, -um.
retreat, sē recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
return, revertor, revertī, revertī, reversum.
reward, praemium, -ī, N.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, M.
Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, M.
right, (noun) iūs, iūris, N.; (adj.) dexter, -tra, -trum.
river, fūmen, -inis, N.
road, via, -ae, F.; iter, itineris, N.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um; the Romans, Rōmānī, -ōrum, M.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, F.
royal power, rēgnum, -ī, N.
rule, regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum.

S

safety, salūs, -ūtis, F.
sail, nāvīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

sailor, nauta, -ae, M.
sake: for the sake, causā.
same, idem, eadem, idem.
say, dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum.
scarcity, inopia, -ae, F.
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, M.
sea, mare, maris, N.
second, secundus, -a, -um.
see, videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum.
seek, petō, petere, petivī (petiī), petitum.
Seine, Sēquana, -ae, F.
select, dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
senate, senātus, -ūs, M.
send, mittō, mittere, mīsi, missum.
send ahead, praemittō.
separate, dividō, -videre, -visī, -vīsum.
servant, servus, -ī, M.
set free, liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
set out, proficīscor, -ficīscī, -fectus sum.
severely, graviter.
she, ea, illa; suī.
shield, scūtum, -ī, N.
ship, nāvis, nāvis, F.
short, brevis, -e.
show, dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
side, pars, partis, F.; on this side of, citrā, w. acc.
sides: from all sides, undique.
sight, cōspectus, -ūs, M.
signal, sīgnum, -ī, N.
since, (conj.) cum.
sister, soror, -ōris, F.
size, magnitūdō, -inis, F.
skillful, peritus, -a, -um.
slave, servus, -ī, M.
slavery, servitūs, -tūtis, F.
small, parvus, -a, -um.

- so*, ita, sic, tam; *so great*, tantus, -a, -um; *so that*, ut.
soldier, miles, militis, M.
some, aliquis, -qua, -quid; *some* — others, alii — alii.
son, filius, -i, M.
speak, loquor, loqui, locutus sum.
spear, pilum, -i, N.
standard, signum, -i, N.
standard bearer, signifer, -feri, M.
state, civitas, -tatis, F.
stone, lapis, lapidis, M.
street, via, -ae, F.
strong, fortis, -e.
subdue, pacō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
such: in such a manner, sic.
sufficiently, satis.
suitable, idoneus, -a, -um.
summer, aestās, -tatis, F.
sun, sol, solis, M.
supply, cōpia, -ae, F.
surpass, praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum; superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
surrender, tradō, tradere, tradidī, traditum.
swift, celer, celeris, celere; vĕlōx, -ōcis.
sword, gladius, -i, M.
- T
- take*, capiō, capere, cēpi, captum; (a town), expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
teach, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum.
teacher, magister, -tri, M.
tell, dicō, dicere, dixī, dictum; narrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
ten, decem.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terrify, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
territory, finēs, -ium, M.
than, quam.
that, (pron.) is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud; (conj.) ut.
their, eōrum, eārum; *their own*, suus, -a, -um.
them, eōs, eās, ea.
themselves, ipsi, -ae, -a; sui.
there, (in that place) ibi; (expletive) not expressed.
these, see *this*.
they, ending of verb; or eī, eae, ea; illi, -ae, -a.
thing, rēs, rei, F.
think, putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; arbitrō, -ārī, -ātus sum; existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
third, tertius, -a, -um.
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.
those, see *that*.
thousand, mille.
three, trēs, tria.
through, per, w. acc.
throw, iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum.
time, tempus, temporis, N.
to, sign of dat. case; sign of inf.; ad, w. acc.; ut, w. subj.
today, hodiē.
together, con- (prefix); ūnā (adv.).
tomorrow, crās.
too, express by ending of comp.
tower, turris, turris, F.
town, oppidum, -i, N.
trader, mercātor, -ōris, M.
transport, trānsportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
tree, arbor, -oris, F.
tribe, civitas, -tatis, F.; gēns, gentis, F.
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, F.
trumpet, tuba, -ae, F.

try, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
twenty, vigintī.
two, duo, duae, duo.
two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a.

U

under, sub, w. acc. (of motion); w. abl. (of rest).
understand, intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
unfortunate, miser, -era, -erum.
unfriendly, inimicus, -a, -um.
unlike, dissimilis, -e.
until, dum.
unwilling, invītus, -a, -um; *be unwilling*, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
urge, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
us, see *we*.
use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.

V

valor, virtūs, -tūtis, F.
very, ending of sup.; (intensive) ipse, -a, -um.
very few, perpaucī, -ae, -a.
victory, victōria, -ae, F.
village, vīcus, -ī, M.

W

wage, gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum.
wagon, carrus, -ī, M.
wait, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
wall, mūrus, -ī, M.
war, bellum, -ī, N.
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
was, see *be*.
watch, vigilia, -ae, F.
water, aqua, -ae, F.
way, via, -ae, F.; iter, itineris, N.
we, ending of verb; or nōs.

were, see *be*.

what, quis (quī), quae, quid (quod).

when, ubi, cum.

where, ubi.

whether, -ne.

which, quī, quae, quod; (interrog.) quis (quī), quae, quid (quod); (of two) uter, utra, utrum.

while, dum.

who, quī, quae; (interrog.) quis.

whole, tōtus, -a, -um.

whose, cuius.

why, cūr.

wide, lātus, -a, -um.

widely, lātē.

width, lātitūdō, -inis, F.

willing: *be willing*, volō, velle, voluī.

winter, hiems, hiemis, F.; *pass the*

winter, hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

winter quarters, hiberna, -ōrum, N.

wish, volo, velle, voluī.

with, sign of abl.; cum, w. abl.

within, sign of abl. (time).

without, sine, w. abl.

woman, mulier, -eris, F.

word, verbum, -ī, N.

work, opus, operis, N.

wound, (noun) vulnus, vulneris, N.; (verb) vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Y

year, annus, -ī, M.

yet, tamen.

yoke, iugum, -ī, N.

you, ending of verb; or tū.

your, tuus, -a, -um; vester, -tra, -trum.

yourself, tū; ipse, -a, -um.

VOCABULARY FOR THE FIRST YEAR

As specified by the New York State Syllabus
Adopted 1917

The following lists, which are to be memorized, include 500 words, 250 for each half of the first year. In each division the words are in alphabetic order, except that compounds of verbs are grouped together. The principal parts, the genitive case, and the gender are indicated for a few words that are not found in the general vocabulary of this book.

FIRST HALF YEAR

VERBS

- agō, *drive, do.*
cōgō, *drive together, collect, compel.*
redigō (-ere, redēgī, redāctum),
drive back, reduce, render.
amō, *love.*
appellō, *name, call.*
audeō (-ēre, ausus), *dare, venture.*
capiō, *take.*
accipiō, *accept, receive.*
incipiō, *begin, undertake.*
intercipiō, *intercept, cut off.*
suscipiō, *undertake.*
(cēdō, *go, yield.*)
discēdō, *go away, depart.*
excēdō, *go out.*
prōcēdō, *go forward, advance.*
cognōscō, *learn, ascertain.*
cōnfirmō, *strengthen, encourage, affirm.*
cōnsulō (-ere, cōnsulūi, cōnsultum), *consult.*
dēbeō, *owe, ought.*
dēfendō, *defend.*
dīcō, *say.*
dō, *give.*
dūcō, *lead.*
abdūcō, *lead away.*
addūcō, *lead to, influence.*
ēdūcō, *lead out.*
indūcō, *lead in, induce.*
perdūcō, *lead through, extend.*
prōdūcō, *lead forward.*
redūcō, *lead back.*
exīstimō, *think, consider.*
exspectō, *expect, wait, await.*
gerō, *carry, accomplish.*
habeō, *have, hold.*
adhibeō, *apply, employ.*
prohibeō, *prohibit, prevent.*
iubeō, *order.*
labōrō (-āre, -āvī, -ātum) *labor, suffer.*
liberō, *set free.*
locō, *place, put, set.*
mittō, *send.*
āmittō, *send away, lose.*
committō, *commit, intrust; w. proelium, begin.*

dīmittē, *send away.*
 intermittō, *interrupt, discontinue.*
 permittō, *permit, grant, intrust.*
 praemittō, *send ahead.*
 remittō, *send back.*
 moneō, *advise, warn.*
 admoneō, *remind.*
 moveō, *move.*
 commoveō, *alarm, excite.*
 permoveō, *arouse, disturb.*
 removeō, *move back, remove.*
 nāvīgō, *sail.*
 nūntiō, *announce, declare.*
 occupō, *seize, occupy.*
 oportet, *it is necessary.*
 pācō, *pacify.*
 parō, *get ready, prepare for.*
 comparō, *get together, provide.*
 petō, *seek.*
 portō, *carry, take.*
 properō (-āre, -āvi, -ātum), *hurry.*
 pugnō, *fight.*
 expugnō, *capture by assault.*
 oppugnō, *attack.*

putō, *think.*
 relinquō, *leave behind, abandon.*
 respondeō, *answer.*
 scribō, *write.*
 cōscribō, *enroll.*
 servō, *save, protect.*
 cōservō, *save fully, preserve.*
 sum, *be.*
 absum, *be away.*
 adsum, *be near, be present.*
 possum, *be able.*
 teneō, *hold, keep.*
 contineō, *hold together, contain, confine.*
 obtineō, *obtain, get.*
 pertineō, *reach, extend, pertain.*
 retineō, *hold back, retain.*
 sustineō, *hold up, sustain.*
 timeō, *fear.*
 videō, *see.*
 prōvideō, *foresee.*
 vocō, *call.*
 convocō, *call together, summon.*
 ēvocō, *call out.*

NOUNS

aestās, *summer.*
 ager, *field.*
 agricola, *farmer.*
 amicitia, *friendship.*
 animus, *spirit, life, soul.*
 annus, *year.*
 arma, *arms.*
 auctōritās, *influence.*
 auxilium, *aid, help.*
 bellum, *war.*
 caput, *head.*
 castra, *camp.*
 celeritās, *speed, swiftness.*
 civitās, *citizenship, state.*
 cōsiliūm, *advice, plan.*
 cōsul, *consul.*
 deus, *god.*
 dignitās, *worth, position.*
 diligentia, *painstaking care.*
 dux, *leader.*
 eques, *horseman.*
 equus, *horse.*
 exemplum, *example, precedent.*
 factum, *thing done, act, deed.*

fāma, *reputation, report.*
 filia, *daughter.*
 filius, *son.*
 flūmen, *river.*
 fortūna, *fortune, wealth.*
 frāter, *brother.*
 frūmentum, *grain.*
 fuga, *flight.*
 hiems, *winter.*
 homō, *man.*
 impedimentum, *hindrance; pl. baggage.*
 iniūria, *wrong.*
 insula, *island.*
 iūdex (iūdicis, M.), *judge, juror.*
 iudicium, *trial, judgment.*
 lēx, *law.*
 liber, *book.*
 libertās, *freedom.*
 lingua, *tongue, language.*
 locus, *place.*
 lūx, *light.*
 māter, *mother.*
 memoria, *memory.*

miles, *soldier*.
 nātūra, *nature*.
 negōtium, *business, trouble*.
 nōmen, *name*.
 numerus, *number*.
 officium, *duty, service, courtesy*.
 oppidum, *town*.
 pater, *father*.
 pāx, *peace*.
 pecūnia, *money*.
 periculum, *trial, danger*.
 poena, *penalty*.
 populus, *people*.
 porta, *gate*.
 praemium, *reward*.
 praesidium, *garrison, guard*.
 princeps, *leader, chief man*.
 proelium, *battle*.
 puella, *girl*.
 puer, *boy*.
 rēgina, *queen*.

rēgnum, *kingdom*.
 rēx, *king*.
 salūs, *safety*.
 servitūs, *slavery*.
 servus, *slave*.
 signum, *sign, signal, standard*.
 silva, *forest*.
 socius, *ally, comrade*.
 soror, *sister*.
 supplicium, *punishment*.
 tempus, *time*.
 terra, *land, earth*.
 via, *highway, road*.
 victōria, *victory*.
 villa (-ae, F.), *farmhouse, countryseat*.
 vir, *man, hero*.
 virtūs, *manliness, courage*.
 vīta, *life*.
 vōx, *voice, speech, remark*.

ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

ā (ab), *away from, by*.
 ac (atque), *and also*.
 ad, *to*.
 ante, *before (prep.)*.
 antea, *before (adv.)*.
 aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*.
 certē, *certainly*.
 cum, *with*.
 cūr, *why*.
 dē, *down from, concerning*.
 ē (ex), *out from*.
 et, *and*.
 etiam, *even*.
 hīc, *here*.
 iam, *by this time, already*.
 in, *in, on (w. abl.); into (w. acc.)*.

longē, *far*.
 -ne (sign of a question).
 nec (neque) . . . nec (neque).
 neither . . . nor.
 nōn, *not*.
 nunc, *now*.
 per, *through*.
 post, *after, behind*.
 posteā, *afterwards*.
 prō, *in front of, in behalf of*.
 quam, *than*.
 -que, *and*.
 sed, *but*.
 trāns, *across*.
 tum, *then*.
 ubi, *where, when*.

PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES

aequus, *level, even, just, fair*.
 altus, *high, deep*.
 amicus, *friendly; as noun, friend*.
 amplus, *large, distinguished*.
 barbarus, *foreign, barbarous*.
 bonus, *good*.
 certus, *fixed, certain*.
 crēber, *frequent, thick*.

ēgregius, *eminent, unusual*.
 finitimus, *neighboring*.
 hic, *this, he*.
 idem, *the same*.
 ille, *that, he*.
 inimicus, *unfriendly, hostile; as
 noun, enemy*.
 iniquus, *uneven, unfavorable, unjust*.

integer (-gra, -grum), *whole, unimpaired.*
ipse, *self, the very.*
is, *this, that, he.*
liber, *free.*
longus, *long.*
magnus, *large.*
medius, *middle, middle of.*
meus, *my, mine.*
noster, *our.*
nōtus, *known.*
novus, *new.*
parvus, *small.*
paucī, *few.*

prīmus . . . decimus, *first . . . tenth.*
pūblicus, *belonging to the state, official, public.*
pulcher, *beautiful.*
quis, *who?*
reliquus, *the rest, remaining, remainder of.*
sacer (-cra, -crum), *sacred.*
tardus, *slow, late.*
timidus, *fearful.*
tuus, *your.*
ūnus . . . decem, *one . . . ten.*
vērus, *true.*
vester, *your.*

SECOND HALF YEAR

VERBS

appropinquō, *draw near to, approach.*
audiō, *hear.*
(capiō, take.)
excipiō, *take, accept.*
praecipio, *order, instruct, advise.*
recipiō, *take back; w. sē, withdraw.*
cēdō, *go, yield.*
antecēdō, *go before, precede.*
succēdō, *come up, succeed.*
claudō, *close, confine.*
exclūdō, *shut out.*
interclūdō, *shut off, cut off, stop.*
coeipi, *begin.*
concitō (-āre, -āvī, -ātum), *arouse, excite.*
cōnfidō (-ere, cōnfisus), *trust.*
cupiō, *desire.*
dēmōnstrō, *point out, show.*
(dicō, say.)
praedicō, *foretell.*
(dō, give.)
abdō, *put away, hide.*
addō, *add.*
circumdō (-dare, -dedī, -datum), *put around, surround.*
reddō, *give back.*
trādō, *hand over.*
doceō, *teach.*

dormiō (-ire, -īvī, -itum), *sleep.*
dubitō (-āre, -āvī, -ātum), *doubt, hesitate.*
(dūcō, lead.)
trādūcō, *lead, across.*
ēripiō, *snatch away.*
faciō, *do, make.*
cōnficiō, *finish, exhaust.*
dēficiō, *fail, revolt, rebel.*
interficiō, *kill.*
perficiō, *accomplish.*
praeficiō, *put in charge of.*
reficiō, *repair.*
satisfaciō, *satisfy.*
iaciō, *throw, hurl.*
adiciō, *throw to, add.*
coniciō, *hurl.*
dēiciō, *throw down.*
ēiciō, *throw out.*
obiciō, *throw against, oppose.*
prōiciō, *throw forward.*
reiciō, *throw back.*
trāciō, *throw across, pierce.*
ignōrō (-āre, -āvī, -ātum), *be ignorant of.*
impediō, *hinder.*
imperō, *command, order.*
incendō, *burn.*
legō, *pick, gather, read.*
dēligō, *select, choose.*
licet, *it is lawful, permitted.*

maneō, *remain.*

permaneō, *remain, hold out.*

remaneō, *stay beh'rd, remain.*

(mittō, *send.*)

submittō, *send to the assistance, yield to.*

mūniō, *fortify.*

noceō, *injure.*

ōdī (ōdisse), *hate.*

pellō, *drive, defeat.*

expellō, *drive out.*

impellō, *drive on, excite.*

repellō, *drive back, repulse.*

persuādeō, *persuade.*

pōnō, *put, place.*

dēpōnō, *put down, put aside.*

expōnō, *set forth, e. plain.*

oppōnō, *put against, oppose.*

prōpōnō, *put before, propose.*

premō (-ere, pressī, pressum),
press, oppress.

quaerō, *seek, inquire.*

rīdeō (-ēre, rīsī, rīsum), *laugh.*

(scandō, *climb.*)

ascendō, *climb, ascend.*

dēscendo, *descend.*

sciō, *know.*

sedeō (-ēre, sēdī, sessum), *sit.*

obsideō (-ēre, obsēdī, obses-
sum), *besiege.*

sentiō (-īre, sēnsī, sēnsūm), *feel, realize.*

serviō (-īre, -īvī, -ītum), *serve.*

(sistō, *stand.*)

cōnsistō, *stand, take one's place.*

dēsistō, *desist from, cease.*

resistō, *resist.*

spērō, *hope.*

dēspērō, *lose hope, despair.*

(struō, *pile up, arrange.*)

exstruō, *pile up, erect.*

īnstruō, *arrange.*

(sum, *be.*)

dēsūm, *be lacking.*

praesum, *be in command of.*

sūmō, *take, assume.*

superō, *overcome, excel, surpass.*

temptō, *try, test, attempt.*

(tendō, *stretch.*)

contendō, *struggle, hasten.*

ostendō, *show.*

(terreō, *frighten.*)

perterreō, *alarm.*

trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum, *drag.*

veniō, *come.*

circumveniō, *come around, sur-
round.*

conveniō, *come together.*

inveniō, *come upon, find.*

pervenīō, *come through, arrive.*

(videō, *see.*)

invideō, *look on, envy.*

vincō, *conquer.*

vulnerō, *wound.*

NOUNS

aciēs, *line of battle.*

adventus, *a coming (to), arrival.*

aetās, *age.*

altitudō, *height, depth.*

beneficium, *kindness.*

cīvis, *citizen.*

cohors, *cohort.*

condiciō, *condition, terms.*

cōnsuētūdō, *custom, habit.*

cōpia, *supply; pl., forces.*

cornū, *horn, wing (of army).*

corpus, *body.*

cupiditās, *desire, greed.*

dīēs, *day.*

difficultās, *difficulty.*

dolor (-ōris, M.), *grief.*

domus, *home, house.*

equitātus, *cavalry.*

exercitus, *army.*

exitus (-ūs, M.), *a going forth,
outcome, departure.*

fidēs, *good faith, protection.*

finis, *end; pl., boundaries, territory.*

genus, *race, kind.*

hostis, *enemy (of the state).*

imperātor, *commander, general.*

imperium, *command, power.*

inopia, *need, lack.*

iter, *journey.*

iūs, *justice, right.*

laus, *praise.*

magnitūdō, *size, importance.*

manus, *hand, group, force.*

mare, *sea.*

mēns (*mentis*, F.), *mind.*

modus (-ī, M.), *manner.*

mōns, *mountain.*

mors, *death.*

multitūdō, *multitude.*

nāvīgium, *boat.*

nāvis, *ship.*

nox, *night.*

ōrātiō, *speaking, speech.*

ōrdō (-*dinis*, M.), *rank, class.*

pars, *part.*

passus, *pace, step.*

pōns, *bridge.*

potestās, *power, authority, chance.*

ratīō, *account, theory, manner.*

rēs, *thing.*

rēs frūmentāria, *supplies.*

rēs militāris, *military affairs, art
of war.*

rēs pūblica, *commonwealth, govern-
senātus, senate.* [ment.]

spatium, *space, time, distance.*

spēs, *hope.*

timor, *fear.*

turris *tower.*

urbs, *city.*

vīs, *force, violence; pl., strength.*

vulnus, *wound.*

ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

ācriter, *keenly, sharply.*

amplē, *fully.*

apud, *among, at the house of.*

autem (postpositive), *moreover.*

bene, *well.*

celeriter, *swiftly, quickly.*

diligenter, *with care.*

enim (postpositive), *for.*

facile, *easily.*

fortiter, *bravely.*

graviter, *heavily, weightily, seri-
ously.*

inter, *between, among.*

interim, *meanwhile.*

magnopere, *greatly.*

multum, *much.*

nam, *for.*

nē . . . quidem, *not even.*

ob, *on account of.*

quidem (postpositive), *indeed,
certainly, at least.*

quod, *because.*

propter, *on account of.*

satis, *enough, quite.*

sī, *if.*

sine, *without.*

trāns, *across.*

vērō, *in truth, but.*

PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES

ācer, *sharp, keen.*

celer, *swift.*

centum, *hundred.*

commūnis, *common.*

cupidus, *desirous, eager.*

dexter, *right (hand).*

difficilis, *difficult.*

ducenti, *two hundred.*

ego, *I.*

equester, *cavalry (adj.).*

facilis, *easy.*

familiāris, *of the household, inti-
mate.*

fortis, *brave.*

frūmentārius, *pertaining to grain.*

gravis, *heavy, serious.*

idōneus, *fit, suitable.*

immortālis, *without death, im-
mortal.*

incolumis, *unharméd, safe.*

levis, *light (in weight).*

militāris, *military.*

mille, *one thousand.*

multus, *much; pl., many.*

necessārius, *necessary, urgent.*

nōbilis (*knowable*), *noble, famous.*

omnis, *every; pl., all.*

pār, *equal.*

pedester (-*tris*, -*tre*), *infantry
(adj.).*

peritus, *skilled, experienced.*

plēnus, *full.*

propinquus, *near; a relative.*

praesens, *present.*

quadringenti, *four hundred.*

quī, *who.*

recēns, *fresh, new, recent.*

sescenti, *six hundred.*

similis, *like.*

singulāris, *single, unusual.*

sinister, *left (hand).*

suī (*of*) *himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

suus, *his, her, its, their (own).*

tālis, *such.*

trecenti, *three hundred.*

tū, *you.*

ūndecim . . . vīginti, *eleven . . .*

twenty.

vīvus, *alive.*

INDEX

The numbers refer to sections, unless otherwise indicated.

A

Abbreviations, table of, page 288.

Ablative, absolute, 564; defined, 65; of accompaniment, 136; of agent, 149; of cause, 361; of comparison, 472; of description, 531; of manner, 137; of means, 66; of measure of difference, 473; of place in which, 67; of place from which, 222; of separation, 221; of specification, 377; of time, 292; with certain deponents, 403; with certain prepositions, 541, *b*; review of, 643.

Abstract nouns, gender of, 214.

Accent, 16-18.

Accompaniment, ablative of, 136.

Accusative, defined, 39; of direct object, 42; of duration of time, 291; of extent of space, 522; of place to which, 134, 282; predicate, 190; subject of infinitive, 342; review of, 639; with prepositions, 76, 541.

Adjectives, agreement of, 118; attributive, 120; comparison of, 466-481; dative with, 245; declension of, 58; declension of comparative, 469; genitive with, 353; numeral, 517; of first and second declensions, 115, 126; of third declension, 242, 243; ordinal, 528; possessive, 127; predicate. 120; pro-

nominal, 315-318; used as nouns, 319.

Adverbs, formation and comparison of, 487-489.

Agent, ablative of, 149; dative of, 573.

Agreement, of adjective, 118; of appositive, 98; of participle, 259; of predicate noun, 99; of relative pronoun, 329; of verbs, 26.

alius, alter, etc., 315-317.

Answers, 198.

Apposition, 97, *a*.

Attributive adjective, 120.

B

Base, 49.

C

capiō, conjugation of, 156.

Cardinal numerals, 518.

Case endings, 49.

Cases, defined, 47.

Causal clauses, 612.

Cause, ablative of, 361.

certior, with **faciō**, **fiō**, 598.

Characteristic vowel, 107.

Clauses, classified, 331; of cause, 612; of condition, 621; of purpose, 411, 420; of result, 446-448; of time, 512, 605; reviewed, 628; used as nouns, 438, 448.

coepī, 379, *a*.

Comparative adjective, declension of, 469; special meanings of, 481.

Comparison, ablative of, 472; of adjectives, 466-481; of adverbs, 488, 489.

Complementary infinitive, 110.

Complex sentences, 330.

Compound verbs, 277; dative with, 456.

Compounds of **sum**, 454.

Conditional sentences, 620.

Conjugations, defined, 23; distinguished, 107; first, 31-33, 196, 226-228; fourth, 104, 105, 155, 234-236; second, 73, 74, 226-228; third, 104, 105, 155, 234-236; third conjugation in **-iō**, 156.

Conjunctions, classified, 632.

cum (conj.), causal, 612, *b*; temporal, 512.

cum (prep.), with ablative of accompaniment, 136; of manner, 137; enclitic, page 128, note 2.

D

Dative, defined, 59, *a*; of agent, 573; of indirect object, 60; of possessor, 458; review of, 638; with adjectives, 245; with compound verbs, 456; with verbs of special meaning, 436.

Declension, defined, 46; of adjectives, 58; of comparatives, 469.

Declensions, distinguished, 289; fifth, 285-288; first, 48, 56; fourth, 270-273; second, 87-89, 95, 125; third, 162-165, 171-173, 178, 179, 208-210; 214.

Demonstrative pronouns, 348-350, 365, 390.

Deponent verbs, 400; ablative with certain, 403.

Description, genitive and ablative of, 531.

Direct object, 42.

dō, conjugation of, 43, *a*; 147, *a*.

dum, use of, 605.

Duration of time, 291.

E

ēius and **suus**, distinguished, 368.

Enclitic, 18.

Endings, case, 49; of indicative, 308; of infinitive, 376; of participles, 556; of subjunctive, 509; personal, 32, 146, 186, 251.

eō, conjugation of, 604.

et, **-que**, **atque**, distinguished, 229, *a*.

F

ferō, 611.

fiō, passive of **faciō**, 597; with **certior**, 598.

from, how to say, 219.

Future, indicative, 227, 235, 236; infinitive, 374, 375; participle, 373, 556, 571, 572.

Future perfect indicative, 306, 307.

G

Gender, 86; in third declension, 214.

Genitive, general rule, 634, *a*; objective, 352; of description, 531; of possession, 50; of the whole, 529; review of, 634; with

adjectives, 353; with **potior**, 403, *a*.
 Genitive singular of nouns in **-ium**, **-ius**, 96.
 Genitive plural in **-ium**, 208.
 Gerund, 580, 581.
 Gerundive, 579.

H

hic, declension of, 348.
 Historical present, 431.

I

īdem, 390.
 Idioms, 599.
ille, 349.
 Imperative mood, 549, 550.
 Imperfect tense, indicative, 185-188, 196; subjunctive, 424-427.
 Impersonal verbs, 627.
 Indefinite pronouns, 538, 539.
 Indicative, endings, 308; future, 227, 235, 236; future perfect, 306, 307; imperfect, 185-188, 196; perfect, 251-253, 261; pluperfect, 297-299; present, 33, 73, 104, 146, 147, 155; review of, 308.
 Indirect object, 60, 436, 456.
 Indirect question, 501, 502.
 Infinitive, complementary, 110; endings, 376; future, 374, 375; perfect, 358, 359; present, 106, 338; subject of, 342; uses of, 109, 330-341.
 Intensive pronoun, 391.
 Interrogative adjective, 327.
 Interrogative pronoun, 326.
ipse and **suī**, distinguished, 392.

Irregular verbs, 619.
is, 365; **is** and **suī**, distinguished, 386.

L

Length of vowels, 7.
 Length of syllables, 13-15.
 Locative case, 47, *a*; 279.

M

Manner, ablative of, 137.
 Means, ablative of, 66.
 Measure of difference, 473.
mille, 519, 520.
 Moods, 407.

N

nē, in clauses of purpose, 419.
nōlō, 618.
 Nominative, as subject, 26; in the predicate, 99, 191, *a*; review of, 633.
 Noun clauses, of result, 448; with verbs *advise*, *persuade*, etc., 438.
 Numerals, 517; declension of, 519.

O

Object, direct, 42; indirect, 60, 436, 456.
 Order of words, 68 and page 286.
 Ordinal adjectives, 528.

P

Participles, declension of, 558; defined, 259; future active,

373, 556, 571; future passive, 556, 572; perfect, 260, 556, 559; present, 556-559.

Parts of speech, 20.

Passive voice, 145, 146.

Perfect, indicative active, 251-253; indicative passive, 261; infinitive, 358, 359; participle, 260, 556, 559; stem, 250; subjunctive, 497-499; system, 589.

Periphrastic conjugations, 571, 572.

Personal endings, active, 32, 186, 251; passive, 146.

Personal pronouns, 367, 383.

Place, from which, 222, 281; in which, 67, 280; to which, 134, 282.

Pluperfect, indicative, 297-299; subjunctive, 506-508.

Possession, expressed by dative, 458; by genitive, 50.

Possessive adjectives, 127.

possum, 443, 444.

postquam, with perfect indicative, 310, *a*.

Predicate, accusative, 190; adjective, 120; nominative, 97, *b*.

Prefixes, 277.

Prepositional phrases, 132-135, 219.

Prepositions, 541.

Present, indicative active, 33, 73, 104; indicative passive, 146, 147, 155; infinitive, 106, 338; participle, 556-559; stem, 33; subjunctive, 408, 417, 418; system, 589.

Primary tenses, 429.

Principal parts, 249, 258.

Pronominal adjectives, 315-318.

Pronouns, classified, 393, 540; demonstrative, 348-350, 365,

390; indefinite, 538, 539; intensive, 391; interrogative, 326; personal, 367, 383; reflexive, 384, 385; relative, 325, 328, 329.

Pronunciation, 3-6.

Purpose, 411, 419, 420, 588.

Q

quam, in comparisons, 472; with superlative, 492.

Questions, how expressed, 197; indirect, 501, 502.

quī, 325, 327, 328.

quis, indefinite, 538; interrogative, 326.

quō, with subjunctive, 511, *a*.

R

Reflexive pronoun, 384, 385.

Relative pronoun, 325, 328, 329.

Result, clauses of, 446-448.

Review lessons, 82, 141, 204, 267, 322, 397, 463, 546, 593, 632, 638, 643.

S

Secondary tenses, 429.

Separation, ablative of, 221.

Sequence of tenses, 430.

Space, extent of, 522.

Specification, ablative of, 377.

Stems, present, 33; perfect, 250; supine, page 122, footnote 1.

Subjunctive, endings of, 509; general uses of, 410; imperfect, 424-427; in causal clauses, 612; in conditions, 621; in indirect

questions. 501; in noun clauses, 438, 448; in purpose clauses, 420; in result clauses, 446; in temporal clauses, 605; perfect, 497-499; pluperfect, 506-508; present, 408-410, 417, 418; review of forms, 509, 510.

Subordinate clauses, reviewed, 628.

Suffixes. of adjectives, 595; of nouns, 548.

sui, 384.

sum, compounds of, 454; conjugation of, 24, 174, 180, 251, 309, 418, 426.

Superlative with **quam**, 492.

Supine, forms and uses, 586, 587; stem, page 122, footnote 1; system, 589.

Syllables, 9-15.

Synonyms, 294.

Synopsis of verbs, 309, 510.

Systems, three stem, 589.

T

Temporal clauses, with **cum**, 512; with **dum**, **priusquam**,

605; with **postquam**, **ubi**, 310, *a*.

Tenses, named, 184; primary and secondary, 429; sequence of, 430.

Tense signs, 186.

Third conjugation in **-iō**, 156.

Time, ablative of, 292; duration of, 291; clauses of, 512, 605.

to, how to say, 133.

U

ubi, with perfect indicative, 310, *a*.

ut clauses, summary of, 449.

V

Verbs, agreement of, 26.

Vocative case, 47, *a*, 551.

volō, 618.

W

with, how to say, 135.

HIGH SCHOOL TEXTBOOKS

Lake: GENERAL SCIENCE

A foundation for the sciences which usually come later in high school, and the best practical training for those who may withdraw from school at the end of the Junior High School.

Conn and Budington: ADVANCED PHYSIOLOGY AND HYGIENE

Sets forth with great clarity the successful modern methods of promoting good health.

Hallett and Anderson: ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA

Introduces this study as a natural extension of arithmetic, and emphasizes the fundamental principles and processes of the subject. With an abundance of problems.

Bullock: THE ELEMENTS OF ECONOMICS

Presents the chief facts in the structure of modern industry, and discusses with noteworthy fair-mindedness the readjustments of our industrial problems.

Clippinger: WRITTEN AND SPOKEN ENGLISH

Meets the demand for training in correct speaking and writing with reference to the needs of later life. (In one and two volume editions.)

SILVER SERIES OF ENGLISH CLASSICS

Carefully and skillfully edited by men and women who have won distinction in both the literary and the educational worlds.

Gunnison and Harley: LATIN FOR THE FIRST YEAR

Simple in treatment, inductive in presentation; with abundant supplementary reading.

Gunnison and Harley: CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

Contains the text, grammar, and prose composition for second year Latin.

SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY

BOSTON

NEW YORK

CHICAGO

SAN FRANCISCO

HIGH SCHOOL TEXTBOOKS

Gunnison and Harley: CICERO'S ORATIONS

Contains the text, grammar, and prose composition for third year Latin.

Burton: VERGIL'S AENEID

Unique in that the introduction, notes, references, and explanatory matter are within the grasp of high school students. Over 600 lines of sight translation from various Latin authors.

Burton: A LATIN GRAMMAR

Presents the essentials with the greatest possible simplicity.

Cardon: A PRACTICAL FRENCH COURSE

A book which makes for actual facility in speaking, reading, and writing French.

Cardon: MON PETIT TROTT

Text is used as a basis for oral and written composition with drill in French syntax.

Wilkins and Luria: LECTURAS FÁCILES CON EJERCICIOS

A reader for use as soon as the pupil has mastered the elements of the Spanish language.

Luria: CORRESPONDENCIA COMERCIAL CON EJERCICIOS

A book that will give the power to write a genuine Spanish letter.

Howland: ZARAGÜETA

A play with practice in Spanish composition.

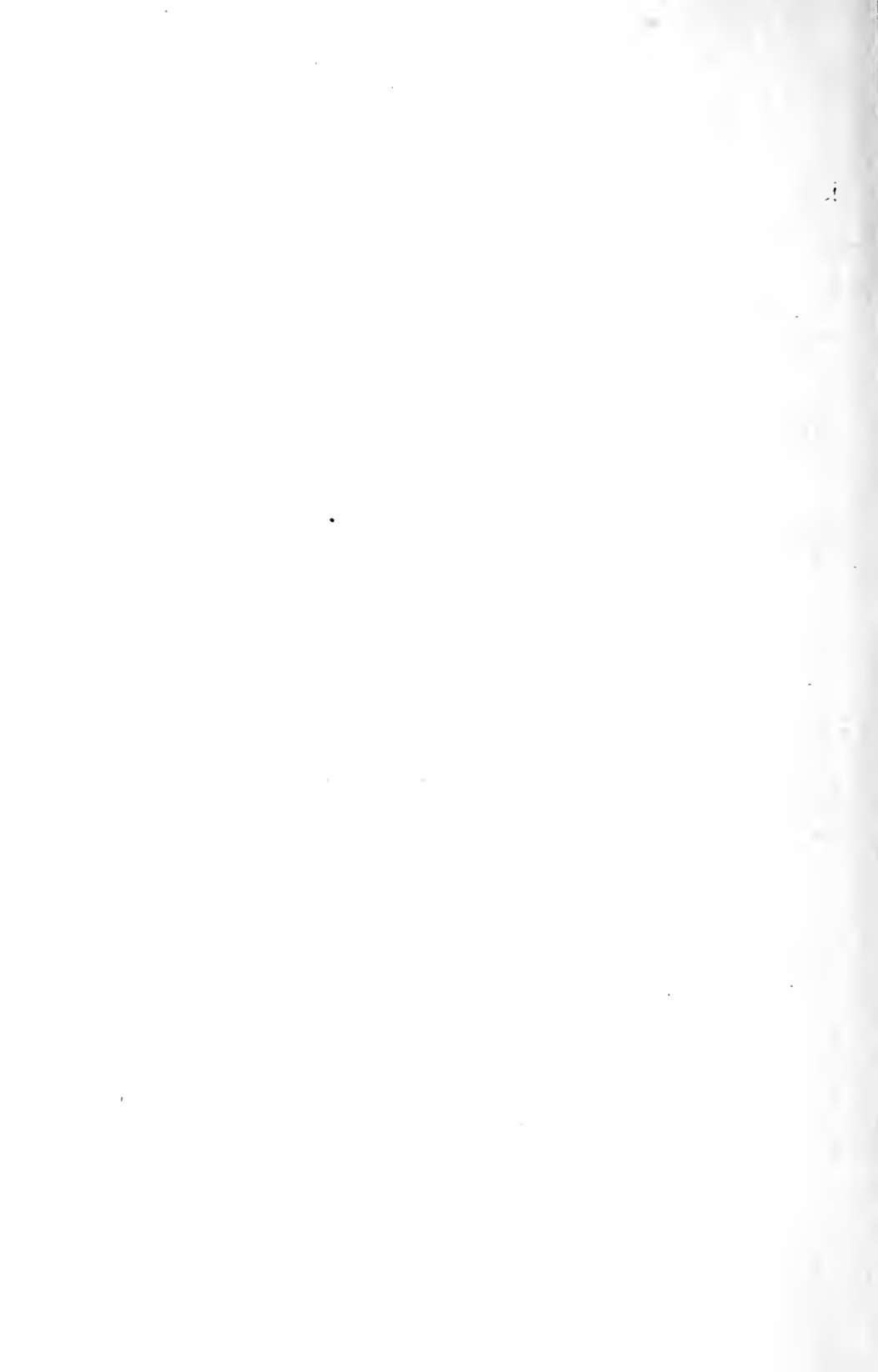
Ford: A SPANISH ANTHOLOGY

Selections from the best Spanish poets, with notes.

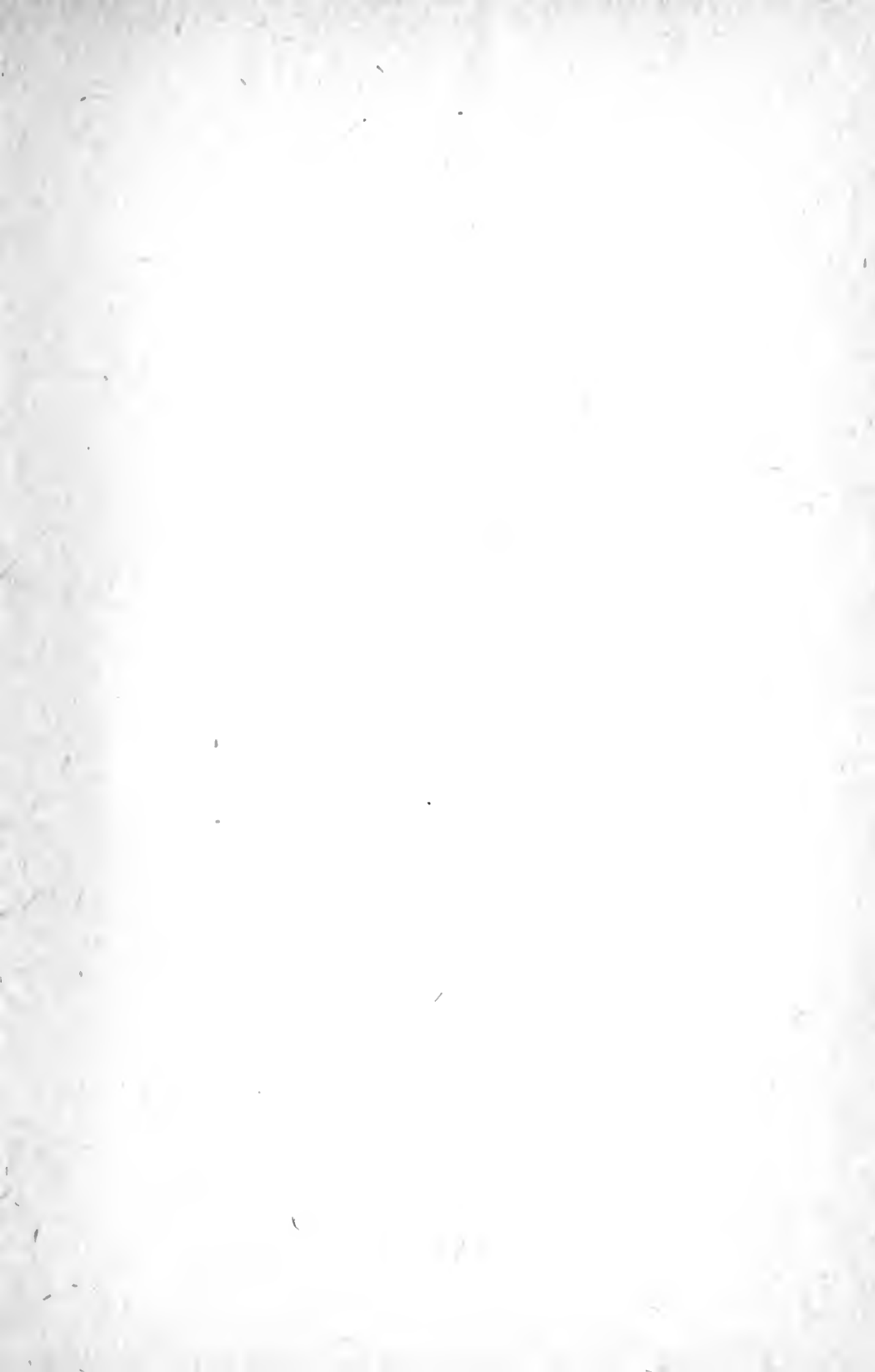
Parsons: HIGH SCHOOL SONG BOOK

Songs which enlarge the musical heritage of recreational, assembly, and community singing.

SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO SAN FRANCISCO









YB 36245

605539

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

